

CHESS GEMS

1,000 COMBINATIONS YOU SHOULD KNOW

With a Foreword by World Chess Champion

VLADIMIR KRAMNIK

BY IGOR SUKHIN

Table of Contents

[Title Page](#)

[Copyright Page](#)

[Bibliography](#)

[Preface](#)

[Introduction](#)

[I - According to the Rules of Shatranj \(ninth - fifteenth centuries\)](#)

[The Legend of Dilaram](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[II - From Lucena to Greco \(fifteenth - seventeenth centuries\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[III - From Stamma to Philidor \(Eighteenth Century\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[IV - From Napoleon to Staunton \(the first half of the nineteenth century\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[V - Anderssen and Morphy \(1851 - 1860\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[VI - First Unofficial World Championship Match \(1861 - 1870\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[VII - Zukertort and Chigorin \(1871 - 1880\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[VIII - Steinitz - The First World Champion \(1881 - 1890\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[IX - Lasker and Pillsbury \(1891 - 1900\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[X - Matches of the Second World Champion \(1901 - 1920\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[XI - Capablanca, Alekhine, Euwe \(1921 - 1940\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[XII - Botvinnik, Smyslov, Tal \(1941-1960\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[XIII - Petrosian, Spassky, Fischer \(1961 - 1980\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[XIV - The Great Opposition: Karpov - Kasparov \(1981 - 2000\)](#)

[How Would You Play?](#)

[Solutions](#)

[Index of Players](#)

CHESS GEMS

1,000 COMBINATIONS YOU SHOULD KNOW

BY IGOR SUKHIN

FOREWORD BY WORLD CHAMPION
VLADIMIR KRAMNIK



BOSTON

© 2007 Igor Sukhin and Mongoose Press

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by an information storage and retrieval system, without written permission from the Publisher.

Publisher: Mongoose Press
1005 Boylston Street, Suite 324
Newton Highlands, MA 02461
info@mongoosepress.com
www.MongoosePress.com

ISBN: 9780979148255

Library of Congress Control Number: 2007930428

Distributed by:

Books From Europe

PO Box 920058

Needham, MA 02492

Email: chess@booksfromeurope.com

Toll free Phone/Fax: (866) 328-1523

Interior Design: Semko Semkov

Editorial Consultant: Peter Sherwood

Translated by: GM Evgeny Ermenkov

Cover Design: Patricia Bickner, www.anewleaf-books.com

First English edition

0 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Bulgaria

Bibliography

- Botvinnik - Tal*, Lev Abramov (Physical Education and Sports 1960)
- Ten World Champions*, Lev Abramov (Physical Education and Sports 1972)
- New York International Chess Tournament 1924*, Alexander Alekhine (Harding Simpole 2004)
- Nottingham International Chess Tournament 1936*, Alexander Alekhine (Harding Simpole 2002)
- Journey to the Kingdom of Chess*, Yuri Averbakh, Mikhail Beilin (Physical Education and Sports 1988)
- The World Chess Championship: Karpov/Kasparov Moscow 85*, Yuri Averbakh, Mark Taimanov (Firebird Publications 1987)
- Combinations in the middlegame*, Igor Bondarevsky (Chess Player 1977)
- Petrosian - Spassky*, Isaac Boleslavsky, Igor Bondarevsky (Physical Education and Sports 1970)
- Analytical and Critical Works (1923 - 1941)*, Mikhail Botvinnik (Physical Education and Sports 1984)
- Analytical and Critical Works (1942 - 1956)*, Mikhail Botvinnik (Physical Education and Sports 1985)
- Analytical and Critical Works (1957 - 1970)*, Mikhail Botvinnik (Physical Education and Sports 1986)
- Championship Chess: Match Tournament for the Absolute Chess Championship of the USSR, Leningrad-Moscow 1941*, Mikhail Botvinnik (Macgibbon & Kee 1950)
- Selected Games, Nineteen Sixty-Seven to Nineteen Seventy*, Mikhail Botvinnik (Pergamon 1981)
- Half a Century of Chess*, Mikhail Botvinnik (Cadogan Books 1996)
- Anatoly Karpov: His Road to the World Championship*, Mikhail Botvinnik (Pergamon 1978)
- 200 Open Games*, David Bronstein (Dover Publications 1991)
- Modern Chess Self-Tutor*, David Bronstein (Everyman Publishers 1996)
- Selected Games*, Fyodor Duz-Hotimirsky (Physical Education and Sports 1953)
- Bobby Fischer Teaches Chess*, Bobby Fischer (Bantam Books 1992)
- My 60 Memorable Games*, Bobby Fischer (Batsford 1995)
- Victory in Merano*, Efim Geller (Voenizdat 1982)

Chigorin, His Life and Games, Nikolai Grekov (Physical Education and Sports 1939)

Selected Games 1969 - 1977, Anatoly Karpov (Physical Education and Sports 1978)

Miniatures From the World of Champions, Anatoly Karpov (Collier Books 1986)

My 300 Best Games, Anatoly Karpov (Russian Chess House 1997)

Unlimited Challenge, Garry Kasparov (Grove Press 1990)

Aron Nimzowitsch: A Reappraisal, Raymond Keene (Batsford 2003)

Grandmaster of Chess: The Complete Games of Paul Keres, Paul Keres (Arco Publications 1972)

The Last Check, Victor Khenkin (Physical Education and Sports 1979)

Lectures on Chess Startegy, Alexander Koblents (Physical Education and Sports 1983)

Think Like a Grandmaster, Alexander Kotov (Batsford 2003)

Chess Heritage of Alekhine, Alexander Kotov (Physical Education and Sports 1982)

Larsen's Selected Games of Chess 1948-69, Bent Larsen (McKay 1970)

Common Sense in Chess, Emanuel Lasker (Dover Publications 1965)

Lasker's Manual of Chess, Emanuel Lasker (Dover Publications 1960)

Capablanca in Russia, Isaac Linder (Soviet Russia 1988)

First Russian Masters, Isaac Linder (Physical Education and Sports 1979)

Esthetics of Chess, Isaac Linder (Soviet Russia 1981)

How to Beat Bobby Fischer, Edmar Mednis (Bantam Books 1975)

Queen sacrifice, Yakov Neishtadt (Pergamon 1999)

Siegbert Tarrasch, Yakov Neishtadt (Physical Education and Sports 1983)

Uncrowned champions, Yakov Neishtadt (Physical Education and Sports 1975)

First world champion, Yakov Neishtadt (Physical Education and Sports 1971)

Catastrophe in the Opening, Yakov Neishtadt (Pergamon 1979)

Test Your Tactical Ability, Yakov Neishtadt (Trafalgar Square Publishing 1992)

Chess before Steinitz, Yakov Neishtadt (Physical Education and Sports 1961)

My System, Aron Nimzowitsch (McKay 1973)

Opening Course, Vasily Panov and Yakov Estrin (Physical Education and Sports 1980)

Chess Middlegames, Laszlo Polgar (Konemann Verlagsgesellschaft 1998)

Six-Hundred Endings, Lajos Portisch (Pergamon Press 1981)

Peter Romanovsky, Igor Romanov (Physical Education and Sports 1984)

Sacrifice in Chess, Leonid Shamkovich (Alfred Kalnajs & Son 1972)

The Art of Sacrifice in Chess, Rudolf Spielmann (Dover Publications 1995)

Attack with Mikhail Tal, Yakov Damsky, Mikhail Tal (MacMillan Publishing Company 1995)

Three Hundred Chess Games, Siegbert Tarrasch (Hays Publishing 1999)

Carl Schlechter, Leonid Verhovsky (Physical Education and Sports 1984)

Draw, Leonid Verhovsky (Physical Education and Sports 1979)

David Janowski, Sergey Voronkov, Dmitry Plisetsky (Physical Education and Sports 1987)

Stories About Chess, Mikhail Yudovich (Physical Education and Sports 1959)

Preface

The book you have in your hands contains more than 1,000 combinations from games played over the last two millennia. Many are classics, an important part of chess education for beginners and intermediate players. Some examples, like Anderssen-Kieseritsky, are so famous that practically any chess player has seen them. Yet there are many more. Huge chunks of chess history from the nineteenth century are omitted from textbooks. This book was designed to fill the gap. While it is hard to determine which games are the most famous, let alone the best, *Chess Gems* contains many beautiful combinations that have amazed and delighted chess fans.

When amateurs talk about sharp combinative play, they often refer to the greats of the past: Anderssen, Morphy, Chigorin, etc. Others have more contemporary heroes: Tal or Fischer. Many people from my generation could be called “Tal’s children”. I grew up on his games; in my childhood I tried to copy his style. There is a perception that today somehow professional chess has become dry and boring.

The way chess is played at the top level has changed quite a bit in the last few years. There are a lot more tactics involved, and the positions are much more complicated - that’s not a coincidence. Nowadays, thanks to computers, to get an advantage out of the opening, one has to go for complicated positions. It is much harder to win a game without taking risks; one cannot just slowly grind down an opponent, “playing for two possible outcomes”: win or draw. A lot of recent wins at high-level tournaments are achieved through enormous complications and tactics. In fact, in a future edition of this book covering the twenty-first century, I am sure quite a few recent games will be worth including.

No discussion of recent changes in chess can ignore the elephant in the room: computers. Here I want to dispel a popular myth: computers will make (or have already made) “human” chess less popular.

Cars can go much faster than the 100-meter world record holder, and farther than the best marathoner. Yet that hasn’t diminished interest in track and field. If anything, computers make chess more accessible to a broad circle of chess fans. They allow amateurs to spot errors of top professionals in real time, to explore all sorts of “what-if” scenarios, and to provide an instant (though imperfect) assessment of the game being played. One cannot ignore the benefits of training with a chess program at all levels. All in all, while computers make the life of a chess professional harder, their overall contribution to the game is positive.

I suppose one can distinguish between “computer chess” and “human chess.” Playing computer chess (really the only way to play against a computer nowadays) involves watching extremely carefully for your own mistakes. There is no psychology involved, no tactics based on intuition. One small error will bring your demise at the hands of the “silicon monster”; whereas against a human opponent, a mistake occasionally results in an interesting and entertaining twist. To me, chess has always been about competition between two people, with all their human emotions and blunders. Not surprisingly, only human games bring about spectacular intuitive sacrifices and memorable combinations.

One thing is clear: for as long as people play chess, for as long as there is appreciation of art, beauty, and logic, this book will not become obsolete.

Vladimir Kramnik
May 2007

Introduction

Combinations have long been considered the most creative aspect of chess. It is hardly surprising that many books have been devoted to them, and published in Russia as well as abroad. Most of them, however, share the same drawbacks:

- The combinations are classified by theme;
- The majority of the examples are from the end of the twentieth century;
- The enormous legacy of the great masters of the nineteenth century has been underestimated;
- In solutions to the problems, the authors do not supply sufficient variations, and they often do not indicate other moves which are even more effective and spectacular than those which were played in the games;
- The same mistakes are repeated in every new edition.

In our book, the material is presented in chronological order. We begin with some examples of the combinational skills of the masters of Shatranj and end with illustrations of the tactical strikes by contemporary grandmasters. The basic material in this book samples the tactical skills of the world's leading players from all eras, rather than fragments of games between unknown amateurs. We have devoted special attention to matches for the world championship. Combinations of twentieth-century chess players comprise less than half of the combinations.

The book has 14 chapters with a consistent structure. First, we show several outstanding combinations of the period, followed by the section, "How would you play?" in which readers are challenged to solve several instructive positions with the best moves. The solutions to the problems are at the end of each chapter. In some cases we indicate alternative combinations.

The level of difficulty of the problems in this book varies considerably. There are some brilliant combinations with a checkmate in two, as well as complex combinations requiring many moves and with numerous side variations. The reader should be prepared for traps and surprises, since some would-be combinations have refutations. Accordingly, even if a position is well-known, it would be advisable to analyze carefully all possible variations, and not just try to remember what happened in the game.

All the positions included in the book have been analyzed thoroughly. There are many famous examples that are not a part of this book for various reasons: some have been refuted; or the advantage after the best defense by the opponent is insignificant; or a similar combination occurred earlier.

There are plenty of positions from the games of "crowned" and unofficial world champions and candidates for that title (in particular Anderssen, Morphy, Chigorin, Tarrasch and Alekhine.)

In the challenge sections, the reader is faced with a diagram that says "White to move" or "Black to move," without any additional information - unlike thematic collections of combinations. The idea is to simulate competitive chess, when the player does not know the theme of a combination, or even the exact problem (whether he is looking for a win or a draw). The reader does have advantages compared to the competitive player, in that he knows the position requires a tactical solution, and his time for thinking is not restricted. Still, if the reader finds a beautiful combination which occurred in a game of Alekhine, Fischer or Kasparov, for example, then he can consider himself to be almost a true champion.

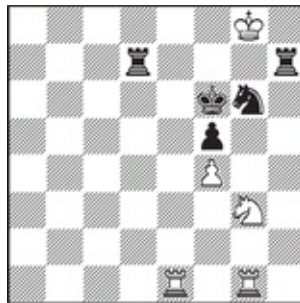
I

According to the Rules of Shatranj (ninth - fifteenth centuries)

*The joy of great inventions is in the remote past.
Now, thousands of tactical ideas are recorded
in “the black list” of theory. All is known — that
is, almost all. Naturally every chess player improvises
over the board in accordance with
his talent and imagination. But that which is
already known, must be known!*

Mikhail Tal

Our book with 1,000 combinations starts with the exquisite tactical operation found about 1,000 years ago by the renowned master of Shatranj Abu Naim Al-Khadim, a resident of central Asia in the ninth century.



1

White to move

White's position appears utterly hopeless. Black is threatening 1...♖h8#, as well as 1 ♖hg7#, or 1...♖dg7#, or 1...♖d8+ 2 ♖e8 ♖xe8+ 3 ♔xh7 ♖h8#. Still, Abu Naim sacrificed two pieces and he won.

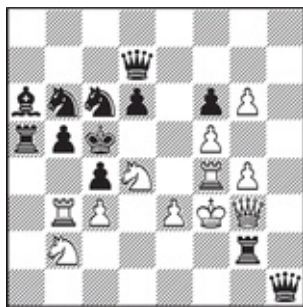
1 ♔g3 - h5+! ♖h7xh5
2 ♖g1xg6+! ♗f6xg6
3 ♖e1 - e6#

This is a beautiful combination which would make any present-day chess player proud. White does not have a single redundant piece in the final position.

We have to mention, before going on, that the game was played according to the rules of chess at

that time. The rooks, the king and the knights were moved according to contemporary rules. Pawns were moved and they captured as they do today, but they could not be advanced two squares from the initial position, and they could be promoted only to queens. The queen could be moved only one square on the diagonal, while the bishop could jump over a square on the diagonal. It could also jump over an enemy piece without capturing it. There were other differences as well. There was no castling whatsoever and the game was considered to be won after either a checkmate or a stalemate. Capturing all the pieces of the opponent was counted as a win as well. You must know all this in order to understand the following examples.

As a rule, in the ancient books entire games of the masters of shatranj were not quoted; we could see only mansubat - that were the final positions from games - and they were often “perfected” by their authors. Often in these mansubat White’s king was threatened with checkmate, but after a series of checks and sacrifices the ostensibly weaker side was victorious.



2

White to move

Diagram 2 is another mansuba of Abu Naim Al-Khadim, of which he was quite proud. White sacrifices three pieces in a row and captures Black’s monarch.

1 ♖b3xb5+ ♔a5xb5

Black could not have played here 1...♗xb5, because under the rules of shatranj, the bishop jumps over a square on the diagonal.

2 ♘d4 - e6+! ♙d7xe6

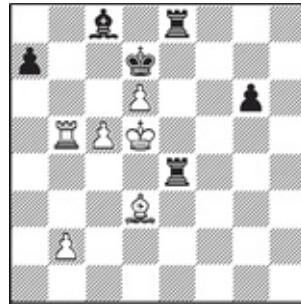
It is not better for Black to play 2...♙d5 3 ♘c7+ ♙c5 (Or 3...♙e5 4 ♖e4#, while Black could not continue with 3...♗xc7, since in shatranj the queen moved only to the adjacent square on the diagonal and captured in the same fashion.) 4 ♖xc4+! (After 4 ♘xa6+ ♙d5 5 ♘c7+ the solution only becomes a couple of moves longer.) 4...♗xc4 (Here, according to the rules of shatranj, Black could have captured with his rook, or with his bishop, or he could have jumped over his rook with his bishop, but all that would not have saved him from being checkmated:

4...♗xc4 5 ♘d3#) 5 ♖a4#. 3 ♗f4xc4+!! ♗b6xc4

Black loses even faster after 3...♗xc4 (The bishop jumps again.) 4 ♖d3+ ♔d5 5 e4#, or 3...♔d5 4 e4+ ♕e5 and now White would win by either 5 ♖d3# or 5 ♕f4#.

4 ♖b2 - a4+ ♔c5 - d5
 5 e3 - e4+ ♔d5 - e5
 6 ♕g3 - f4#.

This was a brilliant combination from the era of shatranj!
 White wins more easily in the following mansuba.



3

White to move

1 ♖b5 - b7+ ♔d7 - d8

But not 1...♗xb7+, because in shatranj the bishop moves and captures over a square along the diagonal. Now White begins an instructive combination.

2 ♖b7 - d7+! ♔d8xd7

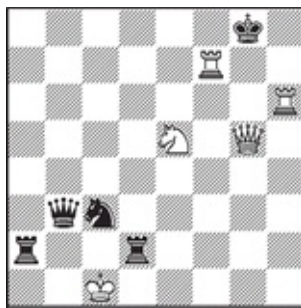
Once again Black's bishop cannot capture the rook, according to the rules.

3 ♔c5 - c6+ ♔d7 - d8
 4 ♔c6 - c7+ ♔d8 - d7

Black's king was forced to move back and forth between d7 and d8 for four moves. These "maneuvers" are terminated by White's next move.

5 ♗d3 - b5#.

The mansuba of Al-Adli (one of the first famous shatranj players in the ninth century) is no less interesting and it is presented in Diagram 4.



4

White to move

Black's king is checkmated, is it not? No, the queen moves only on the adjacent square on the diagonal in shatranj.

1 ♚h6 - g6+	♔g8 - h8
2 ♚f7 - f8+	♔h8 - h7
3 ♚g6 - h6+	♔h7 - g7

Now White settles the issue with a beautiful move.

4 ♚g5 - f6+! ♔g7xf8

Or the game might end after a mirror-like variation: 4... ♔xh6 5 ♚h8#.

5 ♚h6 - h8#.

One of the most famous mansubat of the Middle Ages (tenth century) was "Dilaram's checkmate." The solution is usually preceded by an amusing story of how the game was actually played.

The Legend of Dilaram

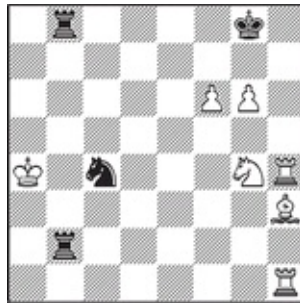
Many centuries ago, somewhere in the East, Dilaram, whose name means “Ease of the soul” in Arabic, was the favorite lovely wife of a nobleman. He liked to gamble, and the game of shatranj was his passion. Once, however, he had the mishap to be opposed by a strong player and the game was played as usual for high stakes. Our hero kept losing, but he kept arranging the pieces for each new game in the hope of recovering.

The stakes were increasing, and finally the nobleman had lost everything he possessed. He insisted, “Let us play one more game, the last one.”

“At what stakes?”

“Stakes? I pledge my loving wife, beautiful Dilaram,” the man said. That exquisite beauty came over to the players and stood humbly next to her husband. His opponent said, “I will bet everything I have won, if you will wager Dilaram.” He was overwhelmed with lust.

The battle started and it was tough and fierce. Still, the players’ abilities were unequal, and the guest was already attacking. It looked like the nobleman was about to surrender. He was losing hope, and his opponent was smiling triumphantly.



5

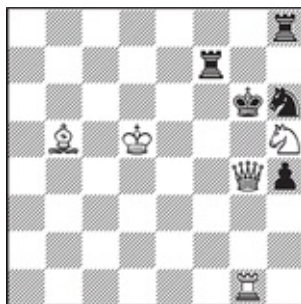
White to move

Suddenly the host heard his wife whisper “Oh, my master! Sacrifice both your rooks but do not surrender me, your Dilaram.” So he kept his composure, and he saw a beautiful combination, winning by force. He sacrificed two rooks and he checkmated his opponent’s king.

1 ♖h4 - h8+! ♔g8xh8
2 ♘h3 - f5+ ♕h8 - g8

The nobleman’s opponent still hopes to win. Meanwhile, after 2...♖h2 3 ♖xh2+ ♔g8 Black would be mated only one move later than in the game.

3 ♖h1 - h8+! ♔g8xh8
4 ♗g6 - g7+ ♕h8 - g8
5 ♘g4 - h6#.



6

**From the manuscript of
Abu Al-Fath (twelfth century)**

White to move

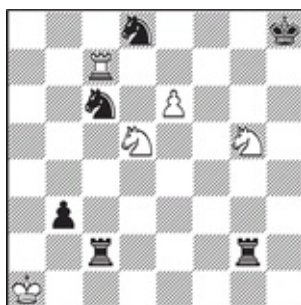
An ingenious combination followed.

1 ♖g4 - f5++! ♔g6 - h7

Black can capture neither the knight nor the queen: 1... ♞xf5 2 ♗d3#, or 1... ♞xh5 2 ♚g6#. Here, White sacrifices his rook in spectacular fashion.

2 ♜g1 - g7+ ♞f7xg7
3 ♘h5 - f6#.

We finish our first chapter the way we started it - with a wonderful example of a combination whose idea has been exploited numerous times by masters and grandmasters of the nineteenth, twentieth, and twenty first centuries. We will ignore the rules of shatranj, since the pieces remaining on the board are moved according to contemporary rules.



7

**From the treatise of
King Alfons X the Wise, 1283**

White to move

“Both sides have attacked the enemy king. White has less material indeed, but it is his move and he must try to exploit that to the maximal extent. The standard and routine moves do not achieve

anything. It looks like Black's position is super solid and White is doomed. But ... maybe there is an idea!" (Emmanuel Lasker)

1 ♖c7 - h7+	♔h8 - g8
2 ♘d5 - f6+	♔g8 - f8
3 e6 - e7+!	

White sacrifices first a pawn.

3 ...	♘c6xe7
4 ♖h7 - f7+!	

Then he sacrifices a rook.

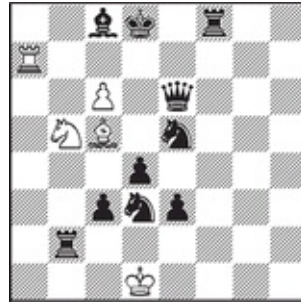
4 ...	♘d8xf7
-------	--------

Black has no choice, but now he gets mated in exquisite fashion.

5 ♘g5 - e6#!

How Would You Play?

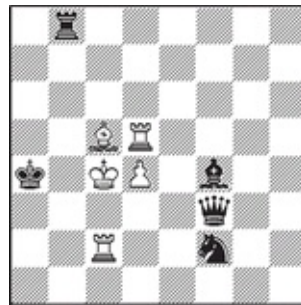
Use the rules of shatranj



8

From the manuscript of
Abu-Al-Fath, Twelfth century

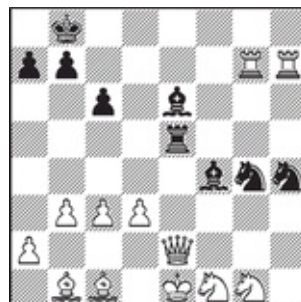
White to move



9

From the manuscript of
Abu-Al-Fath, Twelfth century

Black to move



10

From the treatise

“Sea of Reason”

Black to move



11

**From the manuscript of
Firdوسي at Tahitala, 1501**

Black to move

Solutions

Diagram 8. 1 ♖d7+! ♔xd7 (After 1... ♘xd7, White wins in the same fashion as in the main line, while after 1... ♕e8, he checkmates with 2 ♘c7# or 2 ♘d6#) 2 c7+ ♕e8 3 ♘d6#.

Diagram 9. 1... ♖b4+ 2 ♕c3 ♘d1+ 3 ♕d3 ♖b3+ 4 ♕c4 (or 4 ♖c3 ♖xc3#) 4... ♖c3+! 5 ♖xc3 ♘b2#!

Diagram 10. 1... ♘g2+ 2 ♕d1 ♘f2+ 3 ♕c2 ♖xe2+! (In the book of Yuri Averbakh, *Searching for the Truth*, Physical Education and Sports, Moscow, 1992, p. 180, we have seen another move order: 3... ♘e1+ 4 ♕b2 ♖xe2+, but in that case after: 5 ♕a3! ♘c2+ 6 ♕a4, White's king escapes the checks.) 4 ♘xe2 (White loses immediately after: 4 ♘d2 ♖xd2#) 4... ♘e1+ 5 ♕b2 ♘d1+ 6 ♕a3 (or 6 ♕a1 ♘c2#) 6... ♘c2+ 7 ♕a4 ♘b2+ 8 ♕a5 ♖b6+ 9 ♕a6 ♖c8#.

Diagram 11. 1... ♖xd3+! 2 ♗xd3 (or 2 ♘xd3 ♘xf3#) 2... ♖xd3+! 3 ♘xd3 ♘xf3#.

II

From Lucena to Greco (fifteenth - seventeenth centuries)

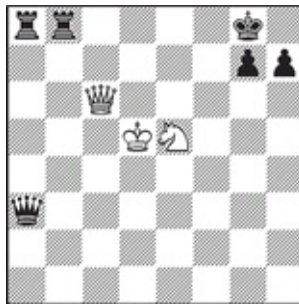
We cannot resist the fascination of sacrifice, since a passion for sacrifices is part of a chess-player's nature.

Rudolf Spielmann

Contemporary chess rules, which replaced shatranj, were introduced at the end of the fifteenth and the beginning of the sixteenth century.

The first printed chess book based on the new rules was the treatise of the Spaniard Luis Ramires Lucena, *Love Resurrected and the Art of Playing Chess*, published not later than 1497. In that book Lucena analyzes 11 openings — “The best that I have seen in Rome and all over Italy, France and Spain” — and he includes 150 problems collected by him.

We are interested in his work mostly because he was the first to demonstrate a combination based on smothered mate, a combination which occurred subsequently in numerous guises in the games of players of various strengths.



12

From the treatise of Lucena

White to move

1 ♖c6 - e6+ ♔g8 - h8

Not 1... ♜f8, because of 2 ♜f7#.

2 ♖e5 - f7+ ♔h8 - g8
 3 ♖f7 - h6++

Unfortunately, White can win simply by 3 ♖d8+ ♔h8 (or 3... ♔f8 4 ♖f7#) 4 ♖e8+ ♖f8 5 ♖xf8#. In order to make the only solution be the smothered mate, we have to add, for example, a black bishop on e7. The textbooks of the time are full of imprecision and mistakes, and we will encounter a lot more. These mistakes, however, do not diminish the importance of those texts' contribution to the development of chess.

3 ... ♔g8 - h8

Once again Black cannot play 3... ♔f8 in view of 4 ♖f7#.

4 ♕e6 - g8+!!

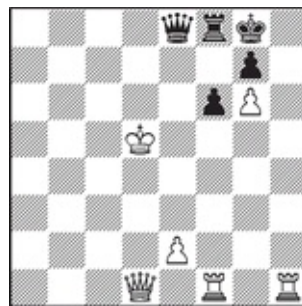
This is just brilliant. The queen sacrifice is aesthetically beautiful even 500 years later.

4. ... ♖b8xg8

Black's rook smothers its own king at the corner of the board and a picturesque checkmate follows.

5 ♖h6 - f7#!

In the year 1512, *This Book Teaches You to Play Chess and It Includes Problems* was published in Rome, in Italian, by Damiano, a Portuguese. In the chapter "16 fine points which occur in the game. It would be useful for you to know them, since they would improve your creativity" are some typical combinations. Here is one:



13

From the book of Damiano

White to move

In the original book, there was no white king in the diagram. We have added it on d5, so that White does not have 1 ♖d5+ ♖f7 2 ♖g7+ ♖xf7 3 ♖h8+ ♔xh8 4 ♖xf7 and 5 ♖h1#.

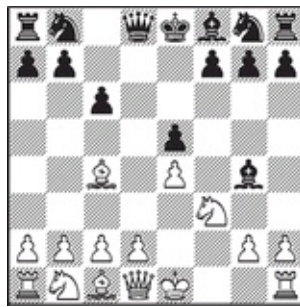
1 ♖h1 - h8+!	♔g8xh8
2 ♜f1 - h1+	♚h8 - g8
3 ♜h1 - h8+!	♚g8xh8
4 ♜d1 - h1+	♚h8 - g8

Black's king is moving to and fro between g8 and h8.

5 ♜h1 - h7#.

This motive is often exploited in contemporary practice as well.

In the middle of the sixteenth century the famous Spanish theoretician Lopez de Segura played numerous games against the best Italian players. Lopez was one of the first masters of contemporary chess, and the author of *A Book about Inventiveness and the Art of Playing Chess* (1561). Here is a fragment from one of his games.



14

**Lopez - Leonardo
Rome, 1560**

White to move

The first tactical shot would happen nowadays only in games between beginners:

1 ♙c4xf7+! ♔e8xf7?

It might seem amazing that Black loses a second pawn after the first; it would have been better to follow with 1...♙e7. But it was considered a matter of honor to accept sacrifices at the time.

2 ♜f3xe5+ ♔f7 - e8

Here again, it is better for Black to continue with: 2...♙e7 3 ♜xg4 ♜f6. However, even in this case it would be useless to continue in a position like this, being two pawns down.

3 ♜d1xg4 ♜g8 - f6

Leonardo lost his composure and succumbed without a fight. He would not be out of the woods after

3...♔e7, if only because of 4 ♖h4+ (or 4...♘f6 5 ♘g6+ hg 6 ♖xh8), while after 3...♘e7, White's pressure would increase with every move; for example: 4 ♖e6 ♖c7 5 d4 ♗a6 6 0-0 ♖c8 7 ♖f7+ ♔d8 8 ♖xf8+! and White wins a piece.

4 ♖g4 - e6+ ♖d8 - e7

It is a disaster for Black to play 4...♗e7 5 ♖f7#.

5 ♖e6 - c8+ ♖e7 - d8
 6 ♖c8xd8+ ♗e8xd8
 7 ♘e5 - f7+ followed by 8 ♘f7xh8

and it is curtains.

At the end of the sixteenth century Julio Chesare Polerio was considered to be the strongest chess player in Rome. He recorded the games of his contemporaries and they were later the basis of his manuscript which he completed in 1594.



15

From Polerio's manuscript
 Domenico-NN

White to move

This is one of the positions in which contemporary masters sacrifice the bishop on h7 without much thought. Thanks to the work of the sixteenth-century masters we know now that Black would hardly survive here:

1 ♗d3xh7+! ♖g8xh7

After 1...♖h8, White could have retreated his bishop to c2, keeping an extra pawn, but it would be more energetic for him to follow with 2 ♘g5. For example, 2...g6 3 ♘xf7+ ♖xf7 4 ♗xg6, and White maintains numerous threats.

2 ♘f3 - g5+ ♗e7xg5

It is also bad for Black to defend with: 2... ♖g8 3 ♗h5 ♘xg5 (or 3... ♘f6 4 ef, and White mates in two) 4 hg f5 5 g6, and Black cannot avoid mate on h8. Instead, he should have played 2... ♖g6, but after 3 h5+ ♖h6 4 ♘xf7++, Black's compensation for the queen is evidently insufficient. It is also possible for White to follow with 3 ♖c2+, or 3 ♖d3+, and only after 3...f5 to play 4 h5+.

3 h4xg5+

and Domenico won, because Black would not have saved himself with 3... ♖g8 4 ♗h5 f5 5 g6, with an unavoidable mate on h8, or 3... ♖g6 4 ♗h5+ ♖f5 5 g6+, or 5 ♗h7+ with mate to follow.

Many of the games in Polerio's book contain tactical motives. Here is a typical example:



Black to move

16

From Polerio's manuscript

Black to move

1 ... g5 - g4!

Black sacrifices a knight for attack.

2 f3 - f4

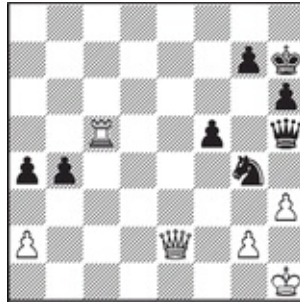
White, of course, declines the "gift." After 2 ♖xc6? gf+ 3 ♖h1 ♖g2, White's king is in a hopeless position: 4 ♖g1 ♖xh2+! 5 ♖xh2 ♗h4#; or 4 d4 ♖xh2+! 5 ♖xh2 ♗h4+ 6 ♖g1 ♗g4+ and 7... ♖g2#; 4 h3 ♗g5! 5 ♖xa8+ ♖g7 and White cannot stop 6... ♖h2+! 7 ♖xh2 ♗g2#. Therefore he must give up his queen with 4 ♗xa8 ♗xa8, but that is still not enough to save the game.

2. ... g4 - g3
3 h2 x g3?

Now White gets mated in two. He would not be out of danger after 3 d4 ♗xd4! 4 cd ♗xd4. For example, 5 ♖g2 ♖b8 6 ♗d5 gf+ 7 ♖f3 ♖g1 8 ♖e2 ♗h4 9 ♗d2 ♗g4+ 10 ♖d3 ♖xf1 11 ♗xf1 ♖d1+ 12 ♗d2 ♗xa1.

with the unavoidable threat 4... ♔d8 - h4#.

A citizen of Naples, Alessandro Salvio, wrote an interesting treatise about chess in 1604. The position in Diagram 6 is from that book.



17

Ventury - Salvio

White to move

Black's position is worse. White could have played 1 ♖g1. It is also good for him to try 1 ♔f3, since Salvio would not be able to keep his f5-pawn, because after 1...g6, White can mate in two after a queen check, or with the rook on the seventh rank. 1... ♘f6 2 ♔xh5 ♘xh5 3 ♖xf5. Ventury can win another pawn, and he should easily prevail with his extra exchange. Instead he wanted to win quickly and beautifully.

1 ♖e2xg4? f5xg4!
2 ♔c5xh5 g7 - g5!!

Now comes the surprise! Salvio cuts White's rook away from the queenside and one of Black's pawns promotes.

White resigned.

Ventury was in shock and he decided not to test Salvio's technique in the queen and pawns against rook and pawns endgame arising after 3 hg (It is very bad for White to play: 3 h4? ♔g6.) 3...b3! 4 ab (or 4 ♖h3 b2!) 4...a3! 5 ♖h3 a2 and 6...a1 ♔.

We end the chapter with some examples from the legacy of the Italian player Gioacchino Greco, born in Calabria, one of the strongest players in Europe in the first half of the seventeenth century. He was the author of several treatises on chess published between 1619 and 1625. Greco's works were in fact collections of games with comments on variations. Some of these games were not even played - Greco invented them in order to demonstrate some instructive combinations.

"The Italian school and, most of all, Gioacchino Greco, introduced the chess combination as an important component of chess skill. There were great masters after Greco who were quite adept at combinations - it would be enough to name Anderssen, Morphy, Alekhine, Tal, Fischer, Kasparov. Still, Greco was the first!" (Mikhail Botvinnik)



18

From Greco's manuscripts
Greco-NN

White to move

1 g6xh7+!!

This is a brilliant idea, which is often seen nowadays as well. In similar positions White often wins with 1 g7+ ♖xh5 2 gh ♔, but Greco's solution is more effective - and spectacular, too.

1 ... ♖f6xh5
2 ♔d3 - g6#



19

From Greco's manuscripts

Black to move

1 ... ♖h4xf2+
2 ♔g1 - h1 ♖f2 - g1+!!

This is an interesting treatment of the theme of smothered mate. Now, after 2 ♖xg1, or 2 ♖xg1, Black finishes the job with 2... ♖f2#.



20

From Greco's manuscripts

White to move

1 ♖c4 - e6+! ♔d7xe6
2 ♜h5 - e8+,

With 3 d4 - d5# to follow.



21

Greco - NN

1620

White to move

1 ♖c4xf7+!

“That is the first combination in this game, but it is not the last. Greco never overlooked possibilities like this. Now Black cannot play 1... ♔xf7, because of 2 ♜xf3+ and he loses his queen.” (Botvinnik)

1 ... ♔e8 - d8
2 ♜d1xf3 ♜h3 - d7
3 ♞h1xh7!

“The protection of the f8-square has been weakened, and that enhances White's attack against

Black's king on d8." (Mikhail Botvinnik)

Greco is not tempted by 3 ♖d5 ♗f6 4 ♖xb7.

3	...	♗h8xh7
4.	♗f7xg8	♗h7 - h2+
5	♗f2 - g1	

"White is indeed an exchange down, but he wins a piece, because Black is incapable of protecting both his pieces (the bishop on f8 and the rook on h2).

In case of 5... ♗h3 6 ♗xf8+ ♖d7 7 ♗f7+ ♖c6 8 ♗c4+ ♖d7 9 ♗e6+ ♗xe6 10 ♗xe6+ ♖xe6 11 ♗xh2, White wins easily." (Mikhail Botvinnik).

It is also bad for Black to play 8... ♖b6, because of: 9 ♗b4+ ♖c6 10. d5+ ♖d7 11 ♗e6+.

5	...	♗h2xc2?
---	-----	---------

Now Black loses his queen. It was slightly better for him to defend with 5... ♗e7 6 ♖xh2.

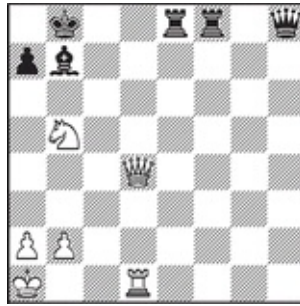
6 ♗f3xf8+

White can also win after the move order 6 ♗g5+ ♗e7 7 ♗f8+ ♗e8 8 ♗xe7+ ♖d7 9 ♗e6+! ♖xe6 10 ♗xe8.

6	...	♗d7 - e8
7	♗c1 - g5+	♖d8 - d7
8	♗g8 - e6+!	♗e8xe6
9	♗f8 - d8+	♖d7 - c6
10	d4 - d5+,	

White won the queen and Black was checkmated soon afterwards.

How Would You Play?



22

From the book of Damiano, 1512

White to move

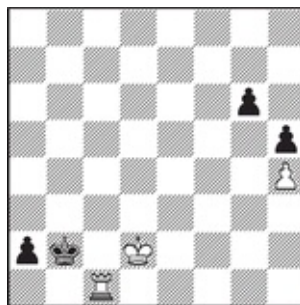


White to move

23

From the book of Damiano, 1512

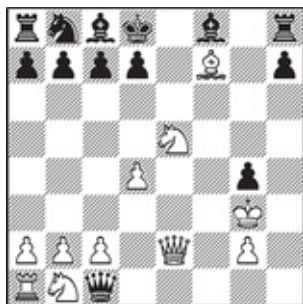
White to move



24

From the book of Salvio, 1604

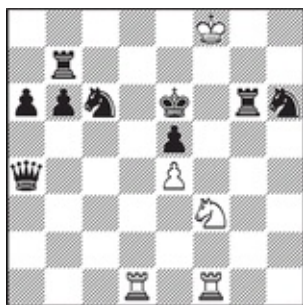
White to move



25

From Greco's manuscripts, 1619-1625

White to move



26

From Greco's manuscripts, 1619-1625

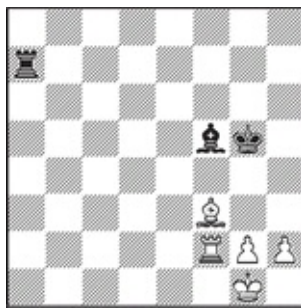
White to move



27

From Greco's manuscripts, 1619-1625

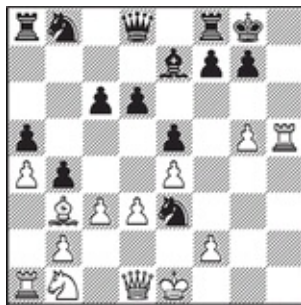
Black to move



28

From Greco's manuscripts, 1619-1625

Black to move



29

From Greco's manuscripts, 1619-1625

White to move



30

From Greco's manuscripts, 1619-1625

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 22. 1 ♔d6+ (White also wins after 1 ♔xa7+ ♔c8 2 ♔c5+ ♔b8 3 ♖c1, but after 1 ♔d6+ he wins faster.) 1... ♔a8 (or 1... ♔c8 2 ♔c7#) 2 ♘c7+ ♔b8 3 ♘a6++ (White can win in 5 moves without sacrificing his queen: 3 ♘xe8+ ♔a8 4 ♔d8+ ♔c8 5 ♔xc8#) 3... ♔a8 (or 3... ♔c8 4 ♔c7#) 4 ♔b8+! ♖xb8 5 ♘c7#. This is a classical example of smothered mate.

Diagram 23. 1 ♙b5! This is another tactical resource well-known to contemporary masters. White wins. For example, 1... ♔xb5? 2 ♘xc7+ and 3 ♘xb5; it is also bad for Black to play 1... ♔c5? 2 ♙e3! or 2 b4!, and Black loses his queen. In fact, Black can save his queen, but not the game, in the variation 1... ♙b4+ 2 ♔d1 ♔g6. (It is worse for Black to continue with 2... ♔c5 3 ♙e3 ♔f8 4 ♘xc7+, and White wins.) 3 ♘xc7+ ♔d8 4 ♔xg6 hg 5 ♘xa8, or immediately 1... ♔g6 2 ♘xc7+ ♔d8 3 ♔xg6 hg 4 ♘xa8.

Diagram 24. 1 ♖a1!! This is a brilliant rook-sacrifice, because every other move leads to a draw. For example, 1 ♖c8 a1 ♔ 2 ♖b8+ ♔a2 3 ♖a8+ ♔b1 4 ♖xa1+ ♔xa1 5 ♔e3 ♔b2 6 ♔f4 ♔c3 7 ♔g5 ♔d4 8 ♔xg6 ♔e5 9 ♔xh5 ♔f6, or 9... ♔f5 with a theoretical draw. Analogous positions arise after 1 ♖c2+, followed by 2 ♖xa2, or if White's rook is moved to the right on the first rank. 1... ♔xa1 (This loses in spectacular fashion after seven moves, but the situation after 1... ♔b3 2 ♔c1 ♔a3 3 ♔c2 ♔b4 4 ♖xa2, or: 2...g5 3 hg h4 4 g6 h3 5 g7 h2 6 g8 ♔+ is completely hopeless for Black, although it enables him to prolong his resistance. We will also mention that after 1... ♔b3, White also wins with the line 2 ♔e3 ♔b2 3 ♖xa2+ ♔xa2 4 ♔f4 ♔b3 5 ♔g5 ♔c4 6 ♔xg6 ♔d5 7 ♔xh5 ♔e6 8 ♔g6 ♔e7 9 ♔g7) 2 ♔c2! (but not 2 ♔c1?? g5 3 hg h4 4 g6 h3 5 g7 h2 6 g8 ♔ h1 ♔+) 2...g5 3 hg h4 4 g6 h3 5 g7 h2 6 g8 ♔ h1 ♔ 7 ♔g7#.

Quite a spectacular finish.

Diagram 25. 1 ♘c6+! and 2 ♔e8#.

Diagram 26. 1 ♘g5+! ♖xg5 2 ♖f6+! ♔xf6 3 ♖d6#. We are indebted to Abu Naim Al-Khadim for this mating method.

Diagram 27. 1... ♘f2+ 2 ♔e1 ♘d3++ 3 ♔d1 (or 3 ♔f1 ♔f2#) 3... ♔e1+! 4 ♘xe1 ♘f2#. This is the theme of smothered mate.

Diagram 28. 1... ♖a1+ 2 ♖f1 ♖xf1+ 3 ♔xf1 ♙h3!! 4 gh. The position on the board is a draw, because Black's king easily reaches the h8-square, and White cannot promote any of his pawns. If White does not capture Black's bishop on move four, then Black captures White's pawn on g2 with his bishop, and the game ends in a draw, just as in the above-mentioned variation.

Diagram 29. 1 ♖h8+! (according to Damiano) 1... ♔xh8 2 ♔h5+ ♔g8 3 g6 ♖e8 (The moves 3... ♘c2+ and 3... ♘g2+ prolong the game for only a couple of moves; for example: 4 ♔d1 ♘e3+ 5 fe) 4

h7+. (It is the same after 4 **xf7+**, or 4 **gf+**) **4...f8 5 h8#.**

Diagram 30. 1 xh7+! xh7 (Here we will give you only the basic variations, because this example is quite similar to the game Domenico - NN.) **2 g5+ xg5** (Black would not save the game with 2...g8. After 3 h5 he has several possibilities, but they all lose very quickly: 3...f6 4 ef, 3...xg5 4 hg f5 5 g6, 3...e8 4 h7+ and 5 h8#, 3...b4+ 4 c3 e8 5 xf7+ h8 6 h5+ g8 7 h7+ f8 8 h8+ e7 9 xg7#. In order for Black to stay in the game, he must give up his queen after 2...h6, or 2...g6 3 h5+ h6, but in both cases White would later play xe6+, or xf7++, collecting Black's queen.) **3 hg+ g6** (In case of 3...g8 4 h5, Black is not out of the woods either after 4...f5, or following 4...f6, because of 5 g6.) **4 h5+ f5 5 h7+** (White wins a move more quickly after 5 h3+ g6 6 h7#, or 5...e4 6 d3#) **5...g6 6 h3+ e4 7 d3#.**

Diagram 31. 1 g5+ (It is also good for White to play 1 h4+ e6 2 d5+ xe5 3 e1+ and 4 xe8; White mates just as in the main line according to Greco after 2...xd5 3 c3+ c5 4 b4+.) **1... e6 2 f6+ xf6** (In case of 2...e7, White's simplest response is 3 g7+ d8 4 f8, and later 5 xe8+ xe8 6 xh8.) **3 xf6+ d5 4 c3+ xd4** (Black gets mated only a bit later after 4...c4 5 f1+ xd4 6 f4+ c5 7 b4+, and then as Greco shows) **5 f4+** (White wins faster after 5 d1+ c5 6 d5+ and 7 f4#, or 5...c4 6 f1+ and 7 b5#) **5...c5 6 b4+ c6** (The game would last a move longer after 6...b6; for example, 7 d4+ a6 8 c4+ b5 9 xb5#) **7 c4+ b6 8 a4#.** It is equally effective for White to play 8 d5# or 8 b5#.

Diagram 32. 1 e5!

The other possibility for White is 1 xg6 hg 2 e5, and here Black has four possibilities: 2...xg5?? 3 f7#; 2...d5 3 xg6+ g8 4 xf6 and White wins; 2...xe5 3 xe5! and White wins the enemy queen for a rook. We should also mention that White cannot play 3 xd8? due to 3...xh2+ 4 h1 g3+! with a perpetual check; 2...e8 and here White should continue 3 xf6 gf 4 c6! f7 5 xf7+ xf7 6 e7+ g8 7 fe1!, winning a piece by 7...h7 8 e8+ g7 9 e7+ h6 10 xh7+ xh7 11 e7. White has a mating attack in case of 7...h5 8 e8+ g7 9 e7+ h6 10 f4! g5 11. h8+, but it is also possible for him to play 3 f3 d6, and here not 4 xf6 de, but 4 g4! f7 5 xf6 gf 6 xf6 h5 7 e7 with initiative; the move 3 c6 is weaker, because of 3...f7! 4 xf6?! xb3!.

1...xe5

After this natural move Black's position becomes hopeless. It is better for him to play 1...d5 2 xg6 xg5! 3 a3+ c5 4 f7 b6 5 xh8 hg, but not 3...d6 4 c4!., and not: 3...e7 4 f3+ f6 5 f7 d7 6 xh8 hg 7 xg6+ g8 8 h5!. White can also continue with 3 f7 d7! 4 xh8 hg 5 xg6+ g8 6 e5 f6 7 xd5 with a better position.

2 xe5 g6 (There is no salvation for Black.) **3 h6+ g7 4 f5+! gf 5 f7#.** Or **4...e7 5 e1+ e5 6 exe5+ d6 7 d5#.** Now all the heavy pieces of Greco are deployed on the fifth rank. It is amazing that at the beginning, after 1. e5, all three of White's light pieces were stationed there!

Diagram 33. 1 xf4!! (This paradoxical move enables White to organize a powerful attack.) Now Black can play neither 1...xh5?? 2 d6#, nor: 1...gf?? 2 c5#; therefore he is forced to continue

with 1...♖e7. Here it looks like Greco is obliged to follow with 2 ♘g5, obtaining sufficient compensation for the piece and preserving the pressure against his enemy's position (2...♞bd7 3 ♖h4). Still, White does not slow down his attack: 2 ♙d6+ ♗xd6. Black is forced to capture that brave bishop. It is bad for him to follow with 2...♞d7 3 ♖d1, or 2...♞d8 3 ♖h2. 3 e5+ (White maintains his advantage also after 3 ♖h2+; for example, 3...♞e7 4 0-0-0 ♞e8 5. fe♖+ ♗xe8 6 ♖h1.) 3...♞xe5 (White would have countered every other retreat of Black's king with the move 4 ef, with initiative. The position is so rich with tactical possibilities that it is practically impossible to give a thorough analysis here; therefore we show only the most interesting variations.) 4 f8♖ (One more sacrifice, but it would be stronger for White to follow with: 4 ♖h2+!. For example, 4...♞f5 5 ♖d6! ♞bd7 6 ♙d3+ ♗g4 7 ♖e6+ ♞g3 8 ♖e3+ ♗xg2 9 ♙f1+ and White mates. It is also interesting for White to play 4 ♖e2+, with the following developments: 4...♞d6 5 ♖d1+ ♞d5 6 ♞xd5.) 4...♖xf8 (It is worse for Black to try 4...♞xh5, in view of 5 ♖c5+ ♗f4 6 0-0-0 and White's attack is victorious; for example, 6...♞g3 7 ♖f2+ ♗g4 8 ♙e2+ ♞xe2+ 9 ♖xe2+ ♗f5 10 ♖f1+ ♗g6 11 ♖e4+ and White mates. It is more or less the same after 5...♞f6 6 ♞e4+ ♗g6 7 ♖xg5+ ♗h7 8 ♖xh5+ ♖h6 9 ♞g5+ ♗g7 10 ♖f7#) 5 ♖xg5+ ♗d6! (The move 5...♙f5 loses the queen for Black after 6 ♖g3+ ♗d4 7 ♞e2+ ♗xc4 8 ♖b3+ ♗c5 9 ♖a3+, while 5...♞d4 leads to mate after 6. 0-0-0+! ♗xc4 7 b3+!) 6 0-0-0+ ♞d5! (or 6...♞e7?? 7 ♖e5+ ♙e6 8 ♖xe6#; 6...♞c7?? 7 ♖e5+ and if 7...♞b6, then 8 ♞a4#) 7 ♙xd5 cd 8 ♞xd5 ♞c6 9 ♖g3+ ♙e5?? 10 ♖a3+, and White wins the queen.

In Mikhail Yudovich's book *Stories About Chess* (Physical Education and Sports, Moscow, 1959, p. 47) it says "If instead of 9...♙e5, Black had played 9...♞d7, then White would win outright with 10 ♞c7+." Things are not so simple, though. After 10...♞d4, White will have to work hard to prove his advantage, for example, 11 ♞xa8 ♖c5 12 c3 ♗e7, with a rather complicated game. It is also possible for Black to play 9...♞e6, and White has no forced win. There might follow 10 ♞c7+ ♗f6, or 10 ♞f4+ ♗f7. Therefore on move three or four White should play ♖h2+.

III

From Stamma to Philidor (Eighteenth Century)

Modern chess is too much concerned with things like pawn structure. Forget it - checkmate ends the game.

Nigel Short

In 1737 a book was published in Paris, entitled *Experience in Chess, Consisting of Rules On How to Play Well and How to Obtain Advantages with Precise Moves, Which Can Be Called the Secrets of This Game*. In this work the Syrian player Philip Stamma showed 100 positions in which the win was achieved by exquisite maneuvers and amazing combinations. The majority of them still impress us with their brilliant tactical ideas and spectacular sacrifices.



34

From the book of Stamma

White to move

In this position, just as in many mansuba from the Middle Ages, Black is threatening mate in one with 1... ♔h1#, yet White comes out ahead.

1 ♖c4 - h4!

♔h3 x h4?

If Black considered his opponent's sacrifice to be an act of desperation, then he was utterly wrong. Instead, he had to decline the Greek gift and give up his queen with 1...fe! 2 ♖xh3 ♘xh3+ 3 ♔g2 ♘xc6.

Strangely enough, 1...fe is not mentioned in any books, including Laszlo Polgar's 1998 work *Chess Middlegames*.

It is bad for Black to play 1... ♖f5, because of 2 ♘e7!.

2 ♖b3 - g8+!!

A magnificent move! Now the play is forced:

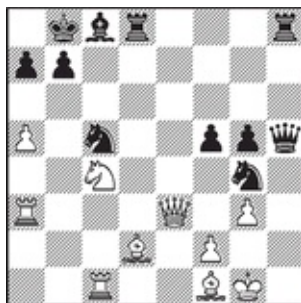
2 ... ♔h8 x g8

In case of 2... ♖xg8 Black loses immediately due to 3 ♘f7#.

3 ♘c6 - e7+ ♔g8 - h8
 4 ♘e5 - f7+! ♖f8 x f7
 5 ♖c1 - c8+ ♖f7 - f8

6 ♖c8 x f8#

White's attack is impressive. It is a scintillating display of sacrifices resulting in a mate of the opponent's king.



35

From the book of Stamma

White to move

White's queen is hanging and Black is threatening to mate on h1 and h2. What should White do?

1 ♖e3 - f4+! ♗g5 x f4

Black is forced to capture the queen. After 1... ♔b8, 1... ♖d6 or 1... ♘e5, Black loses even more quickly than in the text.

2 ♘d2 x f4+ ♔b8 - a8

Possibly Black still hopes to win, but 2... ♘e5 3 ♗xe5+ ♖d6 4 ♗xd6+ ♔a8, and 5 ♘b6+! gains only a couple of moves.

3 ♖c4 - b6+! a7 x b6
 4 a5 x b6+ ♜c5 - a6

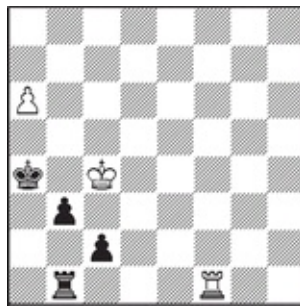
Naturally, not 4... ♞a4 5 ♖xa4#.

5 ♜c1 x c8+!! ♜d8 x c8

But not 5 ♖xa6+?, because of 5...ba 6 ♖xc8+ ♜b7!! and Black wins.

6 ♜a3 x a6+! b7 x a6
 7 ♙f1 - g2+ ♜c8 - c6
 8 ♙g2 x c6#

Stamma demonstrated memorable combinational ideas in the endgame as well.



36 From the book of Stamma

White to move

The first impression is that White should resign, since he cannot play 1 a7? because of 1...c1 ♜+. But

1 ♜f1 - c1!! ♜b1 x c1

Black does not change much with 1... ♜a5 2 a7 For example, 2... ♖xc1 3 a8 ♜+ ♜b6 4 ♜xb3, and White has a won endgame: queen against rook. It is more or less the same for Black after 1... ♜a3 2 ♜c3 ♜a4 3 a7 ♖xc1 4 a8 ♜+ ♜b5 6 ♜xb3.

2 a6 - a7 ♜a4 - a3

White is threatening mate. Therefore Black can promote neither his c-nor his b-pawn. He can transpose to the variation 2... ♜a5 3 a8 ♜+ ♜b6 4 ♜xb3, which we analyzed in the notes to Black's first move.

3 ♜c4 - c3

Now it is no good for Black to play 3... ♖a2 because after 4 a8 ♖+ ♖b1 5 ♖a3! White mates next move. Black's only try is 3... ♖a4 4 a8 ♖+ ♖b5 5 ♖xb3, after which, because of 6 ♖b2, he loses his last pawn and White has a theoretically won endgame, queen versus rook.

Although queen versus rook seems like an elementary win, in fact it is difficult against good defense, and even grandmasters cannot always mate or capture the rook within the required 50 moves.



37

From the book of Stamma

White to move

Here Stamma gives the beautiful variation:

1 ♖c5 - e7+	♖e8 x e7
2 ♘e5 - g6++!	♖e7 - d8
3 ♘g5 - f7+	♖d8 - c8
4 ♘g6 - e7#	

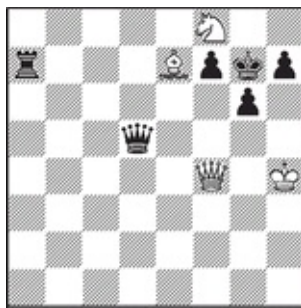
This is exquisite, but White can win even more quickly with the tactic 1 ♘xd7+! ♖d8 (Black gets checkmated in study-like fashion after 1... ♘e4 2 ♘f6#!, or 2... ♖xe2 3 ♘xf6#) 2 ♘xb6+ followed by mate.

If we would like to add a black pawn on e7 in Stamma's position, his solution would be the only one, and White's combination would start by sacrificing the queen to open lines and draw the opponent's king out: 1 ♖xe7+!!

Stamma's work has been duly appreciated by later generations. The first Russian chess master Alexander Petroff wrote about Stamma's book, "Similar positions seldom happen in real games nowadays, but they are tremendously useful as exercises. You can test yourself on how to find your way out of even the most difficult positions, and to win your game in desperate situations."

In 1750 a small treatise was published in Italy, *The Chess Experience of an Anonymous Player from Modena*. Its author was Ercole del Rio. There were some opening variations in that book, but there were also some original combinations.

Here is one of them:



38

From the book of del Rio

White to move

White must play energetically, because Black is ready to counterattack. The straightforward move 1 ♖f6+? would not gain anything for White, since Black would not accept the sacrifice 1... ♜xf8?, because of 2 ♚b8+ ♜d8 3 ♜xd8#. Instead he should play 1... ♜g8!.

1 ♜f8 - e6+! ♜d5 x e6

The other possibilities for Black do not change anything: 1...fe 2 ♜f8#; 1... ♜g8 2 ♜b8+ ♜d8 3 ♜xd8#; 1... ♜h8 2 ♜b8+ or 2 ♜f6+ with mate next move.

2 ♜f4 - h6+!!

A fantastic tactic.

2 ... ♜g7 x h6

If Black's king retreats to the eighth rank, White finishes with 3 ♜f8#.

3 ♜e7 - f8#!

This is a pearl of a combination, a creative masterpiece.

According to the book *Chess Encyclopedia* (Soviet Encyclopedia, Moscow, 1990, p. 199), the following position arose in the only recorded game preserved until now of Legall de Kermeur, the chess teacher of Philidor. Some chess historians claim this game was played in 1787, not 1750, and that the position we show here was a bit different. We will leave that argument to the historians, while we give you the opportunity to appreciate the power of White's knights and the originality of his mating net.



39

**Legall - Saint Bris
Paris, 1750**

White to move

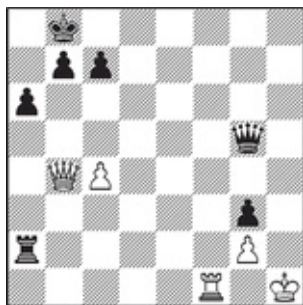
1 ♖f3 x e5!! ♔g4 x d1?

Naturally, Black did not have to capture the queen; he should have resigned himself to losing a pawn after 1...d6 2 ♔xg4, or 1...♗e6 2 ♗xe6 f6 3 ♖f3. But Saint Bris could not believe that his king might be seriously endangered so early in the game. The author of this book had the same experience in 1967, overlooking a similar tactical blow in a tournament of third-grade players. I was warned, however, by a soft whisper behind me, “Legall’s mate.” I was so overwhelmed by the queen sacrifice that I was incapable of calculating the simple variation starting with 1...♗xd1. Finally, not being able to see it through, I decided to decline the generous gift. Saint Bris captured the queen and look what happened:

2 ♗c4 x f7+! ♔e8 - e7
3 ♖c3 - d5#

This is Legall’s mate! There have been many tournament games since then in which this theme has occurred.

In 1763 a treatise was published by the Italian theoretician Jean-Batiste Lolo, *Game of Chess*. We quote here one of the most famous positions from that work.



From the treatise of Lola

White to move

White cannot win; moreover it is rather difficult to see how he can even draw, because Black is threatening check with his queen along the h-file, followed by mate on h2. White would not save the game with 1 ♖g1? either, in view of 1... ♕e3+ 2 ♖h1 ♕h6+ 3 ♖g1 ♕h2#.

1 ♖f1 - f8+

Whenever an experienced chess player makes a move like this in such a position, his opponent usually treats it as a “spite check,” to be followed by resigning. Still, here things are far from simple.

1 ... ♔b8 - a7
2 ♖f8 - a8+!

The text is an excellent move, but we believe that it is even more precise, and no less elegant, for White to play 2 ♕c5+!. Black is forced to accept the sacrifice; otherwise he gets mated (2...b6?? 3 ♕xc7#). So after 2... ♕xc5 3 ♖a8+! ♔b6! 4 ♖xa6+!! leads to stalemate after 4... ♖xa6, 4... ♔xa6, or 4...ba.

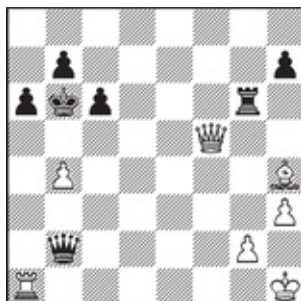
2 ... ♔a7 x a8
3 ♖b4 - f8+ ♔a8 - a7

Black should not risk too much (in his attempt to avoid stalemate) with 3... ♕d8? 4 ♕xd8+ ♔a7 5 ♕d4+.

4 ♕f8 - c5+!!

This move is incredibly beautiful. After 4... ♕xc5, White is stalemated. Black set a trap for his opponent with 4...b6, 4... ♔a8, or 4... ♔b8. In answer to each of these moves, White should not play 5 ♕xg5?!, because of 5... ♖a1+ 6 ♕c1 ♖xc1#. White can draw again here by perpetual check after 4...b6 5 ♕xc7+ ♔a8 6 ♕c8+ ♔a7 7 ♕c7+; 4... ♔b8 (or 4... ♔a8) 5 ♕f8+ ♔a7 6 ♕c5+!

Domenico Lorenzo Ponziani’s important work *The Incomparable Game of Chess* was published in 1769 in the town of Modena. Below is a typical combination from that book.



White to move

1 ♖h4 - d8+

White can win here without sacrifices: 1 ♖f2+ ♔c7 (not 1...c5 2 ♚xc5#) 2 ♚f7+. The game might continue 2...♔b8 3 ♚e8+ ♔c7 4 ♚e7+ ♔c8 5 ♖d1 ♚h8 6 ♖b6 and mate in two. Still, the forced variation recommended by Ponziani is the fastest way to victory.

1 ... ♔b6 - a7
2 ♖a1 x a6+! ♚b7 x a6

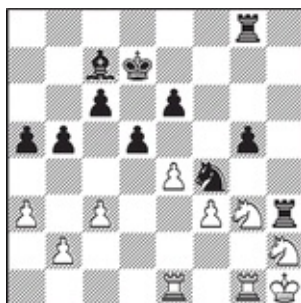
Black cannot play 2...♔xa6 because of 3 ♚a5#.

3 ♚f5 - d7+ ♔a7 - b8

Black loses even more quickly after 3...♔a8 4 ♚c8+ ♔a7 5 ♖b6+! ♔xb6 6 ♚b8#.

4 ♚d7 - c7+ ♔b8 - a8
5 ♚c7 - c8+ ♔a8 - a7
6 ♖d8 - b6+! ♔a7 x b6
7 ♚c8 - b8#

The strongest chess player of the same epoch, the second half of the eighteenth century, was François-André Danican Philidor. His strength compared to that of his contemporaries was so great that he used to give the majority of his opponents a handicap. He played numerous games blindfolded and sometimes he played simultaneous games against strong players as well. Here is the end of one of his games, which was played blindfold in a three-board simultaneous display.



42

Smith - Philidor
London, 1790

Black to move

1 ... ♖h3 x h2+!

Simple, yet delightful. Black could also have won a piece with 1... ♞d3, for example, 2 ♖d1 ♖gh8! 3 ♖d2 ♖xg3!.

2 ♖h1 x h2	♜g8 - h8+
3 ♞g3 - h5	♜h8 x h5+
4 ♖h2 - g3	♞f4 - h3+

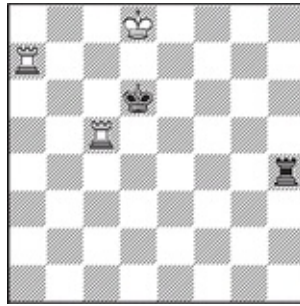
Philidor provokes his opponent into making a mistake. It was also good for him to play 4... ♖h3+ 5 ♞g4 ♖h4+! 6 ♞g3 (but not 6 ♞xg5, because of 6... ♜e7#) 6... ♞d3+ 7 e5 (White gets an “epaulet mate” after 7 ♞g2 ♖h2+ 8 ♞f1 ♖f2#) 7... ♜xe5+ 8 ♖xe5 ♞xe5 with an easy win for Black.

5 ♖g3 - g4??

White now loses in one move. A better try is 5 ♞g2, but after 5... ♞xg1 the outcome is not in doubt.

5 ... ♜h5 - h4#

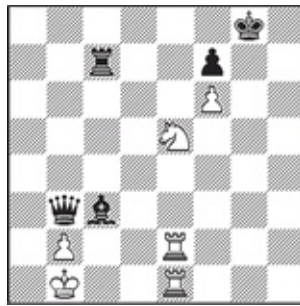
How Would You Play?



43

From the book of Stamma, 1737

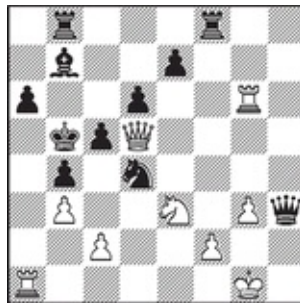
White to move



44

From the book of Stamma, 1737

White to move



45

From the book of Stamma, 1737

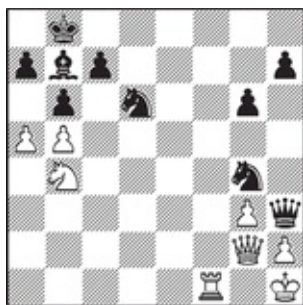
White to move



46

From the book of Stamma, 1737

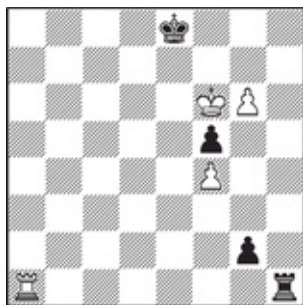
White to move



47

From the book of Stamma, 1737

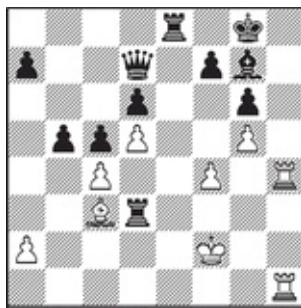
White to move



48

From the book of Stamma, 1737

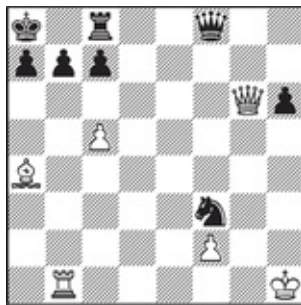
White to move



52

From the book of Stamma, 1737

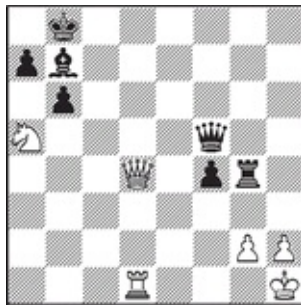
White to move



53

From the treatise of del Rio, 1750

White to move



54

From the treatise of del Rio, 1750

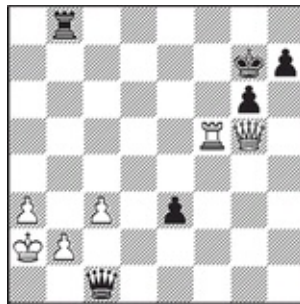
White to move



55

Rousseau - Prince Conti
Paris, 1759

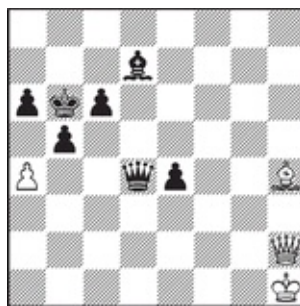
White to move



56

From the work of Lola
1763

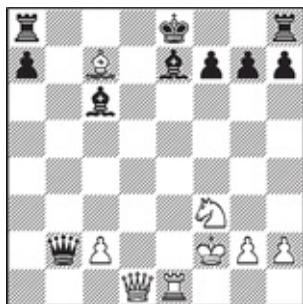
White to move



57

From the treatise of Ponziani, 1769

White to move



58

Philidor - Cotter
London, 1789

White to move
White played without the a1-rook



59

Philidor - Von Bruehl
London, 1789

White to move
White played without the b1-knight



60

Von Bruehl - Philidor
blind, London, 1790

Black to move
Black to move Black played without the f7-pawn



61
From the book of Allgaier
1795

White to move



62
From the book of Allgaier
1795

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 43. 1 ♖h5!! (White defends against 1...♖h8# and threatens 2 ♖a6#) 1...♖xh5 (Black loses more quickly after 1...♖c4 2 ♖a6+ ♖c6 3 ♖h6+) 2 ♖a6+ and later 3 ♖a5+, followed by 4 ♖xh5.

Diagram 44. 1 ♖g2+ (Unfortunately, there is another solution: 1 ♖g1+, with the same idea as in the main line: 1...♖f8! 2 ♖d7+! ♖xd7 3 ♖e8+! ♖xe8 4 ♖g8#) 1...♖f8 (In case Black's king goes to the h-file, White follows with 2 ♖h1#) 2 ♖d7+! ♖xd7 3 ♖e8+! ♖xe8 4 ♖g8#. This combination is based on an idea of Naim.

Diagram 45. 1 ♖a5+! (White cannot begin his combination with the move 1 ♖xc5+?!, because Black will not play 1...dc? 2 ♖a5+! ♖xa5 3 ♖c4+ ♖b5 4 ♖b6#, but 1...♖xc5; it is also bad for White to try 1 ♖c4?!, due to 1...♖e2#) 1...♖xa5 (The move 1...♖b6 allows a surprising finish: 2 ♖xc5#) 2 ♖xc5+!! dc (or 2...♖b5 3 ♖c4#) 3 ♖c4+ ♖b5 4 ♖b6#.

Diagram 46. 1 ♖e4+ ♖b7 (or 1...♖c6? 2 ♖b8#) 2 ♖b8+!! ♖xb8 3 ♖xa7+! ♖xa7 4 ♖c7#. Black's king perished in exile. Well done, Stamma.

Diagram 47. 1 ♖f8+ (In case of 1 ♖xb7+? White follows not with the line 1...♖xb7? 2 ♖f8+ ♖d8 3 ♖xd8+ ♖b7 4 a6#, but with 1...♖xb7 2 a6+ ♖c8!) 1...♖c8 (or 1...♖c8 2 ♖a6#) 2 ♖xb7+! ♖xb7 3 a6+ ♖b8 (or 3...♖a8 4 ♖xc8#) 4 ♖c6+ ♖a8 5 ♖xc8#.

Diagram 48. 1 ♖g1! (not 1 g7?!, because of the obvious response 1... g1 ♖+) 1...♖xg1 (Black cannot solve his problems if he does not capture the rook: 1...♖h2? 2 g7 and White wins, or 1...♖h6 2 ♖xg2 ♖f8 and here White transfers his rook to the queenside, for example 3 ♖a2, and wins easily.) 2 g7 and Black loses. A sample variation: 2...♖d7 3 g8 ♖ ♖f1 4 ♖xg2, and Black cannot play 4...♖xf4?, because of 5 ♖d2+ and White wins a rook. It is better for Black to defend with 3...♖c1 4 ♖xg2 ♖c5, but even here White's victory is just a matter of time. He can sacrifice his queen on f5 at an opportune moment and convert to a theoretically won king-and-pawn endgame.

Diagram 49. 1 ♖d7+! ♖xd7 2 ♖axc5+! (This problem is again marred by the presence of the side variation 2 ♖bxc5+! with the same ideas.) 2...dc (or 2...♖d8 3 ♖e6+ ♖d7 4 ♖bc5+! dc 5 ♖a4+ ♖c6 6 ♖xc6+! ♖xe6 7 d5#) 3 ♖xc5+ ♖d8 4 ♖e6+ ♖d7 5 ♖a4+ ♖c6 6 ♖xc6+! ♖xe6 7 d5#.

Diagram 50. 1 ♖d8+ ♖a7 (After 1...♖c8 2 ♖xc8+ White can mate with either of his knights.) 2 ♖b5+ ♖a6 3 ♖xc7+ ♖a7 4 ♖c8+!! (This original maneuver wins by force.) 4...♖xc8 (It is no better for Black to defend with 4...♖b8 5 ♖d6+ ♖a7 6 ♖db5#, or 5...♖c8 6 ♖xc8+ and White mates next move.) 5 ♖b5+ ♖b7 (After 5...♖a6, the solution is one move shorter than the main line: 6 ♖xc8+ ♖xb5 7 ♖c4#) 6 ♖c7+ ♖a6 (If 6...♖a8, then 7 ♖a7# or 7 ♖xc8#) 7 ♖xc8+ ♖xb5 8 ♖c4#.

Diagram 51. 1 ♖a1! (We have already seen this idea, but here we see a new version in action. It is considerably weaker for White to play 1 ♖d3? a1 ♖2 ♖xa1 ♖xa1, after which Black draws; for example, 3 ♖c4 ♖b2 4 ♖b5 ♖b3 5 ♖b6 ♖b4 6 ♖xb7 ♖xc5) **1... ♖xa1** (No better is 1...b5 2 c6 b4 3 c7 b3 4 c8 ♖ b2 5 ♖xb2 and White mates quickly.) **2 ♖c2!** (but not 2 ♖c1? b5! 3 c6 b4 4 c7 b3 5 c8 ♖ b2+ 6 ♖d1 b1 ♖+ 7 ♖c1!). The position of the queens and kings is picturesque and after the only possibility 7... ♖xc1+ 8 ♖xc1 Black gets stalemated. It is the same after 6 ♖d2) **2...b5! 3 c6!** (White cannot capture that pawn en passant, because of the stalemate.) **3...b4 4 c7 b3+ 5 ♖xb3 ♖b1 6 c8 ♖ a1 ♖+** (or 6...a1 ♖ 7 ♖c2#) **7 ♖c3**, with an easy win for White.

Diagram 52. 1 ♖h8+! (This is the theme of “X-ray.”) **1... ♖xh8 2 ♖xh8#.**

Diagram 53. 1 ♖a6!! It seems at first sight that White has two other attractive possibilities: 1 ♖xb7 and 1 ♖c6. In case of 1 ♖xb7?! Black responds neither 1... ♖xb7? 2 ♖b1+ and White mates next, nor 1... ♖f4? 2 ♖b8+! and Black loses after 2... ♖xb8 3 ♖c6+ ♖b7 4 ♖e8#, or 2... ♖xb8 3 ♖b1+ ♖b4 4 ♖xb4+ ♖a8 5 ♖c6#. Instead, Black responds 1... ♖c5! 2 ♖b1 ♖d4, parrying White’s direct threats, since White cannot play 2 ♖c6?, because of 2... ♖c1+ 3 ♖g2 ♖h4+ 4 ♖h2 ♖xg6 5 ♖b6+ ♖xc6. White cannot achieve much in the second variation either: 1 ♖c6 ♖b8! 2 ♖e4 ♖c8! 3 ♖xf3 bc 4 ♖xc6+ ♖b7 5 ♖h2 a5! 6 ♖b5 ♖b8. **1... ♖b8** (Black does no better with either 1...b5 2 ♖c6+ ♖b8 3 ♖xb5#, or 1...b6 2 ♖c6+ ♖b8 3 ♖b7#, 1...ba 2 ♖c6#) **2 ♖c6! ♖c8.** This move prevents the threat 3 ♖xb7+, but allows **3 ♖xa7+ ♖xa7 4 ♖a1#.**

Diagram 54. 1 ♖d6+ ♖a8 (or 1... ♖c6 2 ♖xc6#; 1... ♖c5 2 ♖xc5+ and White wins easily) **2 ♖c6!!** (A striking move; all other possibilities are clearly worse.) **2... ♖c8** (Black offers tenacious resistance. It was no use to try 2... ♖xc6, 2...ba, or 2... ♖g7, because of the resource 3 ♖d8+ ♖c8 4 ♖xc8#, but surprisingly, the same third move occurs.) **3 ♖d8!!** and the mate threat is impossible to parry. This is an unforgettable position! All White’s pieces are hanging, but they are all untouchable: 3... ♖xc6 4 ♖xc8#, 3...ba 4 ♖xc8#, 3... ♖xd8 4 ♖xb7#. On the other hand, Black must capture, for example, 3... ♖b8 4 ♖xb7#.

Diagram 55. 1 f5 dc+ (The position is so rich in possibilities for both sides that it would require several pages to analyze all the interesting lines; therefore we give only some key variations.) **2 ♖h1 cb?** (Even after 2... ♖f6 3 ♖h4 Rousseau would maintain numerous threats; Abram Roizman, in his book *Chess Miniatures* (Minsk: Polimja, 1978, p. 31), indicated that Black could have parried the attack with 2... ♖e5! 3 f6 ♖g6 4 f7 ♖xc4, or 3 ♖xg8 h6) **3 ♖xg8** (3 f6 also deserved attention; for instance, 3... ♖g6 4 f7 ♖f5 5 fg ♖+ ♖xg8 6 ♖xf5+ ♖e8 7 ♖f7+ ♖d7 8 ♖h3 ♖e7 9 ♖e5+ ♖c6 10 ♖d5+ ♖xd5 11 ed+ ♖b5 12 ♖b3+ ♖a6 13 ♖c4+ ♖a5 14 ♖d2#. Amazingly, Black cannot promote his b2-pawn in this line.) **3...ba ♖** (Black could also have tried 3... ♖xg8 4 ♖h6 ba ♖.) **4 f6!** and Prince Conti resigned. The resignation seems premature. He could have continued instead with 4... ♖xg8 (The position arising after 4... ♖axf6 5 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 6 ♖xf6 ♖xg8 7 ♖xh7 is interesting to analyze as well.) 5 fg ♖f5! (but not 5... ♖e6?, because of 6 ♖f6 ♖xf6 7 ♖xf6, with an advantage for White.) 6 gh ♖+ ♖xh8 7 ef ♖d4, and Black can still resist.

Diagram 56. 1 ♖f6+ (Unfortunately, there is another possibility: 1 ♖e7+, then 1... ♖h8 2 ♖f8+ ♖

xf8 3 ♖xf8#, or 1... ♖g8 2 ♖e6+ ♖g7 3 ♖e5+ ♖g8 4 ♖xb8+ ♖g7 5 ♖f8#, while the move 3... ♖h6 leads to mate: 4 ♖h5+! gh 5 ♖f6#; 1 ♖e7+ ♖h6 2 h4+ reaches the same position as in the main line.) 1... ♖h6 (The line 1... ♖g8 2 ♖e6+ is unfavourable for Black after 2... ♖h8 3 ♖e5+ ♖g8 4 ♖xb8+ ♖g7 5 ♖f8#, as well as after 2... ♖g7 3 ♖e5+, as was mentioned in the notes to White's first move.) 2 ♖h4+ ♖g7 3 ♖d4+! ♖h6 (or 3... ♖g8 4 ♖d5+ ♖g7 5 ♖e5+ with a checkmate) 4 ♖f4+! ♖g7 (or 4...g5 5 ♖xg5#) 5 ♖e5+ ♖h6 (or 5... ♖g8 6 ♖xb8+ ♖g7 7 ♖f8#) 6 ♖h5+! (White finishes his opponent off spectacularly.) 6...gh 7 ♖f6#.

Diagram 57. White draws in study-like fashion after 1 ♖f2! e3 2 ♖xe3! ♖xe3 3 ♖f2!! ♖xf2 (Black might even lose after 3... ♖c5?? 4 a5+! ♖xa5 5 ♖xc5) 4 a5+ and no matter where Black's king goes, it's stalemate. Exquisite!

Diagram 58. 1 ♖xe7+! (Naturally, not 1 ♖d6?, because of 1... ♖xc2+ 2 ♖e2? ♖xe2+ 3 ♖xe2 ♖xd6) 1... ♖xe7? (Now Black gets mated by force. Instead Cotter should have chosen 1... ♖f8 2 ♖d6 ♖g8 3 ♖xc6 ♖f8, and then the non-forced variation 4 ♖e8 h6 5 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 6 ♖a8+ ♖e7 7 ♖xh8 ♖xc2+. In this line Black should not be in a hurry to capture the bishop on c7; he should take it only after a series of checks.) 2 ♖d6+ ♖e8 3 ♖xc6+ ♖e7 (or 3... ♖f8 4 ♖d6+ ♖g8 5 ♖a8+ ♖b8 6 ♖xb8#) 4 ♖d6+ ♖d8 (This move loses immediately, but even after 4... ♖e6, or 4... ♖f6, Cotter would have been checkmated. In both cases Philidor would not need to waste time capturing his opponent's queen, but could have continued instead 5 ♖c5+ ♖f5 6 g4+ ♖xg4 7 ♖e4+ ♖h5 8 ♖h4+ ♖g6 9 ♖g5#) 5 ♖c7+ ♖e8 6 ♖e7#.

Diagram 59. Philidor continued here with 1 ♖a6? (He could have won without any sacrifices with 1 ♖c5 ♖xc5 2 ♖xg8+. The move 1 ♖c5 was recommended by Ilya Maizelis in *The Chess Beginner* (Detizdat, 1937, p. 195), but contemporary authors ignore this move and recommend 1 ♖a6) 1... ♖ab8! 2 ♖c6? (Here it is again stronger for White to continue with 2 ♖c5, with an advantage.) 2... ♖d8?? (Finally, Black is doomed to lose. Until Now Black's error was not noticed by the commentators. Black had to play instead 2... ♖b4+ 3 c3? ♖a5, or 3 ♖d2 ♖xd2+ 4 ♖xd2 ♖xf2+, and if White avoids the perpetual by 5 ♖c3, Black's will be better.) 3 ♖g5! Black resigned.

Diagram 60. 1... ♖xe3+ 2 ♖xe3? (White does not suspect the danger, but even after 2 ♖e1 ♖xg2, or 2 ♖f1? ♖d4, his position is not to be envied.) 2... ♖xg2+! (This is a simple deflection tactic.) 3 ♖xg2 ♖xe3, and Philidor checkmated his opponent in a few moves.

Diagram 61. 1 ♖e3+! ♖xc4 (No better is 1... ♖b4 2 ♖c3+ ♖a4 3 b3#) 2 ♖d4+ ♖b5 3 ♖c3+ ♖a5 4 ♖a4#.

Diagram 62. 1 ♖b5+! (White forces mate in two. Black would have survived a bit longer after 1 ♖xe4+) 1...ab (or 1... ♖c7 2 ♖d5#) 2 ♖xb5+ ♖c7 3 ♖d5#.

IV

From Napoleon to Staunton (the first half of the nineteenth century)

If a player believes in miracles he can sometimes perform them.

Viktor Korchnoi

Now, a sudden change of the script: Napoleon and chess combinations.

Three games of the great military commander have been preserved, and two of them ended with tactical strikes. An important caveat - the authenticity of these games (like the games attributed to Karl Marx and to other famous personalities) seems questionable to many historians. Still, for the sake of our studies, it is hardly important whether they were really played by him or were invented by contemporaries of the great French emperor. It is only necessary that they are worthy of being published. Here is one of them:



63

Bonaparte - Madame de Remusat Malmezon Castle, 1804

White to move

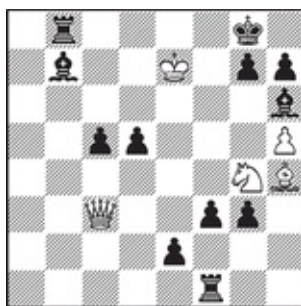
1 ♖f1 - c4+!

This is a master stroke. It would be much weaker for White to sacrifice the knight: 1 ♖b3+? ♔xe4, and although the position of Black's king seems to be difficult, White's play is not that easy either. For example, he would not achieve anything with the straightforward attack 2 ♖f3+ (It is stronger for him to play 2 g4 ♗xg4 3 hg ♘xg4 4 ♖e6) 2... ♔d4 3 ♖d3+ ♔c5 4 b4+, because of 4... ♘xb4! (or 4... ♔xb4?? 5 ♖a3#; 4... ♔b6 5 ♖b5#) 5 ♖xd8 ♘xc2+ and later 6... ♗g4+! and 7... ♖xd8 Now the game is over in three moves.

1 ... ♔d5 x c4
 2 ♖f3 - b3+ ♕c4 - d4
 3 ♖b3 - d3#

Another version of that game has appeared in print, in which Napoleon is supposed to have been Black in a similar position and won with the move 1...♔c5+!

France has contributed many remarkable people to the world. Among them are the strongest chess players from the beginning of the nineteenth century: the general in the Napoleon's army, Alexander Luis Honoré Lebreton Deschappelles; and his student, Louis-Charles Mahé de la Bourdonnais, who was the best player in Europe during the first half of the nineteenth century. In this game, played in the 1820s between the teacher and his pupil, you can see one of the most scenic combinations in the history of chess.



64

Deschappelles - De la Bourdonnais

White to move

1 ♖g4 x h6+ ♗g7 x h6

In answer to 1...♔h8, White would have checkmated in no less spectacular way than in the game: 2 ♖f7+ ♔g8 3 ♖xg7+!! ♔xg7 4 ♗f6+ ♔g8 5 ♖h6#.

2 ♖c3 - h8+!! ♔g8 x h8
 3 ♕e7 - f7!!

The position is absolutely striking. Black has an enormous material advantage but all his pieces are totally helpless against the mating threat by White's bishop. De la Bourdonnais gave up his rook, but he postponed the inevitable for only one move.

3 ... ♖b8 - f8+
 4 ♕f7 x f8 e2 - e1♖
 5 ♗h4 - f6#

After Philidor's death British players tried to take away from the French the glory of being the strongest chess country in the world. The British players Serrate, Lewis, McDonnell, Cochrane,

Walker and Evans (just like the leading players from other countries) resurrected the idea of open chess games, abundant with combinations. Most of the attacks were textbook-like, while defense was not considered so important at the time.

In the year 1824, the ship-captain William Davies Evans invented his famous gambit, and it immediately acquired great popularity among masters, as well as among ordinary chess fans. He played his gambit in a game against the outstanding Irish master Alexander McDonnell. A combination from that game became famous all over the world, and it was published numerous times, not only in textbooks, but also in opening reference books.



65
Evans - McDonnell
London, 1826

White to move

1 ♖g5 x f7!? ♔d8 - h4??

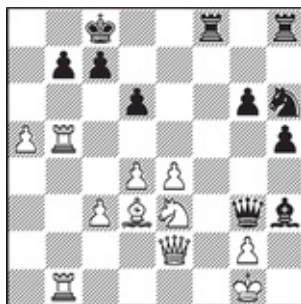
It is amazing, but almost all the books consider the same lines for Black here. “If 1...♖xf7, then 2 ♖xf7+ ♘xf7 3 ♚e6+, while after 1...♘xf7, White follows with 2 ♖b5+ and 3 ♚e6+,” as it was pointed out in *Opening Course* by Vasily Panov and Yakov Estrin (Physical Education and Sports, Moscow, 1980, p.101).

Still, what should White do after 1...♚f6? Checks are hardly promising, so he should play 2 ♘xh8. Then after 2...0-0-0!, Black regains the knight on h8 and the fight is just beginning. The move 1...♚f6 was found by Sergey Rozenberg (*64 - Chess review*, 1985, #8, p.12).

2 ♚b3 - b5+

Evans could have won one move more quickly after 2 ♖b5+ c6 3 ♚e6+ ♚e7 4 ♚xe7#.

2	...	c7 - c6
3	♚b5 x e5+	♔e8 - d7
4	♚e5 - e6+	♔d7 - c7
5	♖a3 - d6#	



66

McDonnell - Lewis

London, 1829

Black to move

1 ... ♖h3 x g2?!
2 ♗e3 - f5??

McDonnell had overlooked this tactical strike, and he was evidently in despair, because he lost without a fight. The commentators of that famous game considered no alternatives to White's move 2 ♗f5 "White can do nothing, because after 2 ♗xg2, Black wins with 2... ♗g4", as Yakov Neishtadt mentioned in his book *Chess Before Steinitz* (Physical Education and Sports, Moscow, 1961, p. 81). Still, McDonnell could have played 2 ♖e1!, and the outcome of the battle would have been unclear. There might follow 2... ♖h3 3 ♗xg2 ♗g4 4 ♖h4 ♖xd3 5 ♖xb7 ♖xc3, with a complicated position.

2 ... ♗f8 x f5

This was quite typical for the chess of that period - the tactical road to victory. It was also good for Black to continue with 2... ♗f5 3 ♖xg2 ♖xd3

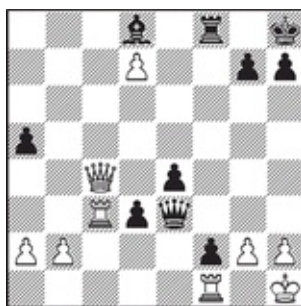
3 ♖e2 x g2 ♗g3 - e3+
4 ♖g1 - h1 ♗f5 - f2
5 ♖b5 x b7 ♗f2 x g2

White resigned

Did Lewis play correctly on the first move? It looks like he did not. He should have played instead 1... ♗g4! 2 ♗xg4 (White would not save the game with 2 ♗f1?, because of the crushing 2... ♖xf1+!) 2... ♗g4!. Now the position becomes quite interesting. Black's bishop seems to be trapped on the h3-square, but White cannot exploit that; moreover his position is in fact hopeless. 3 ♖g5 (or 3 ♖xb7 ♗xg2! 4 ♖b8+ ♗d7 5 ♖b5+ ♗e7 and Black wins) 3... ♖b8! (this is even stronger than 3... ♗xg2 4 ♖xg4+ ♖xg4 5 ♖xg4 ♗f3!) 4 ♖f1 ♖xf1+ 5 ♖xf1 ♗xg2! and Black wins.

De la Bourdonnais visited London in 1824 and he crushed the English masters, so he was

proclaimed by his compatriots as “The greatest chess player in Europe.” The English players did not agree with that and ten years later the historic encounter De la Bourdonnais - McDonnell was played at the Westminster Chess Club. It included a series of matches. De la Bourdonnais won convincingly and was acknowledged by his contemporaries to be the strongest chess player in the world.



67

McDonnell - De la Bourdonnais
London, 1834, game 16, 4th match

Black to move

1 ... ♖e3 - e1!

Black is now prepared to advance his pawn armada and it will soon conquer everything in its path. White can only hope for some miracle.

2 ♖c3 - c1

Of course not 2 ♖xe1? in view of 2... fe ♔ (♖)#.

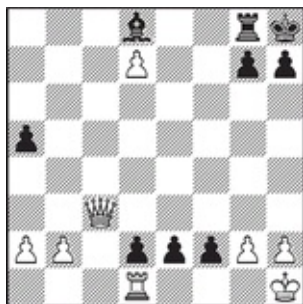
2 ... d3 - d2!
 3 ♖c4 - c5

This is White's last chance for a swindle. Black might overlook 4 ♔xf8#.

3 ... ♖f8 - g8
 4 ♖c1 - d1 e4 - e3
 5 ♖c5 - c3 ♔e1 x d1!

This is stunning. Black could have captured the other rook too, but the text move wins faster.

6 ♖c1 x d1 e3 - e2!!



68

Position after Black's sixth move

This is possibly the most famous chess position of the nineteenth century. There are three black pawns arranged spectacularly on White's second rank. If Philidor had been alive then, he would have probably been quite pleased with that position, having authored the famous "Pawns are the soul of the game. They alone create attack and defense; the way they are deployed decides the fate of the game."

White resigned.

Not conceding chess superiority to its neighbors, Germany produced several strong masters in the first half of the nineteenth century. The next two combinations are from the chess legacy of Paul Rudolf von Bilguer, an eminent theoretician.



69

**Bilguer - Mayet
Berlin, 1838**

White to move

In this position White starts a well-calculated combination with piece sacrifices on the queenside.

1 ♖f3 x f6+!	♜d8 x f6!
2 ♜d1 x g4	♜f6 - f1+
3 ♜h1 x h2	♜f1 x c1
4 ♘b1 - c3	♜c1 x a1?

Now White wins by force. Black should have declined the gift with 4... ♜d2+ 5 ♜h1.

5 ♜g4 - f5+ ♜f7 - e8

If 5... ♖g8, then 6 ♜c8+ ♜f7 7 ♜xc7+ and White would win just as in the game. After 5... ♜e7 Bilguer would win a piece with 6 ♞d5+ ♜d8 7 ♜g5+ ♜c8 (or 7... ♜d7 8 ♜xg7+ ♜c6 9 ♜xc7+ ♜b5 10 ♜xb7+ ♜a5 11 ♜b4+ ♜a6 12 ♞c7#) 8 ♜xg7 ♞a6 9 ♜xh8+ ♜d7 10 ♜xa8. Black fails to exploit the unfavorable placement of White's queen in order to create some counterplay. In the next variation Black's king is forced to go back and forth like a pendulum: 10... ♜xb2 11 ♞f6+ ♜e7 12 ♞f5+ ♜xf6 13 ♜f8+ ♜g5 14 ♜h6+ ♜g4 15 ♜h3+ ♜f4 16 ♜e3+ ♜g4 17 ♜g3+ ♜h5 18 ♜h4+ ♜g6 19 ♜h6+ ♜f7 20 ♜g7+ ♜e6 21 ♜e7#.

6 ♜f5 - c8+ ♜e8 - f7
7 ♜c8 x c7+ ♜f7 - e8

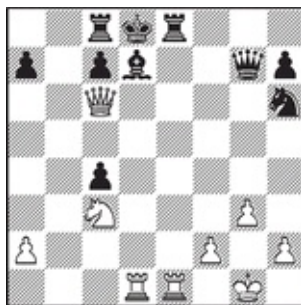
It is not better for Black to play 7... ♜e6, in view of 8 ♜xg7 ♞d5 9 ♞e6+ ♜d6 10 ♞f5#.

8 ♜c7 - c8+ ♜e8 - f7
9 ♜c8 x b7+ ♜f7 - e8

Or 9... ♜f6 10 ♞d5+ ♜g5 11 ♜xg7+ ♜xh4 12 ♞e3 and White wins.

10 ♞h4 - f5

Now, after 10... ♞d7 11 ♜xa8+ ♜f7 12 ♜xh8, checkmate becomes unavoidable. Black resigned.



70

Bilguer - Baron Von der Lasa
Berlin, 1839

White to move

1 ♜d1 x d7+! ♜g7 x d7
2 ♜c6 - f6+ ♜e8 - e7
3 ♞c3 - d5?

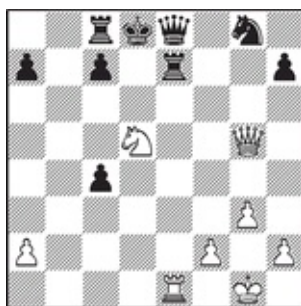
We believe that here White was playing a little too tactically. After the simple move 3 ♜d1, Bilguer would have restored the material balance, preserving the initiative. There might follow 3... ♜xd1+ 4

♞xd1 ♞f7 5 ♞e3 , with an advantage for White. Still, the world would not have seen this amusing finish then:

3 ... ♞h6 - g8!
 4 ♞f6 - g5! ♞d7 - e8??

Black had to give up the knight, not defend it: 4...h6! 5 ♞xg8+ ♞e8 6 ♞xe8+ ♞xe8 and Black would keep an extra exchange, for which White would have some compensation, because of the exposed position of Black's king. Now the move above is followed by a spectacular finish.

It is interesting that Emanuel Schiffers left the end of this game without comments in his book, *Samouchitel shakhmatnoi igry*, and he did not even mention the mistakes of both players on moves three and four.



71

White to move

This is the position after Black's move four.

5 ♞e1 - d1!!

This is a study-like move.

If Black plays now 5...c6 6 ♞xe7+ ♞c7 , then White has the pleasant choice between:

I. 7 ♞a5+ ♞b7 8 ♞xc8 ♞xc8 9 ♞d8 ♞g4 10 h3! and

II. 7 ♞xg8 , winning a piece, because the move 7... ♞xg8 enables White to checkmate after 8 ♞e7+ ♞b6 9 ♞b1+ .

It is also bad for Black to play 5... ♞d7 , because of 6 ♞xg8+ ♞e8 7 ♞g5+ ♞e7 8 ♞e1! (White can also continue with: 8 ♞d4 c5! 9 ♞xe7! ♞xd4 10 ♞c6++ ♞c7 11 ♞xd4 cd 12 ♞g7+ ♞b8 13 ♞xd4 c3 14 ♞b4+ ♞a8 15 e4+ ♞b8 16 ♞c2) and his threats are impossible to parry.

Black resigned.

During the 1840s Howard Staunton became quite popular in London chess circles. His name was soon to become the symbol of England's chess prowess.

Bobby Fischer had a great respect for his contribution: "Staunton's right to be among the ten best chess players of all times should be based on the width of his erudition, particularly in the field of the

theory of the openings, as well as on the tremendous value of his creative knowledge.”

In 1840 Staunton won a match against his teacher Popert, who was then at his creative peak. Popert was famous for his extremely slow play. His contemporary, a chess master Augustus Mongredien, recalled “In case the position was complicated, Popert’s opponent could just calmly go somewhere.”

Here is how one of the games in that match developed:



72

**Staunton - Popert
London, 1840**

White to move

1 ♖c4 x f7+!

In Yakov Neishtadt’s book, *The Uncrowned Champions* (Physical Education and Sports, Moscow, 1975, p. 99), it says “Staunton’s opponent evidently considered the b7-pawn to be untouchable: 1 ♙xb7? ♜b8 2 ♙a6 ♜b6, and White must give up his bishop in order to save his queen.” That is not true, however. White saves the day with a tactical strike: 2 ♖xf7+! ♙d8 (It is weaker for Black to play 2...♙xf7 3 ♙xc6! ♙xc6 4 ♘xe5+ and 5 ♘xc6) 3 ♙a6 ♖xc3 4 ♜ac1 ♜b6 5 ♙c4 and White is at least not worse.

After 1 ♖xf7+! the variation is forced.

1 ♙f6 x f7	
2 ♙b3 x b7	♙a8 - d8
3 ♙b7 x c6+	♖f5 - d7
4 ♙c6 - c5	♖a5 - b6
5 ♙c5 x e5+	♘g8 - e7
6 ♙a1 - e1	c7 - c5
7 ♘d2 - e4	♖d7 - c6

Here Black could have exploited the fact that White had moved the wrong rook to e1. By vacating the a1 square and locking in the f1 rook, White has given Black some extra opportunities, such as capturing the a2 pawn in some variations, or threatening to win the exchange after ♖b5. To capitalize on this, Popert should have castled immediately instead of moving the bishop to c6. After 7...0-0 and 8 ♘eg5, Black has the response 8...♙xa2 9 ♜a1? ♙b3 10 ♙xe7 ♜fe8, with counterplay. It is stronger

for White to capture the knight immediately: 9 ♖xe7 ♕xa3 (Here the move 9...♖fe8 is bad for Black, because of 10 ♖xd7!) 10 ♖e4, with an edge for White. It is also good for him to play 8 ♘xc5 ♘c6 9 ♖e4 ♖fe8 10 ♖c2 and White should manage to press home the advantage of a couple of extra pawns.

8 ♘f3 - g5

What should White do now? The position is ripe with combinational possibilities, and it is not surprising that the annotators of this game made many mistakes. For example, Yakov Neishtadt erroneously pointed out: “The variation 8...♖g6 9 ♘e6 ♖d5 10 ♘d6+ ♕d7 11 ♘f8+! is quite amusing here.”

First, it is much stronger for White to play 11 ♘xc5+! with mate in two (11...♖c7 12 ♘a6+! ♕d8 13 ♖xe7#). Second, after the obvious line 10...♖xd6! (threatening mate on g2) White has problems continuing his attack (11 ♘xg7+ ♕f7 12 ♖xe7+ ♕g8). Therefore, it is correct for White to play 10 ♖b8+ ♕f7 11 ♖xh8 with a material advantage. It is also possible for White to continue with 9 ♘xc5 0-0 10 ♖e6+ ♕h8 11 ♖xg6 ♘xg6 12 ♘ce6 ♖d5 13 c4 leading to a clear edge. Popert decided not to test the technique of his pupil, though.

Black resigned.

During the 1840s, an experienced match competitor appeared in France too - one of the strongest players in the mid-nineteenth-century, Pierre Charles Fournier de St. Amant. Still, in the historic competition Staunton-St. Amant, the British retained the honor of being the strongest chess country in the world.

Although the French player lost the match, he played some memorable combinations. Here is one of the most famous:



73

**St. Amant - Staunton
Paris, 1843
13th game of the match**

White to move

1 ♖e2 x e6!

But not 1 de? because of 1... ♔d8 and if 2 ef+, then 2... ♖xf7

1 ... ♔c8 - d8

After seeing the end of this game it is easy to say that Black should have tried 1...fg 2 ♔g5 (or 2 ♖g6 fg 3 ♗xc8 ♖fxc8) 2...fe! (but not 2...f6, because of 3 ♖xf6! ♔d8 4 ♗xh7+! ♔xh7 5 ♔h5+ ♖g8 6 ♖h6! and White wins) 3 ♗xe6+ ♔xe6 4 ♖xe6 ♗f4 5 ♔xg2 ♖d7. Still, St. Amant could also have preserved his advantage with the line 6 ♔g4, after which Black cannot play 6...♗xd5?, because of 7 ♖d6!. After 1... ♔d8 White's win is delightful.

2 ♗b2 - f6! ♗g7 x f6

If Black retreats his queen, White wins with 3 ♔g5. Black is not out of the woods after 2...♗h2+, because of 3 ♖xh2 ♔xd5 4 ♔g5 (or 4 ♔xd5 ♗xd5 5 ♖d6, and White keeps an extra piece) 4...fe 5 ♗xe6+ ♔xe6 6 ♖xe6.

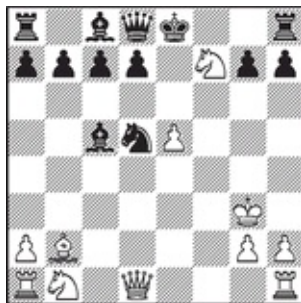
3 ♖e6 x d6!

But of course not 3 ♔h6, due to 3... fe. After 3 ♖xd6, the game is practically over, because it is bad for Black to play 3... ♔xd6, in view of 4 ♔h6 with mate to follow.

3 ... ♔g8 - g7
4 ♖d6 x d8 ♖f8 x d8
5 ♗f5 - e4

Black resigned.

A remarkable master of the combinational style lived and played in Russia during that period. Alexander Petroff was an outstanding chess theoretician and composer, and he was the pride of Russian chess. His combination, shown next, entered the world's chess lore quite deservedly.



Black to move

1 ... 0 - 0!!

“This is a surprising move of a genius!” (Emanuel Schiffers)

2 ♖f7 x d8

Even after 2 ♖xd5 ♖xf7 White's position is hopeless. Now he has four possibilities, but they all lead to his demise:

I. “... 3 e6! ♕d6+ 4 ♖xd6! ♖g5+ 5 ♔h3 cd, and Black wins” (Schiffers). It is amazing, but the same variation is also quoted in contemporary books. However, in answer to 3 e6?!, Black checkmates more quickly with 3... ♕f2+ and 4... ♖h4#.

II. 3 ♖xc5? ♖g5+ 4 ♔h3 d5+! 5 e6 ♕xe6+ 6 g4 ♖xg4#.

III. 3 ♖f1 ♖g5+ 4 ♔h3 d6+ 5 e6 ♖xd5!

IV. 3 h3 ♖g5+ 4 ♔h2 ♖f4+ 5 g3 ♖f2+ 6 ♖g2 b6! (or 6... ♖xg2+ 7 ♔xg2 b6!) 7 ♖g1 ♕b7! 8 ♖d2 ♕xg2.

2 ... ♕c5 - f2+
3 ♔g3 - h3

White cannot play 3 ♔g4, due to 3... ♖f4+ 4 ♔g5 (or 4 ♔h5 ♖h4+ 5 ♔g5 h6+ and 6... ♖e7#) 4... h6+ 5 ♔g6 (It is no better for Black to defend with 5 ♔h5 ♖h4+ 6 ♔g6 ♖e7#) 5... ♖e7+ 6 ♔h5 ♖h4#.

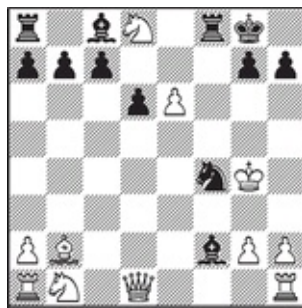
3 ... d7 - d6+

After 3... ♖f4+? 4 ♔g4 d5+ 5 ♔f3 ♖g6+ 6 ♔e2 ♕g4+ 7 ♔d2, White's king runs away from the danger zone.

4 e5 - e6

But not 4 g4?, or 4 ♖g4?, because of 4... ♖f4#.

4 ... ♕d5 - f4+
5 ♔h3 - g4



Position after White's fifth move

In case you do not know what happened next, cover the text below and try to find a forced win for Black in all the variations.

5 ... ♖f4 x e6!
6 ♖d8 x e6?

This loses in four moves. Let us analyze the other possibilities for White:

I. 6 ♖c1 ♗xd8+ 7 ♖h5 (or 7 ♖g5 ♖f5+ 8 ♖g4 h5+ 9 ♖h3 ♖f3#, the same finish as in the game.)
7... ♖f5+ 8 ♖g5 g6+ 9 ♖g4 ♖f7#, or 9 ♖f8#.

II. 6 ♖d2 ♗xd8+ 7 ♖h5 (or 7 ♖g5 ♖f5+ 8 ♖g4 h5+ 9 ♖h3 ♖f3#) 7...g6+ 8 ♖g5 ♖f5+ 9 ♖g4 h5+ 10 ♖h3 ♖f3#.

III. 6 ♖f6 ♖xf6 7 ♖c1 ♗xd8+ 8 ♖h5 g6+ 9 ♖g5 ♗f7+!! 10 ♖xf6 ♖h4+ 11 ♖g5 ♖xg5#. As far as we know commentators of this game did not analyze the possibility 9... ♗f7+!

IV. 6 ♗f7 ♖xf7 7 g3 (or 7 ♖f6 ♖xf6 8 ♖d2 ♗d8+ 9 ♖h5 g6+ 10 ♖g5 ♗f7+! 11 ♖xf6 ♖h4+ 12 ♖g5 ♖xg5#, or 8 g3 ♗d4+ 9 ♖g5 ♖e3+ 10 ♖h4 ♖h6+ 11 ♖h5 g5#) 7... ♗d8+ 8 ♖g5 ♖f5+ 9 ♖h4 ♖f4+ 10 ♖g5 ♗e6+ 11 ♖h5 g6+ 12 ♖h6 ♖h4+! (or 12... ♖e3! and Black checkmates on the next move) 13 gh ♖e3#.

V. 6 g3 ♗xd8+ 7 ♖h5 (The move 7 ♖g5 leads to the same variations.) 7... ♖f5+ 8 ♖g4 (or 8 ♖h4 ♖f4+ 9 ♖g5 ♗e6+ 10 ♖h5 g6+ 11 ♖h6 ♖h4+! 12 gh ♖e3#) 8... ♖f6+ 9 ♖h4 ♖f4+ 10 ♖g5 ♗e6+ 11 ♖h5 g6+ 12 ♖h6 ♖h4+! (or 12... ♖e3!) 13 gh ♖e3#.

6 ... ♖c8 x e6+
7 ♖g4 - g5

White gets mated in the same fashion after 7 ♖h5.

7 ... ♖f8 - f5+
8 ♖g5 - g4 h7 - h5+
9 ♖g4 - h3 ♖f5 - f3#

In the following game, Petroff finished his opponent off with a magnificent tactical blow.



76
Petroff - Shimansky
Warsaw, 1847

White to move

1 ♖g4 - f5!!

Later, another way for White to win was found: 1 ♖h5 ♔e6 2 ♖xf7+!!, and here there are two wonderful variations - 2... ♕xf7 3 ♘d6+ and 2... ♕xf7 3 ♘g5+. White wins his opponent's queen just for a piece in both cases. For example: 2... ♕xf7 3 ♘d6+ ♔f8 4 ♘xf7 ♕xf7 5 ♖h5+ and 6 ♖xa5.

1 ... ♔e7 x f5

Shimansky was reluctant to part with his queen after: 1... ♕xf5 2 ♘d6+, so he preferred to be checkmated in two. Or maybe he allowed 2 ♘f6++ on purpose in order to let Petroff crown his brilliant idea? Shimansky would fail to obtain even a second piece for his queen anyway after 1... ♕xf5 2 ♘d6+ ♔f8 3 ♘xf5 ♘xf5 4 ♕e5, with a double attack against the bishop on a5 and the knight on f5.

2 ♔e4 - f6++

Now, after 2... ♕f8 White checkmates with 3 ♕e8#. Black resigned.

The following example is taken from a game between two German masters: Jean Dufresne, a writer from Berlin and author of *A Small Textbook about How to Study the Game of Chess*, and Daniel Harrwitz - one of the strongest players in Europe during the mid-nineteenth century.



77

**Dufresne - Harrwitz
Breslau, 1848**

White to move

1 ♖d5 - f6+! ♗g7 x f6
2 ♝g3 x g6+! ♜f7 x g6

After 2...♔h8 White would also have maintained his edge. He would need to play 3 ♖xf6, but not 3 ♖g3?, due to 3...♖g8 (or 4 ♔h3?? ♔xh3). It is interesting that Schiffers' *Textbook* says "If 2...♔h8, then 3 ♖g3 and ♖h3."

3 ♜c2 x g6+ ♔g8 - h8
4 e5 x f6 ♝f8 - f7

This is the only move. Now Dufresne has only a couple of pawns for the rook, but Black has no better defense against 5 f7+ (White will play that move against 4...♖g8 and 4...♔h7 as well.) and 6 ♔g7#. Black would not save the day after 1...♔xf2+ 2 ♔h1 ♖f7 (If 2...♖g8 then 3 ♔h6#, or 3 ♔h5#) 3 ♔xf7.

5 ♜g6 x f7 ♝a8 - g8

It looks like Black has obtained some counterplay, but White's next move proves that to be just an illusion.

6 ♔g1 - h1!

But not 6 ♖f1? because of 6...♖xg2+! 7 ♔xg2 ♔g4+ and Black draws by perpetual check.

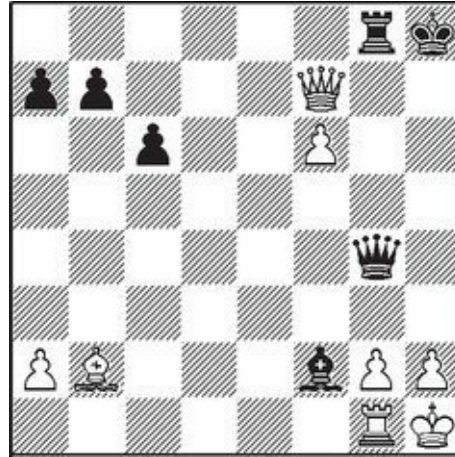
6 ... ♜h4 - g4!

The positions after the move 6...♔g5 would be more or less the same as in the game. It is bad for Black to play 6...♖d4 7 ♖xd4, when White's bishop is untouchable in view of 8 ♔h5#. The rook-

sacrifice is also easily refuted by White: 6... ♖xg2 7 ♔e8+! (But not 7 ♔xg2? ♕xf2+ 8 ♔h3! ♕f3+ 9 ♔h4 ♕f4+ 10 ♔h3 ♕f3+ with a draw.) 7... ♖h7 8 ♕e7+ ♔h6 9 ♗c1+ and White wins.

7 ♖a1 - g1! ♘b6 x f2

Black is putting up desperate resistance, but ...



78

This is the position after Black's seventh move.

“White wins thanks to his passed pawn, which advances to the seventh rank with a check.”

(Emanuel Lasker)

8 ♕f7 - e8!

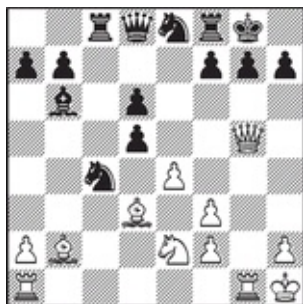
Well done, Dufresne! Now, after 8... ♖xe8, White follows with 9 f7+ ♔h7 10 fe ♕ and Black does not have the resource 10... ♗xg1, because of 11 ♕f7+ ♔h6 12 ♗c1+, and White wins the queen.

Harrwitz tries to avoid that variation with his last move, but all that is in vain.

8 ... ♔h8 - h7
8 f6 - f7!

Black resigned.

Next, we have our first encounter with the strongest chess player in the world in the second half of the nineteenth century, Adolf Anderssen - a theoretician, composer, writer and an outstanding representative of chess romanticism. He was rightfully called the “soloist of the chess combination.”



79

**Anderssen - Harrwitz
Breslau, 1848**

White to move

1 ♖g5 x g7+! ♜e8 x g7
 2 ♜g1 x g7+ ♔g8 - h8
 3 ♜g7 - g8++!

As a rule, in Anderssen's games there were plenty of sacrifices. Now Harrwitz gets checkmated.

3 ... ♜h8 x g8
 4 ♜a1 - g1+

Black resigned

After the only move, 4... ♜g5, White checkmates with 5 ♜xg5#.

In 1837, the genius Paul Charles Morphy was born in the United States. He learned to play the game of chess when he was ten years old, and in 1848-1849 he was already playing his first famous games. The young American had his first phenomenal successes during the 1850s; therefore his best combinations will appear in the next chapter. In this chapter we will let you appreciate the skill with which the American master, still a child, won against his father.



80

**Paul Morphy - Alonzo Morphy
New Orleans, 1848**

White to move

1 d4 - d5! ♖e6 x d5

Black is obliged to capture the pawn. If 1...♙f5, then 2 ♖e1+ ♚d8 3 ♞e5 Or 1...♙g4 2 ♚e1+ ♚d8 3 ♞e5.

2 ♞c3 x d5 ♜d7 x d5
3 ♙d3 - b5+

All roads lead to Rome! For example, after 2 ♖e1+ ♚d8 3 ♖e5 ♜d7 4 ♙f5!, White can win his opponent's queen. Young Morphy finds the most beautiful solution:

3 ... ♜d5 x b5
4 ♞f1 - e1+ ♞g8 - e7
5 ♞a1 - b1

This is a surprise. White is not in a hurry to force the issue and he is patiently preparing the final strike. Strangely enough, after 5 ♖xe7+ ♚f8 6 ♖e5+, his opponent manages to keep his queen with the move 6...c5.

Now Black must either part with his queen, or he has to retreat it to the a6-square where it would be totally misplaced.

It was still preferable for White to have given an intermediate check here: 5 ♖xe7+ ♚f8 6 ♖ab1 ♚xb1 (or 6...♚a6 7 ♖xf7+! ♚xf7 8 ♜d7+ ♚f6 9 ♚e7+ ♚g6 10 ♚e6+ ♚h5 11 g4#) 7 ♚xb1 and White wins.

It is also possible for him to try 5 ♙xe7. For example: 5...f6 6 ♙c5+ ♚f7 7 ♖e7+ ♚g6 8 ♞h4+ and White mates.

5 ... ♜b5 - a6?

It is better for Black to sacrifice his queen here with 5...♜d7 6 ♖xe7+ ♚xe7 7 ♙xe7 ♚xe7. There is approximate material equality, but White has the edge, because of the endangered black king. Paul Morphy played such positions like a magician. He could have continued with 8 ♞e5, maintaining numerous threats. After 5...♚a6, Black loses by force.

6 ♚e1 x e7+ ♜e8 - f8
7 ♜d1 - d5

Here, White could have mated in five by 7 ♖xf7+! ♚xf7 8 ♜d7+ ♚f6 9 ♚e7+ ♚g6 10 ♚e6+ ♚h5 11 g4#. Paul sees another spectacular checkmating idea, though.

7 ... ♜a6 - c4

His father overlooked that mate. Meanwhile, he could have prolonged his resistance only by giving

up both his bishop and queen: 7...♙xf2+ 8 ♖xf2 ♔e6 9 ♖xe6+ c5 (or 9...♗g8 10 ♖e7 ♖f8 11 ♗xf7+! ♖xf7 12 ♖e8+ ♖f8 13 ♖xf8#) 10 ♖e7! ♗xe7 11 ♙xc5+ ♖f6 12 ♗e5+ ♖g6 13 ♗g5#.

8 ♗e7 x f7+ ♖f8 - g8
 Or 8...♗e8 9 ♗d7#.
 9 ♗f7 - f8#

We finish this chapter with an example of a non-standard tactical operation, which was played some 150 years ago.



81

Staunton- NN
London, 1850

White to move

White is a rook down and now he sacrifices his bishop, too.

1 ♙h6 x g7+!? ♖f8 x g7
 2 ♗f5 - g5+ ♖g7 - f8
 3 ♗g5 - h6+ ♖f8 - e8!

Black could have forced a draw here with 3...♖g8 4 ♗g5+ ♖f8 5 ♗h6+ ♖g8, but he has a material advantage and quite understandably decided to try to win the game.

4 ♗h6 - g7 ♗h8 - f8

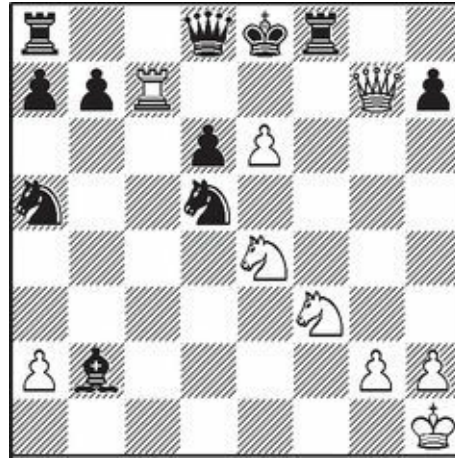
White was threatening to checkmate with 5 ♗f7#.

5 ♗c1 x c7 ♗f6 x d5?

We have reached the critical moment of that game. Black cracks under the tension and makes the decisive blunder.

We believe that he should not have captured the pawn, but the knight instead: 5...♗xe4!, when it is bad for White to play either 6 e7 ♗xg7, or 6 ♗xh7 ♗g3+! 7 ♖g1 (or 8 hg ♖h8!) 7...♗d4+! 8 ♗xd4 ♖f1#!

It seems at first sight that the move 5...♞xd5 is also acceptable, since now White's queen is hanging, but Staunton had prepared a brilliant tactical strike against that response.



82

This is the position after Black's fifth move.

6 ♞c7 - d7!! ♞a5 - c4!

This is Black's best defense, but he is beyond salvation anyway:

- I. 6...♞xg7 7 ♞xd6#.
- II. 6...♞xd7 7 ♞xd7#.
- III. 6...♞a3 7 ♞f7! ♞e7 8 ♞xf8+ ♞xf8 9 ♞d7#.
- IV. 6...♞e5 7 ♞xh7 ♞e7 8 ♞g6+ ♞f7 9 ♞xe5 ♞xd7 10 ♞xd7 and White wins.

7 ♞g7 x h7! ♞d5 - f4!

Black finds the best move once again. White was threatening to check with his queen from g6 or h5. A weaker defense for Black was 7...♞e7 8 ♞g6+ ♞f7 9 ♞xe7+ ♞xe7 10 ♞xf7+ with a crushing attack for White.

8 e6 - e7! ♞f8 - f7?

Black could have prolonged his resistance with the line 8...♞xd7 9 e7 ♞+ ♞xf8, but after 10 ♞xd7 White's advantage would have been decisive anyway.

9 ♞h7 x f7+

It was more effective for White to continue with 9 e7 ♞+ ♞xd8 10 ♞xf7#.

Or 9... ♖xd7 10 e8 ♚++ ♖c8 11 ♚fd7+ and White checkmates on the next move.

10 e7 x d8 ♚+!

It was time to drop the curtain.

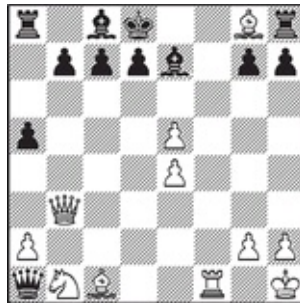
How Would You Play?



83

Heltay - Janny
Budapest, 1816

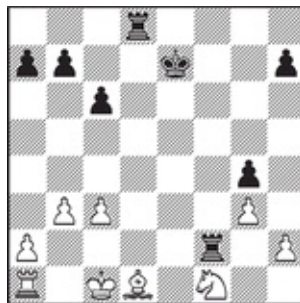
Black to move



84

Bonaparte - general Bertrand
island Saint Helen, 1820

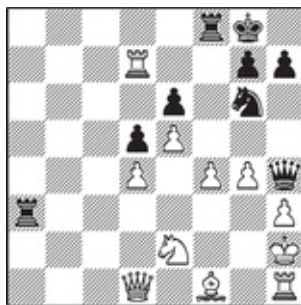
White to move



85

De la Bourdonnais - Cochrane
Paris, 1821

Black to move



86

Cochrane - Deschappelles
Saint Clues, 1821

Black to move



87

Joy - De la Bourdonnais
London, 1824

Black to move



88

NN - Lewis
London, the 20ies of the 19th century

Black to move



89

**Evans - McDonnell
London, 1829**

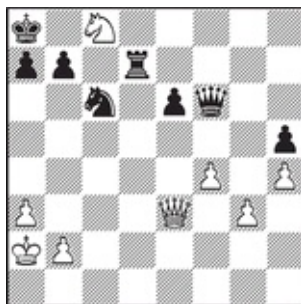
White to move



90

**Mendheim - NN
the beginning of the 30ies, 19th century**

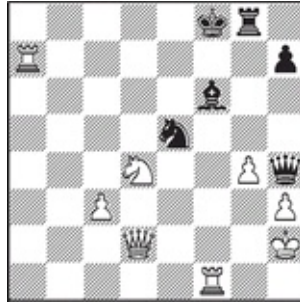
White to move



91

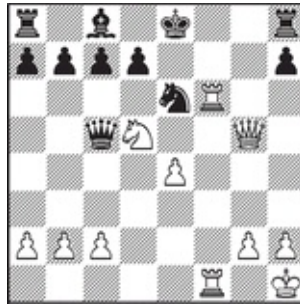
**From the book of Julius Mendheim
1832**

White to move



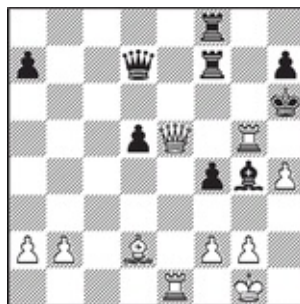
92
De la Bourdonnais
1833

White to move



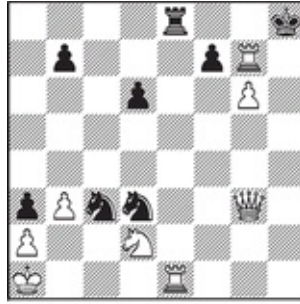
93
McDonnell - De la Bourdonnais
London, 1834

White to move



94
De la Bourdonnais - McDonnell
London, 1834

White to move

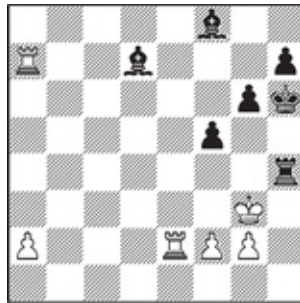


Black to move

95

De la Bourdonnais - McDonnell
London, 1834

Black to move



96

De la Bourdonnais - McDonnell
London, 1834

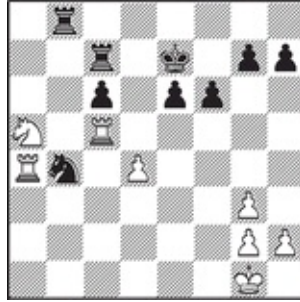
Black to move



97

De la Bourdonnais - McDonnell
London, 1834

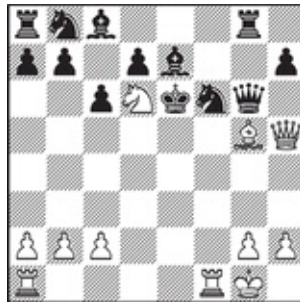
White to move



98

**De la Bourdonnais - McDonnell
London, 1834**

Black to move

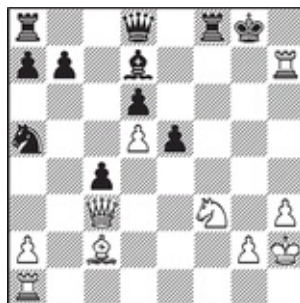


99

**McDonnell - NN
London, the 30ies of the 19th century**

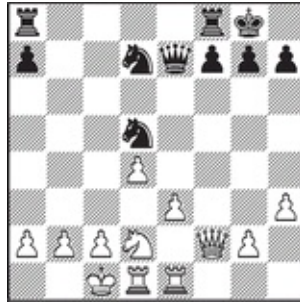
White to move

White played without the a1-rook



De la Bourdonnais - McDonnell
London, 1834

White to move



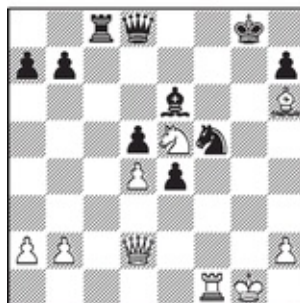
101
Bilguer - Angerstein
Berlin, 1835

Black to move



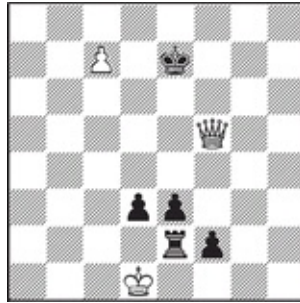
102
Harrwitz - Bledow
Berlin, 1837

Black to move



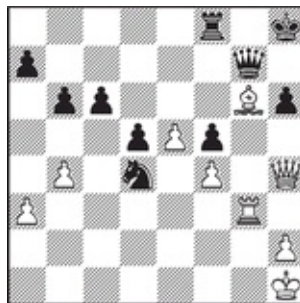
103
Petroff - Consultants
Saint Petersburg, 1837

White to move



104
De la Bourdonnais - NN
1837

White to move



105
Staunton - Popert
London, 1840

White to move



106

**Cochrane - Popert
London, 1841**

White to move



107

**Popert - Cochrane
London, 1841**

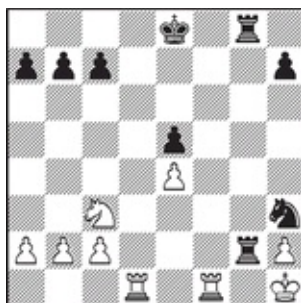
Black to move



108

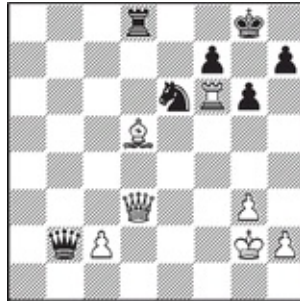
**St. Amant - Cochrane
London, 1842**

Black to move



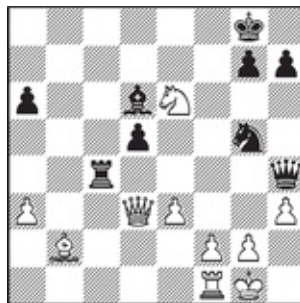
109
Cochrane - Staunton
London, 1841

Black to move



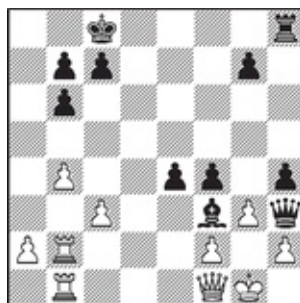
110
Cochrane - Staunton
London, 1842

White to move



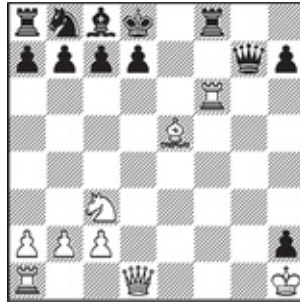
111
Cochrane - Staunton
London, 1842

Black to move



112
City of Norfolk - City of New York
Correspondence game, 1842

Black to move



113
Jaenisch - Von der Lasa
Berlin, 1842

White to move



114
Von der Lasa - Jaenisch
Berlin, 1842

White to move



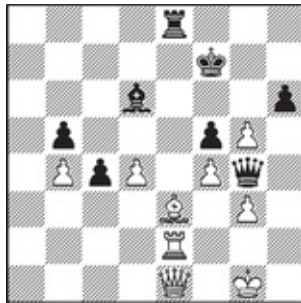
115
Staunton - St. Amant
London, 1843

White to move



116
Staunton - St. Amant
Paris, 1843

White to move



117
St. Amant - Staunton
Paris, 1843

Black to move



118

Harrwitz - Popert

London, 1844

White to move

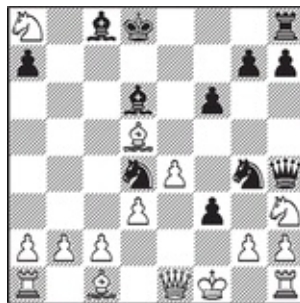


119

Kieseritzky - Dumonshe

Paris, 1844

White to move



120

Schulten - Kieseritzky

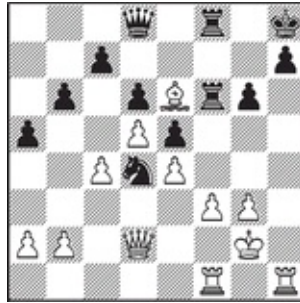
Paris, 1844

Black to move



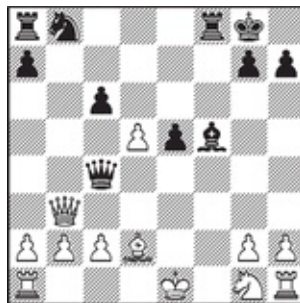
121
Kieseritzky - NN
Paris

White to move



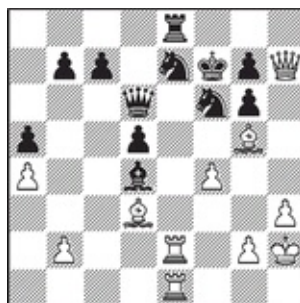
122
Harrwitz - Horwitz
London, 1846

White to move



123
Schulten - Horwitz
London, 1846

Black to move



124
Staunton - Horwitz
London, 1846

White to move



125
Falkbeer - NN
Vienna, 1847

White to move



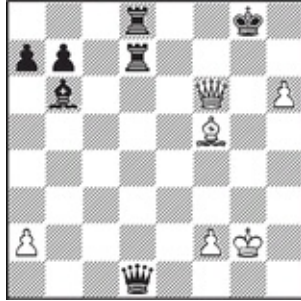
126
Mayet - Harrwitz
Berlin, 1848

Black to move



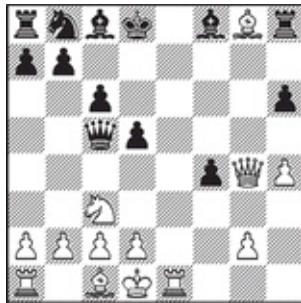
127
Harrwitz - Anderssen
Breslau, 1848

White to move



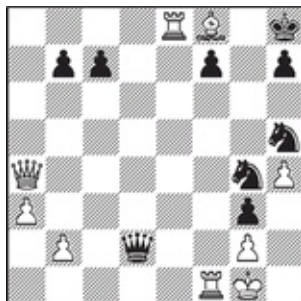
128
Paul Morphy - Alonzo Morphy
New Orleans, 1849

White to move



129
Paul Morphy - Rousseau
New Orleans, 1849

White to move



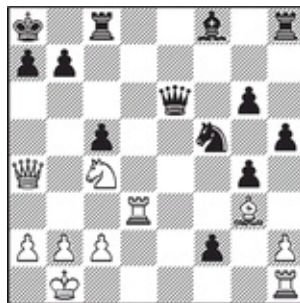
130
Neiman - Marx
London, about 1850

Black to move



131
Kirejewski - Gutzeit
Correspondence game, 1850

White to move



132
NN - NN, 1850
From the book of Frank Marshall

White to move



133
Nathan - Anderssen
Berlin, 1850

White to move



134
Paul Morphy - Ernest Morphy
New Orleans, 1850

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 83. 1...f3! Now White loses at least his queen: 2 hg f2#; 2 ef ♔e3#; 2 ♘e4 ♔e3+ 3 ♘f2 ♔xf2#; 2 gf ♔e3+ 3 ♔g2 ♔f2+ and Black checkmates with his knight; 2 ♖h3 ♔e3+ 3 ♔h1 ♘f2+ 4 ♔h2 ♘xd1.

Diagram 84. 1 ♖f8+! ♙xf8 2 ♙g5+ ♙e7 3 ♙xe7+ ♔xe7 4 ♔f7+ ♔d8 5 ♔f8#.

Diagram 85. 1...♖xd1+! 2 ♔xd1 ♖xf1+ and it is all over.

Diagram 86. 1...♔f2+ 2 ♙g2 ♖xh3+! 3 ♔xh3 ♔h4#.

Diagram 87. 1...♘xd4! (It is bad for Black to play 1...gh+ due to 2 ♔xh2) 2 ♔xe4+. After this move Black won in two: 2...♔xe4 3 ♙xe4 ♘e2#, but there was no salvation anyway: 2 hg ♘f3#; 2 ♙xe4 gh+ 3 ♔xh2 ♙e5+ 4 ♙f4 ♙xf4+ 5 ♔g1 ♔xe1#; 2 cd ♙xd4+ 3 ♙e3 gh+, with a mate just as in the previous variation; 2 ♔e3 gh+ 3 ♖xh2 ♔g4+ 4 ♔h1 ♔d1+ 5 ♔g1 ♘g3#; 2 ♔d1 ♔f6!; 2 ♙b5+, and here Black wins too, with the variation 2...♔f8 3 cd ♙xd4+ 4 ♙e3 gh+ 5 ♔xh2 ♙e5+ 6 ♙f4 ♙xf4+ 7 ♔g1 ♔xe1+ 8 ♙f1 ♔xf1#.

Diagram 88. 1...♘xc2+ 2 ♔b3 ♙a4+! 3 ♔xa4 ♘c5+ 4 ♔b5 ♘d4#.

Diagram 89. 1 ♔xh8+! ♔xh8 2 ♙f6+ ♔g7 (or 2...♔g8 3 ♖e8#) 3 ♖e8#.

Diagram 90. 1 ♖xc6+! ♖xc6 (or 1...♔f7 2 ♖xc7+ and White wins) 2 ♘d8#.

Diagram 91. 1 ♔xa7+! ♘xa7 2 ♘b6+ ♔b8 3 ♘d7+ ♔c7 4 ♘xf6, followed by 5 ♘xh5 and White has three extra pawns.

Diagram 92. 1 ♘e6+ ♔e8 2 ♔d8+! ♙xd8 3 ♖f8+! ♖xf8 4 ♘g7#.

Diagram 93. 1 ♖xe6+! de2 ♘f6+. Black resigned (or 2...♔f7 3 ♔xc5).

Diagram 94. 1 ♖h5+! ♙xh5 (or 1...♔g6) 2 ♔g5#.

Diagram 95. 1...♖xe1+! (or 1...♘xe1?? 2 ♔xc3) 2 ♔xe1 (or 2 ♘b1 ♖xb1#) 2...♘xe1 (Black creates the irresistible threat ♘c2#.) 3 ♖h7+ ♔g8 White resigned without resorting to desperate checks such as 4 gf+ ♔xh7 5 f8♘+ ♔h6, or 4 ♖h8+ ♔xh8 5 g7+ ♔xg7.

Diagram 96. 1...f4+! 2 ♔f3 (or 2 ♔xh4 g5#) 2...♙c6+ (It was even stronger for Black to play 2...♙g4+, followed by 3...♙xe2, and he would have two extra pieces, whereas in the game he had only one.) 3 ♖e4 ♙xe4+ 4 ♔xe4 ♙c5, and Black's material advantage is decisive.

Diagram 97. 1 f7+! ♖xe5 (It is the same checkmating finish after 1...♖g7 2 f8♚+) 2 f8♚+! (or 2 f8♚+) 2...♖xf8 3 ♖xf8#.

Diagram 98. 1...♞d3! 2 ♚f1 (White must give up the exchange, because it is bad for him to defend with 2 ♞xc6+, due to 2...♖xc6! 3 ♖xc6 ♖b1+ 4 ♖c1 ♖xc1#, as well as with 2 ♖xc6 ♖b1+ and Black checkmates on the next move.) 2...♞xc5 3 dc ♖b5. White can resign.

Diagram 99. 1 ♖ae1+! (This move is slightly better than 1 ♖fe1+, because now Black's king cannot escape to the f-file.) 1...♞xd6? 2 ♚f4#.

Could Black have avoided the loss after 1 ♖ae1+? No, because of the variations: 1...♞d5 2 c4+ (just one of the possibilities) 2...♞c5 (or 2...♞d4 3 ♚e3+ and 4 ♚e2#) 3 ♚e3++ ♞b4 4 ♚c5+ ♞a4 5 b3#; 1...♞e4 2 ♖xf6+ ♚xf6 3 ♖xe4+ ♚e5 4 ♚h4 with an unavoidable mate; 1...♞e4 2 ♖xe4+ ♚xe4 (or 2...♞d5 3 ♖d1+ ♞c5 4 ♚e3#) 3 ♞xe4, and Black's position is hopeless.

Diagram 100. 1 ♞xe5! ♚f5 (Or 1...de 2 ♚g3+ mating. Black's best defense was 1...♖f5, but White can win in numerous ways even then, for example: 2 ♞xd7 ♞xh7 3 ♚xf5+, or 2 ♚xf5 ♚xf5 3 ♞f7 ♞xh7 4 ♞xd8 ♖xd8 5 ♚f6) 2 ♞f7!! ♞xh7 (or 2...♚xh7 3 ♞h6#; 2...♖xf7 3 ♖h8#, or 3 ♚h8#) 3 ♚xf5+ ♞g8 4 ♞h6#!

Diagram 101. 1. ♞c3! 2 bc (It would be better for White to give up the exchange.) 2...♞a3+ 3 ♞b1 ♞b6! (It is worse for Black to play 3...♖ab8+ 4 ♞b3 ♞b6 5 ♞a1; now White has no satisfactory defense against the threat 4...♞a4). White resigned (4 ♞a1 ♞xc3+ 5 ♞b1 ♖ab8 6 ♞c1 ♞a3+ 7 ♞b1 ♞a4+ 8 ♞b3 ♞b2#).

Diagram 102. 1...♞xe4! 2 ♚xe7 (This move enables Black to checkmate in two; otherwise Harrwitz would have remained two pieces down: 2 ♞a4 ♚xf2+ 3 ♞d1 ♞xg5. It is also bad for White to try 2 ♞f3 ♞xg5!, and again he cannot capture the queen, because of 3...♚xf2+ 4 ♞f1 ♞g3#, while after 3 0-0, Bledow would have played 3...♞g3!) 2...♚xf2+ 3 ♞f1 ♞g3#! This is a version of the Legall's mate.

Diagram 103. 1 ♞g2+ (It is also possible for White to continue with 1 ♖xf5 ♚xf5 2 ♞g2+ ♚g6 3 ♞xg6 ♞f6 4 ♞e7++ ♞f7 5 ♞xc8, and he keeps an extra piece.) 1...♞h8 2 ♖xf5! ♞g8 (2...♚xf5 3 ♞g7#) 3 ♖f6 Petroff thus won a piece, and after 3...♚h3 4 ♞g3 ♞xg3+ 5 hg the consultants resigned.

Diagram 104. 1 c8♞+! (or 1 c8♞?? ♖e1#; 1 ♞xd3?? f1♞#; checks with the queen lead only to a draw.) 1...♞e8 (or 1...♞d8 2 ♞xd3+ and 3 ♞xe2) 2 ♞g6+! ♞f8 (In case Black's king goes to the d-file, White plays ♞xd3+ and then ♞xe2, followed by mate.) 3 ♞f6+ ♞g8 (or 3...♞e8 4 ♞e7#) 4 ♞e7+ ♞h7 5 ♞g6+ (It is also good for White to follow with 5 ♞f7+.) 5...♞h8 6 ♞g8# (or 6 ♞h6#).

Diagram 105. 1 ♚f7 ♖xf7! (or 1...♞h7? 2 ♞f6+ ♞g73 ♞xg7#; 1...♞xf7? 2 ♞xh6+ ♞h7 3 ♞

xf8+ ♖g8 4 ♖xg8#) 2 ♖xg7 ♖xg7 3 ♖g2, and Staunton won that endgame.

Still, it would have been much stronger for him to play 1 ♖h5! ♖h7. (Surprisingly, this position had already been reached in the game.) 2 ♖f7!! (recommended by Yakov Neishtadt) 2... ♖e6 (or 2... ♖xf7 3 ♖d8+; 2... ♖xf7 3 ♖xh6+, and White checkmates in both cases.) 3 ♖xe6, or 3 ♖f6+ ♖g7 4 ♖g6 and White wins. The variations are more or less the same after 1... ♖c7 2 ♖f7!, because Black cannot save the game with 2... ♖h7, due to 3 ♖g6.

Diagram 106. “1 ♖xg7! ♖xg7 2 ♖xf6 and White wins.” (Emanuel Schiffers).

It is even stronger for White to play 2 ♖xf6+, because Black is forced to sacrifice his queen, since he can play neither 2... ♖h6, due to 3 ♖d2+ and 4 ♖g5#, nor 2... ♖g8, in view of 3 ♖g5.

Diagram 107. 1... ♖xf2+! 2 ♖xf2 (or 2 ♖h1 ♖g3#) 2... ♖xf2+ 3 ♖h1 ♖g3#.

Diagram 108. 1... ♖xg2! 2 ♖xg2 (or 2 ♖xg2 ♖f2#) 2... ♖g5+ 3 ♖f2 (or 3 ♖h3 ♖f4 4 ♖xd5+ cd 5 ♖g3 ♖f5+ 6 ♖g2 ♖g4) 3... ♖xf3+! White resigned. After 3 ♖xf3 (or 3 ♖xf3 ♖f8+ 4 ♖e2 ♖g2+) 3... ♖f8 his position is completely hopeless.

Diagram 109. 1... ♖g1+!! (Winning the exchange by 1... ♖f2+ 2 ♖xf2 ♖xf2 would be too small an achievement for White.) 2 ♖xg1 ♖f2#.

Diagram 110. 1 ♖xe6! and it is over (1... ♖e2 2 ♖xe6+ and 3 ♖xd8; 1... ♖xd5 2 ♖e8+ and 3 ♖xd5).

Diagram 111. 1... ♖xh3+! 2 gh (2 ♖h1 ♖g5+ 3 ♖g1 ♖h2#) 2... ♖g4+! (but not 2... ♖xh3?? due to 3 ♖f4) 3 hg (or 3 ♖h1 ♖xh3#) 3... ♖h2#.

Diagram 112. 1... ♖xh2+! 2 ♖xh2 hg+ 3 ♖g1 ♖h1#.

Diagram 113. 1 ♖xc7+! ♖e8 (or 1... ♖xc7 2 ♖d6+ ♖d8 3 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 4 ♖xf8+) 2 ♖e2+ ♖e7 3 ♖e1 (Jaenisch goes for a dazzling conclusion, but he could have won faster with the simple line 3 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 4 ♖d5+ ♖e8 5 ♖e1#.) 3... ♖c6 (or 3... ♖xe2 4 ♖xe2#; von der Lasa could have postponed mate for a while with the move 3... ♖f7, but then Jaenisch would have probably continued with 4 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 5 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 6 ♖d5+ ♖e8 7 ♖d6 and 8 ♖f8#.) 4 ♖h5+ ♖f7 5 ♖xf7#!

Diagram 114. White had already sacrificed two pieces and now he concludes his attack victoriously: 1 ♖e8+ ♖d6 2 ♖xe5+ ♖c6 3 ♖a3! d6 (It is not better for Black to defend with 3... ♖b4, because of 4 c3, or 4 ♖d2! and he can capture neither the rook on f8, nor the bishop on d2, because of the mate. 4... ♖xd2 5 ♖c5#, 4... ♖xf8 5 ♖d5+ ♖b6 6 ♖b5#.) 4 d5+ ♖c5 5 ♖e3+ (or 5 b4+! and White wins) 5... ♖b4 6 c3+ ♖a4 7 b3+ (Now a knight sacrifice to finish.) 7... ♖xa3 (or 7... ♖a5 8 ♖xc4+) 8 ♖c1#.

It would be much weaker for White to play 1 ♖e8+ ♖d6! (or 1... ♖f6 2 de#) 2 ♖xe5+ ♖c6; White has no forced win here, because after 3 d5+ ♖b6 4 ♖e3+ ♖a6, Black's king escapes to the queenside.

Diagram 115. 1 ♖xf7+! (or 1 g4 ♖h4 ♖xf7+ ♗h8) 1... ♜xf7 (or 1... ♖xf7 2 ♘xf7 ♜xf7 3 ♜ad1 ♜c5 4 e6! de 5 ♜d8+ ♜f8 6 fe! ♜xf1+ 7 ♗h2, or 3...c5 4 ♖d5 ♖f8 5 b4 and White's attack is winning in both cases.) 2 g4 and Staunton won his opponent's queen, since Black cannot play 2... ♖h4, because of the obvious move 3 ♖xf7+, followed by a checkmate on the next move.

The game ended with: 2... ♜xe5 3 ♜ae1! ♖xh3+ 4 ♖xh3 ♜xd6 5 ♜e8+ ♜f8 6 ♜fe1 d5 7 ♜d8 ♜d7 8 ♜ed8 ♜xd8 9 ♜xd8 b6 10 ♖e3 ♜b7 11 ♜xa8 ♜xa8 12 ♖e6+ ♖h8 13 ♖f7.

Diagram 116. 1 b4! (With the line 1 ♘d8+ ♖a6 2 b4! ♖xb4 3 ♖xf6, White can win a piece, while the variation: 1 ♘d6+ ♖a6 2 b4! leads to a position which we will analyze in our notes to the next move.) 1... ♗h5 (After this move, Staunton wins immediately, but Black would not have saved the game either after any other move: 1... ♘xd5 2 ♘d8+ ♖a7 3 cd; 1... ♖xb4 2 ♘d6+ ♖a6 3 c5! ♖xf4 ♜a3+ ♖a4 5 ♜xa4#, or 3... ♖xc5 4 ♖a4+ ♖a5 5 ♖c6!, or 3... ♖a5 4 ♘c4+ ♖b5 5 ♜b3) 2 ♘d8+ ♖a6 (or 2... ♖a7 3 ♖f7+ winning the queen) 3 bc ♘xf4 4 ♜xa3#.

Diagram 117. 1... ♜xf4! (This is the most energetic move for Black. His other possibilities are slightly worse: 1... ♜xb4 2 ♖f2 and 1...hg 2 ♖f1.) 2 ♜xf4 (or 2 ♖g2 ♜xg3! 3 g6+ ♖g7; 2 g6+ ♖xg6 3 ♖f2 ♜xg3) 2... ♖xe2 (It was the last game of the match, and Staunton did not wish to give his opponent any chance at all. Otherwise he could have tried 2... ♜xe2 3 g6+ ♖g8 4 ♖a1 ♖f3 5 ♖f1 ♖h5.) 3 ♖xe2 ♜xe2 and St. Amant resigned the game, as well as the match, after the moves 4 gh c3 5 ♖f1 ♜e4 6 ♜c1 ♖g6 7 d5 c2 8 ♜d2 ♜xb4 9 d6 ♜d4 10 ♖e2 ♜xd6 11 ♖e3 ♖xh6 12 ♖e2+ ♖g6 13 ♖e1 b4.

Diagram 118. 1 ♜h5! ♖xh5? (It was necessary for Black to play 1... ♜xh2 2 ♜xh6 ♜xh6, and although after 3 ♘h3, White maintains his material advantage, Black could have still resisted for a while.) 2 ♖xc6+ bc (or 2... ♜c7 3 ♖xc7#) 3 ♜xa6#.

Diagram 119. 1 ♘b6+! (but not 1 ♘e7+??, because of 1... ♘xe7) 1...ab 2 ♖xc6+! bc 3 ♜a6#.

Diagram 120. 1...fg+ 2 ♖xg2 ♖xh3+! 3 ♖xh3 (or 3 ♖g1 ♘f3#) 3... ♘e3+ 4 ♖h4 (or 4 ♜e6 ♜xe6+ 5 ♖h4 ♘f3+ 6 ♖h5 ♜f7#) 4...g5+ (It is preferable for Black to play 4... ♘f3+ 5 ♖h5 ♜g4#.) 5 ♖h5 ♜g4+ 6 ♖h6 ♜f8#.

Diagram 121. 1 ♖d8+! (or 1 ♖xc3?? ♘e2+) 1... ♜xd8 2 ♜f8#.

Diagram 122. 1 ♜xh7+! (or 1 ♖h6? ♖e7) 1... ♖xh7 2 ♜h1+ ♖g7 3 ♖h6#.

Diagram 123. 1... ♖f1+! (or 1... ♜d3?? 2 ♖xd3) 2 ♖xf1 ♜d3++ 3 ♖e1 ♜f1#.

Diagram 124. 1 ♜xe7+! ♜xe7 2 ♜xg6+ ♖f8 3 ♖h8+ (or 3 ♜xf6?? ♖xf4+4g3 ♖f2+5 ♖h1 ♜xe1#) 3... ♘g8 4 ♜xe7+. Black resigned (4... ♖xe7 5 ♜xe7 ♖xe7 6 ♖xg8).

Diagram 125. 1 ♖xe5! (Legall's theme) 1...♙xd1? (or 1...de 2 ♖xg4) 2 ♙xf7+ ♕e7 3 ♗d5#.

Diagram 126. 1...♗xd5! 2 ♙xd8 ♙b4+ and Harrwitz won a piece, since White was forced to play 3 ♖d2 ♙xd2+ 3 ♖xd2 ♖xd8.

Diagram 127. 1 ♗e5! (That is the best move for White, but also good is 1 ♖e1+ ♖f8 2 ♙h6+ ♗g7 3 ♙xg7+ ♖xg7 4 ♖xg3+, and later, for example, 4...♖f7 5 ♖g1 ♖g8 6 ♗e5+ fe 7 ♖f3+ ♖e6 8 ♗xc7++ ♖e7 9 ♖f7+ ♖d6 10 ♗b5+ ♖c6 11 ♖d5#. So in this variation Black should give up his queen: 1...♖f7 2 ♗xf6+ d5 3 ♙xd5+ ♖f8 4 ♗xh7+ ♖xh7 5 ♙xd8 g2+ 6 ♖xg2 ♗f4+ 7 ♖g3 ♗xd5, but White's position is winning even so.) 1...0-0 (Even after the relatively best line for Black - 1...♗f4, Harrwitz would still be winning. For example: 2 ♙xf4 g2+ 3 ♖xg2 ♖g8+ 4 ♖f1 fe 5 ♖h5+ ♖g6 6 ♖xe5+ ♖e6 7 ♖h8+ and 8 ♖xd8.) 2 ♖xh5 fg+ (After this check, Anderssen gets mated in three moves, but he could not have saved the game anyway. His other possibilities were: 2...♖g7 3 ♖h6+ ♖h8 4 ♗g6+ ♖g8 5 ♗xf6#, or 2...g2+ 3 ♖xg2 ♖h8 4 ♗g6+ ♖g7 5 ♖h6+ ♖f7 6 ♗xc7+ d5 7 ♖xh7#) 3 ♗f6++ ♖g7 (or 3...♖h8 4 ♖xh7#) 4 ♖xh7+! ♖xf6 5 ♗g4#.

Diagram 128. Black has two extra rooks, but Morphy's queen and bishop are performing miracles: 1 h7+! ♖xh7 2 ♙e6+! ♖f7 3 ♙xf7+! (This is an important moment, since the move 3 ♖xf7+? leads only to a perpetual check.) 3...♖h7 (or 3...♖f8 4 ♙e6+ ♖e8 5 ♖f7#) 4 ♖g6+ ♖h8 5 ♖h6#.

Diagram 129. 1 ♖e8+! ♖xe8 (or 1...♖c7 2 ♖xc8+ ♖b6 3 ♗a4+ and 4 ♗xc5, or 2...♖d6 3 ♖e6#) 2 ♖xc8+ ♖e7 3 ♗xd5+! ♖d6 (or 3...cd 4 ♖xc5+; 3...♖xd5 4 ♙xd5 cd 5 ♖xb7+) 4 ♖c7#.

Diagram 130. 1...♖f2+! 2 ♖xf2 (or 2 ♖h1 ♖xf1#) 2...gf+ and 3...♗g3#.

Diagram 131. 1 ♗xd6! (but not 1 gh??, in view of 2 ♖xf6). Black resigned.

Was that decision timely? Yes, it was. We will confirm this with some variations: 1...♗g6 2 ♖xe6+! and 3 ♙xg7; 1...♖ad8 2 ♙xe5 ♖xd6+ 3 ♙xd6+ ♖xd6 4 ♙xf7; 1...♖xe5 2 ♙xe5+ ♖xe5. (If Black's king retreats instead of capturing the bishop on e5, White follows with 3 ♖xe6!, with or without a check.) 4 ♖f4+ ♖d4 5 e5+ ♖d5 6 ♙f3#.

Diagram 132. 1 ♖d7! (This move is played with a more subtle idea than just exchanging queens.) 1...♖xd7 (Black did not suspect anything, but there was no salvation anyway; the line 1...♖e1+ 2 ♖xe1 fe ♖+ 3 ♙xe1 ♙d6 4 ♗xd6 ♗xd6, would have only delayed his demise, while the move 1...♖c6 would lose outright: 2 ♖xc8+! ♖xc8 3 ♗b6+! ab 4 ♖a3#, or immediately 2 ♗b6+! and here it would be bad for Black to play 2...♖xb6 3 ♖xc8#, or 2...ab 3 ♖a3+ with mate next move.) 2 ♗b6+! ab 4 ♖a3+ ♖a4 4 ♖xa4#.

Diagram 133. 1...♗d3! White resigned.

He was clearly mesmerized by the picturesque checkmate 2 ♖xe8? ♙xf4#!. It is also bad for him to defend with 2 ♖xd3, because of 2...♖xe1+ 3 ♖h2 ♙xf4#. It is only a bit stronger for him to try 3 ♗

e4 ♖xe1 4 ♗xd6 ♗xc2 5 ♗xe8+ ♖xe8 6 ♖xb1 ♖e1, with an extra exchange for Black. In fact, White's best line here is 2 ♖e5 ♗xe5 3 de, but even then after, for example, 3... ♗xe5 4 ♗e4 ♖c4! 5 ♗e3 (or 5 ♗g5 ♖xf4! 6 ♗xf4 ♗xf4+ 7 ♖xf4 ♖f6+ 8 ♖g3? ♗e5+ 9 ♖f2 ♗h2+ and 10... ♗xc2) 5... ♗xf4+ 6 ♗xf4 ♖xe4 7 ♗xh6+ ♖xh6, Black ends up with two extra pawns and the initiative.

Diagram 134. 1 ♖ec1! (1 ♖bc1? is weaker, because of 1... ♗c6 2 ♗xe5 ♖de8 3 ♗b3 ba 4 ♖b1 ♗b4! 5 ♗xd7 ♖xe1+ 6 ♖xe1 ♗xd7 7 ♗xb4.) 1... ♗c6 (Black has nothing better here: 1... ♗xa6? 2 ♗xc7#; 1... ♗c6? 2 ♗xb7+ ♖b8 3 ♗xc6+ ♖c8 4 ♖b8+, followed by a check with the queen and 6 ♗b7#.) 2 ♗xa5 ba (White is totally dominant in other variations too. Black has no counterplay whatsoever and he cannot avoid huge material losses, for example: 2... ♖d7 3 ♗xe5 ♖hd8 4 ♖xc6 ♖d1+ 5 ♗f1 ♗xc6 6 ♗xc6 ♖xb1 7 ♗xd8.) 3 ♗xa6+ ♖d7 4 ♖xc6! and White wins, because if 4... ♗xc6, he has the resource 5 ♗xe5+, winning his opponent's queen.

V

Anderssen and Morphy (1851 - 1860)

A combination must be sound. An unsound combination is no combination at all. It is merely an attempt, an error, a failure, a nonentity.

Emanuel Lasker

A good sacrifice is one that is not necessarily sound, but leaves your opponent dazed and confused.

Rudolf Spielmann

This decade was one of the most interesting in the history of chess. There were three tremendously important events in it: the first International Tournament, the victorious tour of Europe by the American genius Morphy, and the match Anderssen-Morphy. The first International Tournament was organized by the Club of Saint George, thanks to Staunton's initiative, and it was held in London simultaneously with the Great Exhibition of Art and Industry. The organizers sent invitations to chess organizations of the leading European countries, hoping to assemble the strongest field possible.

Unfortunately, there were no representatives of Russia among the participants. Jaenisch was too late for the start of the tournament, while Petroff and some others failed to appear for various reasons.

There were 16 masters at the start, and the competition was played according to the knockout system. During the first stage, in the 1/8 final, short matches (until two wins) were played, while in the subsequent stages the matches were determined by four wins.

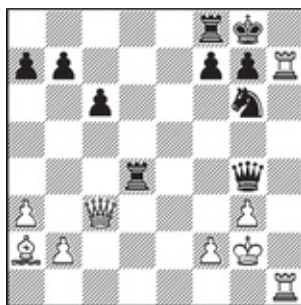
Anderssen was not well-known outside of Germany before the competition. During the tournament, he was sending reports home to be published in German newspapers. This is how he described the drawing of lots on May 26, 1851, and the appearance of Staunton, whom he saw there for the first time, in the following fashion: "There were 16 ballots for the draw in the urn. There were the same numbers on pairs of ballots - two with number 1, two with number 2 - up to number 8. The players who drew the same number had to play against each other. Also, half of the ballots were white and half yellow. Whoever drew a white ballot was to play with White in the first round.

The fight started on the next day, May 27, at 11 o'clock in the morning. All eight pairs were playing in the hall of the Club Saint George. It was far from being comfortable. The tables and the chairs were rather small and low. All the free space around the players was occupied by the persons recording the moves. In short, there was no space to put your elbows on the table or even to support your so-busy head during the fierce fight. Meanwhile, Staunton seemed to have no need for that comfort. He was sitting in his chair straight as a candle; he had put both his thumbs into the pockets of his vest and he would stare at the board for half an hour, keeping perfectly still, before making a move."

The Englishman was confident of success, otherwise he would not have organized the competition,

but in the semifinal he was crushed by Anderssen 4-1.

Here is the combination which concluded one of the games of that match:



135

**Anderssen - Staunton
London, 1851**

White to move

Staunton had captured White's bishop on d4 with his rook rather hastily on the previous move.

1 ♖h1 - h4!

White could have played 1 ♖h7h4, with the same variations.

1 ... ♔g6 x h4+

Black had no choice. He could not expect that after 1... ♔d7? Anderssen would capture on d4 with his queen (2 ♔xd4?? ♔xd4 3 ♖xd4 ♔xh7). Naturally, White would have played 2 ♖xd4 and Black would have to resign.

2 ♖h7 x h4

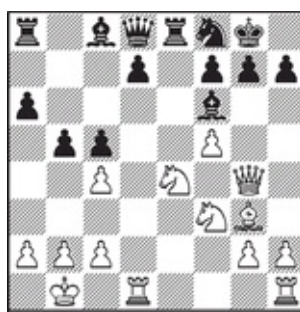
Now, after 2... ♔xh4, of course, White plays 3 gh, while if Black retreats with his queen to a safe square on move two, he loses his rook on d4. Anderssen ends up with a decisive material advantage in both cases.

Black resigned after a few moves.

“Staunton failed to demonstrate his previous strength in this tournament only because he had lost the habit of competing seriously, since he had to play with a handicap for many years against weaker opposition ... Defeats did not affect the composure, good spirits and kindness of my opponent ... I never noticed even a trace of annoyance in him, and that is the mark of a great player,” said the winner of the tournament magnanimously.

Still, it is not easy to imagine what efforts it took Staunton to behave in that fashion.

Anderssen beat a member of the English Parliament in the finals. This combination enabled the winner to gain a piece in a game from that match:



136

Anderssen - Wywill
London, 1851

White to move

1 ♖g3 - c7!

This is an amazing tactical blow. The other possibility for White is 1 ♖d6, and here Black must either give up the exchange immediately with 1... ♖xe4, or after 1...h5 2 ♗xf6+ ♕xf6 3 ♕xh5 ♕e7 (or 3... ♕d8 4 ♗e5) 4 ♖e1 ♕d8 5 ♗e5 ♖e7 6 ♗h4 (White is not afraid of 6...f6, because of 7 ♖xf6! ♕e8 8 ♖xf8+ ♕xf8 9 ♗xe7).

1 ... ♕d8 - e7

But not 1... ♕xc7?!, due to 2 ♗xf6+ ♕h8 3 ♗xe8, and because of the mating threat (4 ♕xg7#), Black loses his queen. After 1 ♖xe4, White wins two exchanges with 2 ♕xe4 ♕xc7 3 ♕xa8. Evidently Black's best possibility is 1... h5!, but after, for example: 2 ♕g3 ♕e7 (or 2...h4 3 ♕g4 with approximately the same variations as in the game), 3 ♗d6 h4 3 ♕h3 ♖a7 4 ♖he1 ♖xc7 5 ♗xe8 ♕d8 6 ♗xc7 ♕xc7, White has two extra exchanges.

2 ♗e4 x f6+ ♕e7 x f6
3 ♕d1 - d6 ♗f8 - e6?

This was not necessary at all. Black gave up his knight, noticing that after 3... ♕e7, Anderssen would play 4 f6, threatening 5 ♕xg7# and winning the queen. Instead, Black had to continue with 3...h5!. There might follow 4 ♕xh5 ♕e7 5 ♖e1 ♕xe1+ 6 ♗xe1 ♖xe1+ 7 ♖d1 ♖xd1+ 8 ♕xd1, and White would need to overcome some technical difficulties on his road to victory.

4 f5 x e6

After a brief struggle Black resigned. The final combination is included in the section "How Would You Play?."

After his victory in the London tournament, Anderssen was considered the best chess player in the world. Meanwhile, in Berlin he was met by his admiring compatriots - the chess crown had left the coasts of England and France and came to Germany.

“He was the greatest master of all time. His brilliant style and the profundity of his ideas were just remarkable,” Steinitz wrote about Anderssen.

During the period 1851-1857, Anderssen played just a few games - mostly friendly training encounters - but even so, many of them became famous. The following combination was played in such a game, around the time of the first International Tournament, and it became possibly the most famous combination in the history of chess.



137

**Anderssen - Kieseritzky
London, 1851**

White to play

1 e4 - e5!

“This move cuts off Black’s queen from the defence of the g7-square. Starting with that move, Anderssen’s combination is absolutely correct, and brilliant, too. Now he is threatening 2 ♖xg7+ ♔d8 3 ♕c7#.” (Euwe)

1 ... ♔b2 x a1+
2 ♕f1 - e2!

It is weaker for White to play 2 ♔g2? ♕b7 3 ♖c7+ ♔d8 4 ♕xb7 ♕b6 5 ♖xa8 ♔g1+ 6 ♔h3 ♕f1+.

2 ... ♖b8 - a6?

“Black protects the c7-square, but his demise is caused by the attack from the other side. It would have been slightly better for Black to try 2...♖a6.” (Euwe)

“It is easy to see that Black can save the game neither with 2...♕b7 3 ♖xg7+ ♔d8 4 ♕xf7 ♖h6 5 ♖e6+, nor 2...f6 3 ♖xg7+ ♕f7 4 ♖xf6 ♕xg7 (or 4...♕b7 5 ♖e4+ ♕xg7 6 ♕f8#) 5 ♖e8+ ♔h6 6 ♕f4#.” (Yakov Neishtadt)

The position before Black's second move was the subject of lively discussion for a long time. Steinitz thought that after 2...♙a6, Kieseritzky could have avoided losing, and he showed the following variation to prove it: 3 ♘c7+ ♖d8 4 ♜xa8 ♜c3! 5 ♜xb8+ ♙c8 6 ♘d5 ♜xc2+ 7 ♙e1 ♜c1+, with a draw by perpetual check.

Still, Falkbeer found the correct variation for White: 4 ♘xa6! ♜c3 5 ♙c7+ ♜xc7 (otherwise White mates) 6 ♘xc7 ♙xc7 7 ♜xa8, and in his opinion Black's position is hopeless. He gives two additional lines:

I. 7...♘h6 8 ♘d6 ♖f8 9 ♜b7+ ♙d8 10 ♜xb8+ ♙e7 11 ♘c8+ ♙e8 12 ♘b6+ ♙e7 13 ♜d6+ and 14 ♜xd7#.

II. 7...♘c6 8 ♘d6 ♘xe5 9 ♘e8+ and White checkmates in 13 moves by force.

We believe that White's best continuation in line II is 9 ♘xb5+! ♙b6 10 ♜b8+ ♙c6 11 c4! ♘xc4 12 dc, mating. We also mention the following possibility: 7...♙c5 8 ♘d6 ♙xd6 9 ed+ ♙xd6 10 ♜xb8+ ♙e7 11 h6! and White wins.

The best defense for Black was found by Chigorin. The main line of his analysis runs 4 ♘xa6 ♙b6! 5 ♜xa8 ♜c3 6 ♜xb8+ ♙c8 7 ♜xc8+ ♙xc8 8 ♙f8! h6 (or 8...♘h6 9 ♘d6+ and 10 ♙xc7) 9 ♘d6+ ♙d8 10 ♘xf7+ ♙e8 11 ♘xh8 ♙xf8.

Chigorin wrote: "Can Black play for a draw after best play by White? We respond negatively. Black's knight cannot re-enter the game without being exchanged. Then, playing with knight against bishop, with an extra pawn and superior pawn structure, White would win easily. He can choose among several possibilities. One is 12 ♙f3, and if 12...♙e7, then 13 ♘g6+ ♙e6 14 ♙e4 d6 (or 14...d5+ 15 ♙f4 and then ♘b4) 15 d4! etc."

3 ♘f5 x g7+ ♙e8 - d8
4 ♙f3 - f6+!! ♘g8 x f6

It does Black no good to refrain from accepting the sacrifice: 4...♘e7 5 ♜xe7# or 5 ♙xe7#.

5 ♙d6 - e7#!

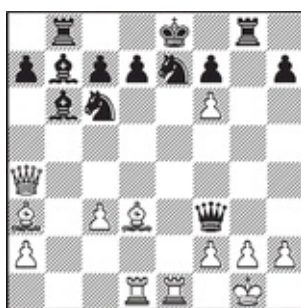
"The end of the game is undoubtedly splendid. The checkmate represents a maximal achievement; three minor officers, unaided, execute the incredible mate in the face of the whole hostile army." (Emanuel Lasker)

The whole game, as well as the charming final combination, tremendously impressed Anderssen's contemporaries. Falkbeer suggested that game be named "Immortal."

"The Immortal game contained abundant mistakes, but despite that, since these mistakes were typical for that epoch, its beauty is due to the immortal ideas of Anderssen." (Reti)

During the next year Anderssen played another equally famous game, with a magnificent attack, which was called by his contemporaries the "Evergreen."

It is likely that this name was given to the game by Wilhelm Steinitz, who called it "evergreen in Anderssen's laurel wreath," possibly in reference to the Berliners crowning Anderssen with a laurel wreath when he returned from London in 1851.



138

Anderssen - Dufresne

Berlin, 1852

White to play

There “... followed Anderssen’s magnificent combination. We recommend the reader analyze thoroughly all the variations, because it will both amuse you and will help in developing your tactical ability.” (Reti)

1 ♖e1 x e7+! ♜c6 x e7?

“This move enables White to mate in four. The main line of the combination arises after 1... ♔d8; White would have countered that with 2 ♖xd7+. Now, if 2... ♜xd7, then 3 ♜e2+, winning the queen; therefore Black must retreat with 2... ♜c8, after which White has the crushing blow 3 ♖d8+!, and Black loses no matter how he captures the rook: 3... ♖xd8 4 gf; 3... ♜xd8 4 ♜e2+; 3... ♞xd8 4 ♖d7+ ♜xd7 5 ♜f5+ ♜e8 6 ♜d7#.” (Reti)

Euwe added that after 2... ♜xd7, White should not play 3 ♜e2+, but 3 ♜f5++!, and then 3... ♜e8 4 ♜d7+ ♜d8 5 ♜xc6+ with mate in three. The rest of Reti’s analysis appeared to be exhaustive.

This is, in general, the fate of many super-famous combinations — not all the best defenses have been considered. Even in Reti’s analysis, after 3... ♜xd8 4 ♜e2+ Black could still have resisted.

Grigory Levenfish added to Reti’s analysis with 4... ♞d4 5 ♜xf3 ♜xf3 6 ♖xd4+ ♜xd4 7 ♖xd4+ ♜c8 8 ♖d3 ♜xg2 9 f3 ♜h3+ 10 ♜f2 ♖b6 11 ♖xh7 ♖g2+ 12 ♜e3 ♜e6 and concluded the position was approximately equal.

Then Yakov Neishtadt improved White’s play. He suggested the strong move 6 g3! ♜xd1 7 ♖xd1 c5 8 cd cd 9 ♜e7+ ♜d7 10 ♖a4+. In fact, after 10... ♜c7 11 ♖c4+ ♜b7 12 ♖xf7, Black loses. White maintains the advantage too after 6... ♖g4 (or 6...c5 6 cd ♜xd1 7 ♖xd1 cd transposing to the previous line) 7 cd ♜xd1 8 ♖xd1 ♖xd4 9 ♖c2 ♜d7 10 ♖xh7 ♖d2 11 ♖xf7+. Then, even more important, Neishtadt found another improvement: 4 ♜f5+!, forcing Black to give up his queen under much less favourable circumstances: 4... ♖xd1+ 5 ♖xd1+ ♞d4 6 g3.

“Black’s rooks are uncoordinated and he has problems defending against the attack by the queen and two bishops. After 6...c5 7 cd cd, White wins with 8 ♖a4. It is probably best for Black to try 6... ♖g5, but even then after 7 ♜h3 ♖d5 8 cd ♜xd4 9 ♖g4, or 8... ♖xd4 9 ♖e2, White manages to get at his opponent’s king.” (Neishtadt)

There is some imprecision here, though. After 8... ♜xd4 9 ♖g4 c5! 10 ♖g8+ ♜c7 11 ♖xf7+,

Black can hang on for a while, but the line 9 ♖e7+ ♔e8 10 ♚g4 wins much more quickly. Black loses after a few checks. It looks like the move 6 ♖h3 is very good, too. For example, 6...♖e4 7 cd ♖a5 8 ♖e7+ ♔e8 9 ♚a4+ c6 10 f3 ♖xf3 11 ♚xa5, winning.

2 ♚a4 x d7+!! ♔e8 x d7
 Or 2...♖f8 3 ♚ (♖)xe7#.
 3 ♖d3 - f5++ ♔d7 - e8

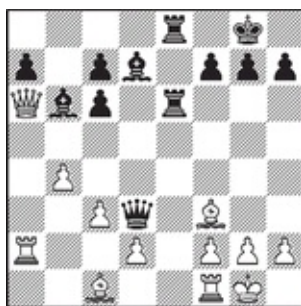
Black cannot defend with 3...♔c6, due to 4 ♖d7#.

3 ♖f5 - d7+ ♔e8 - f8
 Or 3...♖d8 4 ♖xe7# (4 fe#).
 4 ♖a3 x e7#.

“It is amazing, but in both his most famous games Anderssen checkmated his opponents with his bishop from the e7-square.” (Euwe).

The International Tournament in London in 1851 provoked tremendous interest even beyond Europe. Some years later, American chess players managed to organize a national championship. In 1857, First American Chess Congress took place. The format of the main tournament was almost the same as in England: 16 players were split into pairs and played elimination matches at first up to three wins, and in the final up to five. Paul Morphy won that tournament.

The following remarkable combination is from the final match:



139

Paulsen - Morphy, New York, 1857

Black to play

1 ... ♚d3 x f3!

“This is one of the most charming and poetic chess combinations which has even been encountered over the board.” (Steinitz)

2 g2 x f3 ♖e6 - g6+
 3 ♔g1 - h1 ♖d7 - h3

“Black is threatening 4...♗g2+ and 5...♗xf3#.” (Emanuel Lasker)

4 ♖f1 - d1?

“Naturally, it would have been impossible to play 4 ♖g1, because of 4...♖xg1+, followed by 5...♖e1+. Still, White could have defended against the threat of mate in two in another fashion — by attacking the powerful rook on g6 with 4 ♖d3. If then 4...♗g2+, White plays 5 ♖g1 ♗xf3+ 6 ♖xg6 hg 7 d4 ♖e4 8 h3 and his position is quite acceptable. Therefore, in answer to 4 ♖d3, Black must play 4...f5. In that case, White must follow not with 5 ♖c4+?, because of 5...♖f8, when the move 6 ♖f7 is impossible, but with 5 ♖d1 ♗xf2 6 ♖f1. White can resist for a while, although of course, Black must win the endgame.” (Emanuel Lasker)

4	...	♗h3 - g2+
5	♖h1 - g1	♗g2 x f3+
6	♖g1 - f1	♗f3 - g2+

Morphy recommended here the following elegant variation: 6...♖g2! 7 ♖d3 ♖xf2+ 8 ♖g1 ♖g2+ 9 ♖h1 ♖g1#. Maróczy added this line: 7 ♖e2 ♖xe2 8 d4 ♖xh2 9 ♖xe2 ♖h1#.

7	♖f1 - g1	♗g2 - h3+
---	----------	-----------

“Here, instead of the move in the game, which provided Black with a simple and guaranteed victory, Morphy could have concluded his game in brilliant fashion by mating in four: 7...♗e4+ 8 ♖f1 ♗f5! 9 ♖e2 ♗h3+ 10 ♖e1 ♖g1#” (Maróczy).

8	♖g1 - h1	♗b6 x f2
9	♖a6 - f1	♗h3 x f1
10	♗d1 x f1	♗e8 - e2

11 ♖a2 - a1

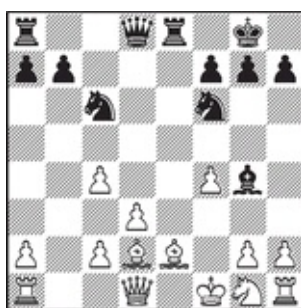
White’s last chance here was to play 11 ♖b2 and 12 d4.

11	...	♗g6 - h6!
12	d2 - d4	♗f2 - e3!

If now 13 ♗xe3, then 13...♖hxh2+ 14 ♖g1 ♖eg2#, while after 13 ♖f2, Black follows with 13...♖xf2 14 ♗xe3 ♖fxh2+ 15 ♖g1 ♖h1+ and 16...♖xa1.

White resigned.

After his win in that championship Morphy stayed in New York City for a while and played a great number of games. Some of them were worthy illustrations of his chess artistry. Our next three examples are among them.



140
Schulten - Morphy
New York, 1857

Black to move

1 ... ♖e8 x e2!
 2 ♘g1 x e2 ♜c6 - d4

“The main action in this game occurred on the e-file and the vertical pin should have been decisive. That proved to be true, because the threats along the e-file forced White to lose a tempo in order for his king to escape from the dangerous file, but then Black had a beautiful small combination, transforming the vertical pin into an even more deadly diagonal pin.” (Kasparov)

3 ♕d1 - b1

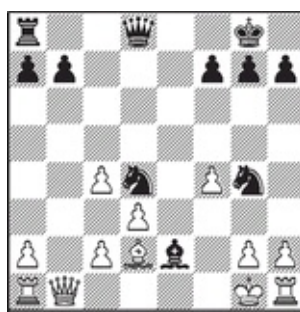
“White’s queen has no better square. After 3 ♕e1 Black counters with 3... ♗xe2+ 4 ♖f2 ♘g4+, while if 4 ♖g1, then 4... ♘xc2, and White’s losses would be even greater.” (Euwe)

3 ... ♗g4 x e2+
 4 ♖f1 - f2

“In case of 4 ♖g1, Black would follow with 4... ♘xc2, with the deadly threat 5... ♕d4+. White’s relatively best defense here would have been 4 ♖e1 ♕e7 (or 4... ♕e8), etc. He was beyond salvation anyway.” (Euwe)

After 4 ♖e1 ♕e8, there would be no remedy for White - 5 ♖f2 ♘g4+ 6 ♖g1 ♕c6 7 ♖e1 ♕c5 8 ♗e3 ♘xe3 9 ♖f2 ♖e8 - with a crushing attack.

4 ... ♗f6 - g4+
 5 ♖f2 - g1



141

Position after White's move five

“After 5 ♔g3 Black plays 5... ♘f5+ and then 6... ♚h4#; while in case of 5 ♔e1, Black would have continued with 5... ♚h4+ and 6... ♚e7. Black checkmates in seven moves after the move in the game.” (Maróczy)

“White's king is frantically rushing about its camp in anticipation of the impending doom. Players who wish to improve in the art of attack should cover the score of this game and try to find for themselves the forced win for Black, and only then, perhaps after 20-30 minutes, should they compare their solution with what Morphy played.” (Kasparov)

5	...	♘d4 - f3+!
6	g2 x f3	♚d8 - d4+
7	♔g1 - g2	♚d4 - f2+
8	♔g2 - h3	♚f2 x f3+
9	♔h3 - h4	♘g4 - e3

Or 9... ♘h6, again mating in two. On 9... ♘f2 10 h3, Black cannot checkmate so quickly.

10	♚h1 - g1	♘e3 - f5+
11	♔h4 - g5	♚f3 - h5#



142

Morphy - NN

New York, 1857

(White played this game without his
rook on a1)

White to move

1 ♖f1 - e1+

It seems to us that the line 1 ♖b5+ c6 2 dc! ♕e6 3 cb+ ♘d7 4 ♖xd7+ ♔xd7 5 ♚b5+ is better for White; he maintains an edge.

1 ... ♕c8 - e6
2 d5 x e6 ♘a5 x b3?

This move loses. Black had to play 2... ♘xc4! 3 ef++ ♔xf7 4 ♘e5+ ♔g8 5 ♘xc4 ♚d5 6 ♖e5 ♚f7 7 ♖e7 ♖e8!, or 4 ♘g5+ ♔g6 5 ♘e6 ♖e8! 6 ♚xc4 ♚d5!.

3 e6 x f7+ ♔e8 - d7

“Now the guillotine is warmed up and Black’s king is on his final walk.” (Maróczy)

4 ♕c4 - e6+ ♔d7 - c6

5 ♘f3 - e5+ ♔c6 - b5
6 ♕e6 - c4+ ♔b5 - a5
Or 6... ♔a4 7 ab+ ♔a5 8 ♕b4#.
7 ♕a3 - b4+ ♔a5 - a4
8 a2 x b3#



143

Marache - Morphy
New York, 1857

Black to move

1 ... ♘f5 - g3!!

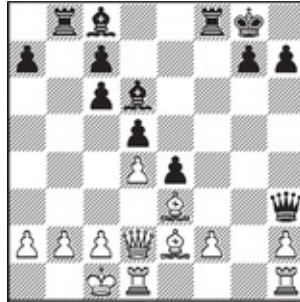
This move is picturesque and strong. The finale of this game is unusual; yet a year later Morphy checkmated another opponent in the same fashion, and many years later he won against Marshall with a similar strike. (All these combinations are included in our book.)

2 ♔e4 x g6

If 2 ♖xd4, then not 2...♖xd4 immediately, but first 2...♗e2+.

2 ... ♗d4 - e2#!

American admirers of Morphy hoped that Staunton would come to the New World, but the English player prudently declined their invitation. Then Morphy decided to go to Europe himself, and on June 21, 1858, he came to England. Soon he won brilliant victories in London against the best British players. The following combination, with which he crushed one of the leading British masters, was published all over the world.



144

Bird - Morphy London, 1858

Black to move

In his notes to Black's previous move, when Morphy moved his rook from a8 to b8, White replying 0-0-0, Maróczy wrote "The move with the rook prepares a strikingly deep and surprising combination; still, after the best defense, would have led only to a draw."

1 ... ♖f8 x f2!
2 ♗e3 x f2 ♗h3 - a3!

"This is a magnificent move and the key to Black's combination. We can understand Morphy quite well, since he was incapable of withstanding the temptation. The combination with a rook sacrifice and then with a queen sacrifice was too beautiful to resist; meanwhile, White's best defense was too difficult to find." (Euwe)

"White would have answered 2...♗a3 with 3 ♔e3!" (Maróczy)

3 c2 - c3

"After 3 ♔c3 Black would play 3...♗f4+4♖d2 (or 4♖b1 ♔xc3) 4...♔xa2 5 ♔a3 (or 5 b3 e3 6 ♗xe3 ♗xe3 7 ♔xe3 ♔a1#) 5...♔xa3 6 ba e3 and he would regain his rook, keeping a couple of extra pawns." (Euwe). In the sub-variation 5 b3 e3 6 ♗xe3 ♗xe3, White wouldn't capture on e3, since he gets mated. In fact, after 5 b3, Black's best line is 5...♗d6!, winning the queen.

“In case of 3 ♖g5, Black would play 3... ♖xb2+ 4 ♔d2 ♗b4+ 5 ♕e3 ♖a3+! 6 ♗d3 (or 6 ♖f4 ♗d6+) 6... ♗a6 7 ♖hg1 ♗f8!, winning the game.” (Maróczy)

3 ... ♖a3 x a2
4 ♖b2 - b4

“After 4 ♖c2, Black could have played 4... ♖xb2 5 ♕xb2 ♗a3 6 ♖xa3 ♖xa3+ 7 ♔d2 ♖b2+ 8 ♔e1 ♖xc3+.” (Maróczy) Or 4... ♗f4+ (Euwe).

4 ... ♖a2 - a1+
5 ♔c1 - c2 ♖a1 - a4+
6 ♔c2 - b2

“By playing 6 ♔c1, White could have forced a perpetual, because the bishop sacrifice on b4 would be a mistake; for example 6... ♗xb4 7 ♖bcb ♖xb4 8 ♖g5 ♖a3+ 9 ♔d2 ♖b2+ 10 ♔e1 ♖xe2+ 11 ♔xe2 ♖f3+ 12 ♔e1 ♖xh1+ 13 ♖g1 ♖f3 14 ♖g3.” (Maróczy)

6 ... ♗d6 x b4
7 ♖c3 x b4 ♖b8 x b4+
8 ♖d2 x b4 ♖a4 x b4+
9 ♔b2 - c2

White would not have saved the game after any of the other possible retreats of his king; e. g., 9 ♔a2 c5! 10 ♖dc d4 11 ♗xd4 ♗e6+ 12 ♔a1 ♖b3 13 ♖d2 e3 14 ♗xe3 ♖a3+ 15 ♔b1 ♗f5+ 16 ♗d3 ♗xd3+ 17 ♖xd3 ♖xd3+.

9 ... e4 - e3!

“The decisive move.” (Maróczy)

10 ♗f2 x e3 ♗c8 - f5+
11 ♖d1 - d3 ♖b4 - c4+
12 ♔c2 - d2 ♖c4 - a2+
13 ♔d2 - d1 ♖a2 - b1+

Black won.

The young American conquered London and soon Paris as well. There is an interesting story behind the next game, which was played in one of the most famous chess venues in the world, Café de la Regence in Paris. The American champion’s opponent was a French writer, who was also a correspondent for several chess magazines.



145

**Delanois - Morphy
Paris, 1858**

Black to move

1 ... ♖f8 - e8!
2 ♙f4 x c7?

As Delanois captured the bishop, he smiled and said “You did not need to come to Europe if you are to make such blunders!”

2 ... ♗e2 x f2
3 ♘g1 x f2

Now Black checkmates in five moves.

3 ... ♗e8 - e2+!
4 ♘f2 x e2

If 4 ♙g3 (or 4 ♙f1 ♗xg2#) then 4... ♗xg2+ and 5... ♗g4#.

4 ... ♙d5 x g2+
5 ♘e2 - e1 ♙g2 - g1+
6 ♘e1 - d2

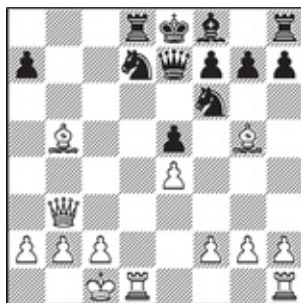
The alternative for White was 6 ♙e2 ♗h5+ 7 ♙d2 ♗f2#.

6 ... ♙g1 - f2+
7 ♘d2 - d1 ♗g6 - h5#

It was amazing that the decisive strike was delivered by Black’s light-squared bishop, which was in hiding for the last six moves, while Morphy’s heavy pieces were destroying the White king’s defenses.

In September, 1858, Morphy won convincingly against the champion of France Harrwitz, and he again attempted to challenge Staunton to a match. His challenge was in vain, however. While he was

waiting for the answer, a bit depressed, Morphy played his most famous game. In October he visited the opera and during the intermission of “The Barber of Seville” he accepted the invitation of Duke Karl and Count Isouard to play a game of chess.



146
Morphy - Consultants
Paris, 1858

White to move

1 ♖d1 x d7!

“This was Morphy at his best. This brilliant combination, with numerous sacrifices, made this game one of the most beautiful achievements in the history of chess.” (Maróczy)

1 ... ♞d8 x d7
2 ♖h1 - d1 ♜e7 - e6

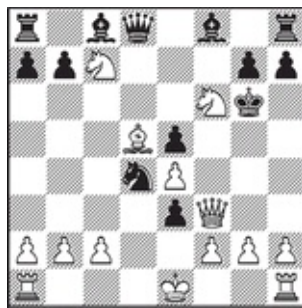
If 2... ♜b4, then 3 ♜xf6 gf (or 3... ♜xb3 4 ♜xd7#) 4 ♜xd7+ ♞d8 5 ♜xf7 ♞c7 6 ♜f5+, and White wins.

3 ♜b5 x d7+ ♞f6 x d7

Or 3... ♜xd7 4 ♜b8+ ♞e7 5 ♜xe5+ ♞d8 (If 5... ♜e6 then 6 ♜c7+ and mate next move.) 6 ♜xf6+ ♞c8 (or 6...gf 7 ♜xf6+) 7 ♜xd7, and White wins.

4 ♜b3 - b8+! ♞d7 x b8
5 ♞d1 - d8#

Morphy never played a match against Staunton. On the other hand, in December, 1858, he played, in a way, the match of his life. Anderssen happened to be in the capital of France at the time, and unlike the cautious British player, the maestro from Prussia was not afraid of anybody. Anderssen lost that historic encounter, though. We suggest that you have a look at part of one of the games of this match. Morphy conducted his attack in the style of ... Anderssen.



147

Morphy - Anderssen
Paris, 1858, 9th game of the match

White to move

1 ♖f3 - h5+! ♔g6 x f6
 2 f2 x e3

“White justifiably refrains here not only from 2 ♘e8+ (in view of 2... ♚xe8 3 ♚xe8 ♙b4+), but also from the immediate attack 2 ♖f7+.” (Maróczy)

He could try instead 2 f4, with the following sample variation: 2... ♚e7 3 ♖xe5+ ♔d7 4 ♘xa8 ♚h4+ 5 ♖d1 ♙g4+ 6 ♖c1 ♘e2+ 7 ♖b1.

2 ... ♘d4 x c2+?

“Black could have resisted longer with the move 2... ♚xc7; then it would be best for White to capture the knight. For example, 2... ♚xc7 3 ed ♖e7. (If 3... ♙b4+, then 4 c3 ♙xc3+ 5 ♖e2 ♖e7, while in case of 5...g6, White would follow with 6 ♖h6 ♙g4 7 ♖d3, or 6 ♖hf1 ♖d8 7 ♖g5+ ♖e7 8 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 9 ♖xf7+ and then 10 bc. After 3...g6, White would play 4 ♖h4+ ♖g7 5 0-0 and then 6 ♖f7+.) 4 0-0-0 and White’s attack is overwhelming.”(Maróczy)

3 ♖e1 - e2

Black resigned.

“In case of 3... ♘xa1, White wins with 3 ♖f1+ ♖e7 4 ♖xe5+ ♔d7 5 ♙e6+ ♖c6 6 ♖c1+ ♖b6 7 ♖b5#.” (Maróczy)

If 3... ♚xc7, then 4 ♖hf1+ ♖e7 5 ♖f7+ ♖d8 6 ♖xc7 ♖xc7 7 ♖c1.

Anderssen did not consider his defeat to be a tragedy, and with his typical honesty and frankness said that the American was simply stronger than all the masters he had ever met.

Unfortunately, after Morphy went back to his country, he had no serious opposition. He began to avoid serious chess practice and used to play only “friendly” games.

Meanwhile, Wilhelm Steinitz was just beginning his chess career at the end of the 1850s. The best days were just ahead for the first official world champion and the founder of the positional school of chess.



148
Reiner - Steinitz
Vienna, 1860

Black to move

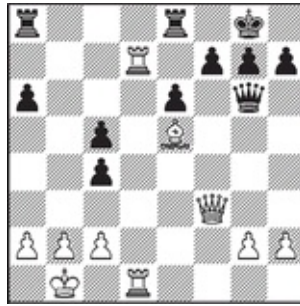
1 ... ♔d8 - h4!
 2 ♖g1 - g2

If 2 ♖g2, then 2...dc! 3 ♗e3 ♗xe3 4 fe cb, and Black wins.

2 ... ♔h4 x h2+!

White resigned due to 3 ♖xh2 ♖g1#.

How Would You Play?

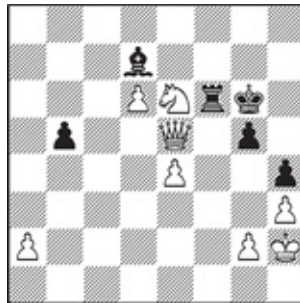


149

Anderssen - Wywill

London, 1851

White to move

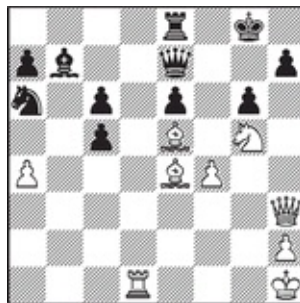


150

Anderssen - Staunton

London, 1851

White to move



151

Staunton - Horwitz

London, 1851

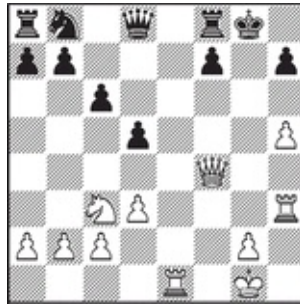
White to move



152

Mayet - Anderssen
Berlin, 1851

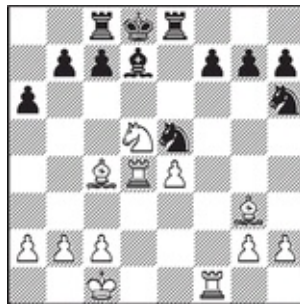
Black to move



153

Horwitz - Szen
London, 1851

White to move



154

Jaenisch - Staunton
London, 1851

White to move



Black to move

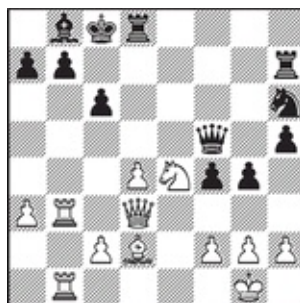
155
Bayer - Falkbeer
Vienna, 1852

Black to move



156
S. Urusov - Bihn
Moscow, 1852

White to move



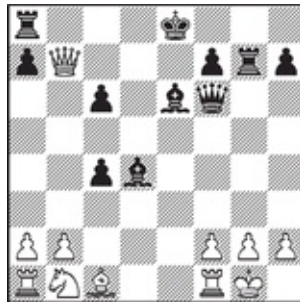
157
D. Urusov - Jaenisch
Saint Petersburg, 1853

White to move



158
Petroff - Hoffman
Warsaw, 1853

Black to move



159
Shumov - Jaenisch
Saint Petersburg, 1854

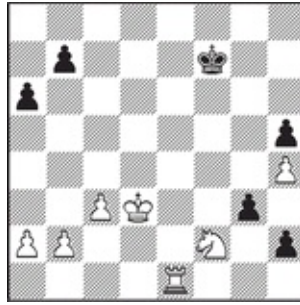
Black to move



160
Mayet - Anderssen

Berlin, 1855

Black to move



161
Jaenisch - Shumov
Saint Petersburg, 1856

Black to move



162
Morphy - Schulten
New York, 1857

White to move



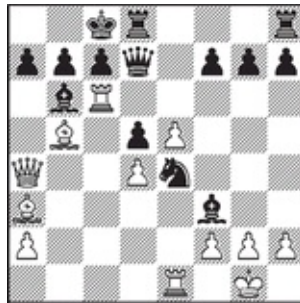
Schulten - Morphy
New York, 1857

Black to move



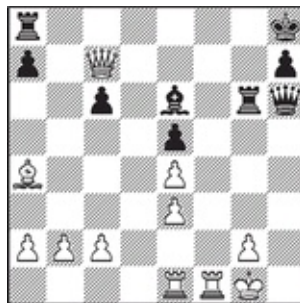
164
Morphy - Schulten
New York, 1857

White to move



165
Morphy - NN
New York, 1857

White to move



166

Paulsen - Morphy

New York, 1857

Black to move

Both opponents played blindfold



167

Morphy - Meek

New Orleans, 1858

White to move



168

Morphy - NN

New York, 1858

White to move

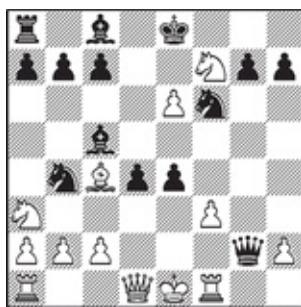
Simultaneous display - blindfold



169

**Morphy - Potier
Paris, 1858**

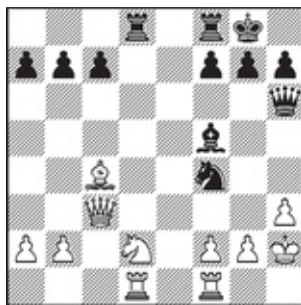
White to move
Simultaneous display - blindfold



170

**Barnes - Morphy
London, 1858**

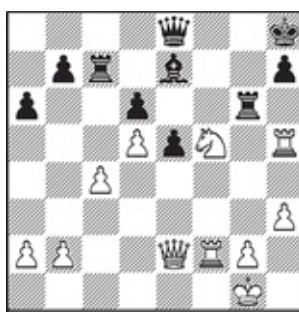
Black to move



171

**St. Amant - Morphy
Paris, 1858**

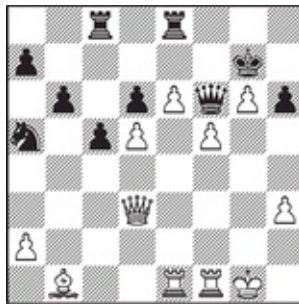
White to move



172

Morphy - Harrwitz
Paris, 1858

White to move



173

Morphy - Boden
London, 1858

White to move

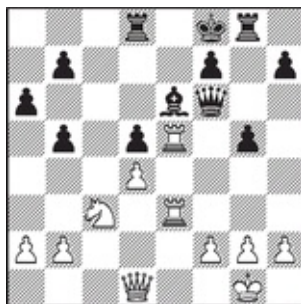


174

Morphy - NN
New Orleans, 1858

White to move

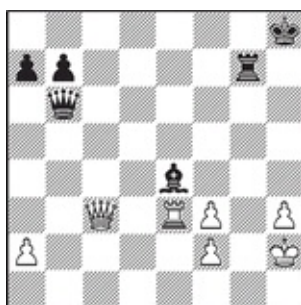
Simultaneous display - blindfold



175

Morphy - Anderssen
Paris, 1858, 3d game of the match

White to move

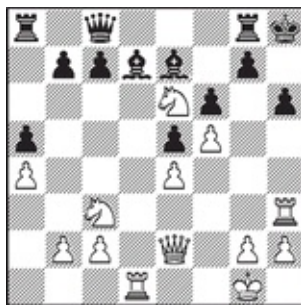


176

Owen - Morphy
London, 1858

Black to move

Black played without his pawn on f7

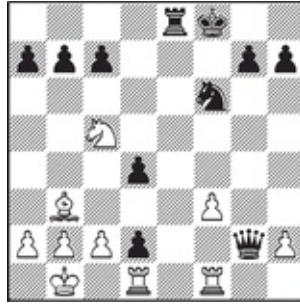


177

Morphy - Baucher
Paris, 1858

White to move

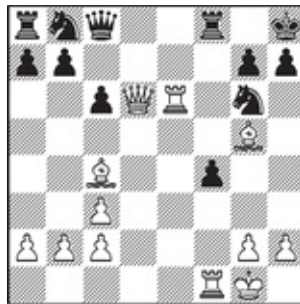
Simultaneous display - blindfold



178

Barnes - Morphy
London, 1858

Black to move



179

Morphy - NN
New Orleans, 1858

White to move

Simultaneous display - blindfold



180

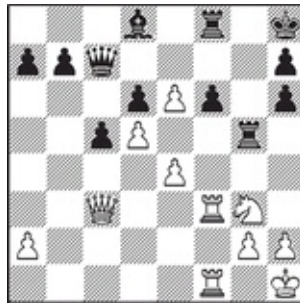
Morphy - NN
New Orleans, 1858

White to move
Simultaneous display - blindfold



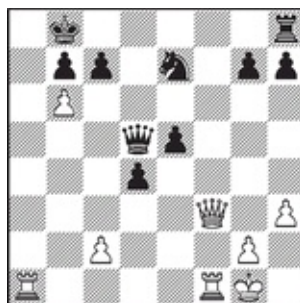
181
Morphy - NN
New Orleans, 1858

White to move
Simultaneous display - blindfold



182
Morphy - NN
New Orleans, 1858

White to move
Simultaneous display - blindfold



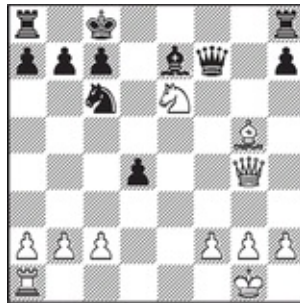
183
Morphy - NN

White to move



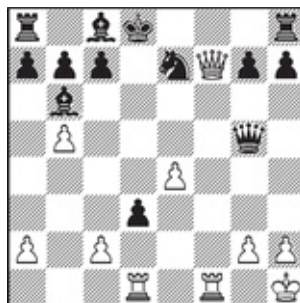
184
Morphy - Mongredien
Paris, 1859

White to move



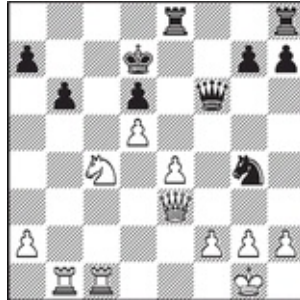
185
Morphy - NN
Paris, 1859

White to move



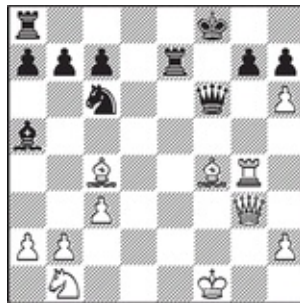
187
Morphy - Perrin
New York, 1859

White to move
White played without the b1-knight



189
Morphy - Lowenthal
London, 1859

White to move



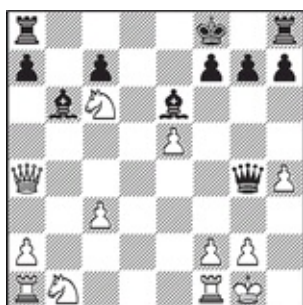
186
Morphy - Fuller
New York, 1859

White to move
White played without the a1-rook



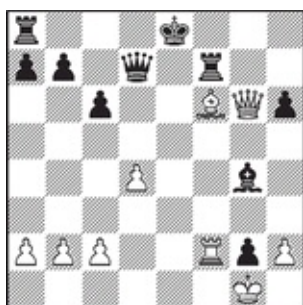
188
NN - Morphy
New York, 1859

Black to move



190
Morphy - Brian
New York, 1859

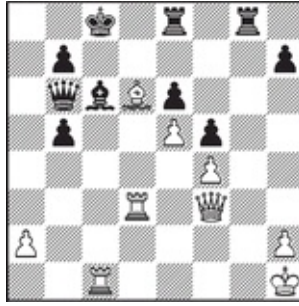
White to move



191
Morphy - Knott
New York, 1859

White to move
White played without the a1-rook

Black played without the a8-rook



195

Suhle - Anderssen
Cologne, 1859

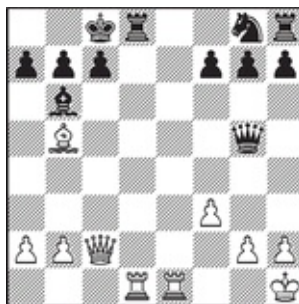
Black to move



196

Anderssen - Lange
Breslau, 1859

Black to move



197

Anderssen - Hillel
Breslau, 1859

White to move
White played without the b1-rook



198
Anderssen - NN
Breslau

White to move



199
Morphy - Thompson
New York, 1860

White to move
White played without the b1-knight



200
Hampe - Steinitz

Vienna, 1860

Black to move



201

baron Von der Lasa - Anderssen

Breslau, 1860

Black to move

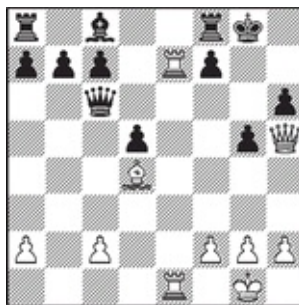


202

Schulder - Boden

London, 1860

Black to move



203

**Suhle - Mayet
Berlin, 1860**

White to move



204

**De Riviere - Journoud
Paris, 1860**

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 149. 1 ♖xa8. Black resigned (1...♖xa8 2 ♖d8+ ♖xd8 3 ♖xd8#).

Diagram 150. 1 ♖xg5+ (This is the fastest and the most elegant road to victory.) 1...♔f7 (or 1...♔h7 2 ♖g7#) 2 ♖g7+! ♔xe6 (or 2...♔e8 3 ♖e7#) 3 ♖e7#.

Diagram 151. 1 ♖xg6! Black resigned (1...hg 2 ♖h8#; 1...♖d8 2 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 3 ♖xd8#).

Diagram 152. 1...♖xf2+! White resigned (If 2 ♖xf2 ♖d1+ 3 ♖f1 ♖h1+! 4 ♔xh1 ♖xf1#, or 2...♖h1+! 3 ♔xh1 ♖d1+ mating).

Diagram 153. 1 ♖g3+ ♔h8 2 ♖h6 ♖g8 3 ♖e8!! Black resigned (3...♖xe8 2 ♖g7#; 3...♖xe8 4 ♖f6+ ♖g7 5 ♖xg7#).

Diagram 154. 1 ♖h4+ f6 2 ♖xf6! gf 3 ♖xf6+ ♖e7 4 ♖xe7 ♖hg4 5 ♖h4 c5 (After 5...♖xc4 White can play 6 ♖xc4 ♖xh2 7 ♖d4 ♖a8 8 e5 ♔e8 9 ♖d5 ♖c8 10 ♖f6+ ♔f7 11 ♖xd7+, while in case of 5...♖a8 - 6 h3 c5 7 ♖d5+ ♔e8 8 ♖c7+ ♔f8 9 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 10 ♖xa8; White keeps an extra piece in both cases.) 6 ♖xc8+ ♔xc8 7 ♖d5 ♖xc4 8 ♖xc5+ ♖c6 9 ♖xc4 and White wins.

Diagram 155. 1...♖e2+ (but not 1...♖xh2+?? 2 ♖xh2 ♖h4+ 3 ♖g3 ♖f5+ 4 ♖f3 ♖d4+ 5 ♔e3, and White wins) 2 ♖h1 ♖xh2+! 3 ♖xh2 ♖h4#.

Diagram 156. 1 ♖xe7! gh (or 1...♖xe7 2 ♖h6+ ♔e8 3 ♖f7#; 1...♖xe7 2 ♖xe7+ ♔xe7 3 ♖e2+, with a winning position for White) 2 ♖f7++ ♔e8 3 ♖f8#.

Diagram 157. 1 ♖xb7! ♖xb7 2 ♖a6 ♖f7 3 ♖c5 ♖d7 4 ♖xb7 ♖xb7 5 ♖xc6+ ♖c7 (or 5...♖c7 7 ♖e8+) 6 ♖xh6 ♖b7 (or 6...♖xc2 7 ♖h8+ ♔d7 8 ♖xb8 ♖xd2 9 ♖xa7+ ♔e6 10 ♖b6+, and White wins) 7 ♖h8+ ♔c7 8 ♖xf4+ ♖xf4 9 ♖h7+. Black resigned.

Diagram 158. 1 d5! ♖xf7 2 ♖b3+ ♔a6 (or 2...♔c5 3 ♖e7+! ♖xe7 4 ♖a3+; 3...♔d4 4 ♖c3+ ♔e4 5 ♖c2+ ♔d4 6 ♖c5+ and White wins the queen) 3 ♖c4+ ♔b6 (It is better for Black to defend with 3...b5!, but White wins anyway. Here is the main line: 4 ♖c6+ ♔a5 5 ♖a5! ♔a6 6 ♖e3! ♖a8 7 ♖c6+ ♔a5 8 b4+! ♔xb4 9 ♖c5+ ♔a4 10 ♖d2! with mate.) 4 ♖e3+ c5 (or 4...♔a5 5 b4+ ♔a4 6 ♖b3+ ♔b5 7 a4+ ♔a6 8 ♖c4+ and mate next move) 5 dc+. Black resigned.

Diagram 159. 1...♖xg2+! 2 ♖xg2 (or 2 ♔h1 ♖g1+! 3 ♖xg1 ♖g6+ and then as in the game; 3 ♖xg1 ♖f3+ 4 ♖g2 ♖d1+ 5 ♖g1 ♖d5+ 6 f3 ♖xg1#, or 2...♖xh2+! and then, for example, 3 ♔xh2 ♖h4+ 4 ♖g2 ♖h3+ 5 ♔h2 ♖xf1+ 6 ♔g1 ♖xf2+ 7 ♔h1 ♖g2#) 2...♖g6+ 3 ♔h1 (or 3 ♔f3 ♖g4#, while the line 3 ♖g5 ♖xg5+ prolongs the game only for a move.) 3...♖d5+ 4 f3 ♖xf3+! 5 ♖xf3 ♖g1#.

Diagram 160. 1...♘f4?! White resigned.

This resignation was premature. Naturally it was bad for him to play 2 gf ♖d3+ 3 ♜b3 ♚e6+ 4 ♚a4 ♜c2+ 5 ♚b5 ♜b6+ 6 ♚c4 ♜b3#, but he could have tried 2 ♚g5! ♖d3+ 3 ♚d1!. Now Black would have a promising position indeed; nevertheless, he would not have a forced win. It seems to us that Black should not play 1...♘f4, but simply 1...♘xf2! 2 ♖d2 ♖d3+ 3 ♚d1 ♘h1 4 ♜h4 ♚d7 5 ♚e1 ♖g6 6 ♜a2 ♚d3, with an extra piece and the initiative..

Diagram 161. 1...g2! (or 1...gf?? 2 ♜h1). White resigned (2 ♘h3 h1♚; 2 ♚e2 g1♚).

Diagram 162. 1 ♚f7+! (It is also good for White to follow with 1 ♚e8+ ♚xe8 2 ♜h3#, or 1...♚h4 2 ♚xd7) 1...♚xf7 (or 1...♚h4 2 ♚xd7 and mate in one) 2 ♜h3#.

Diagram 163. 1...♜d1+! (but not 1...♜c4?!, because of 2 ♘f6#!) 2 ♚xd1 ♜c4+ and Black wins (3 ♚e2 ♜xe2+ 4 ♚xe2 ♚xe4+).

Diagram 164. 1 ♚a3+ ♚e8 (or Black loses his bishop on c7 after the discovered check) 2 ♜xb7! ♜xb7 3 ♜xc6+ ♚f7 4 ♜xd5+ ♚g6 (In case of 4...♚e8, White can follow with 5 ♜xb7 gf 6 ef ♘xf6 7 ♜e1+ and he wins.) 5 ♚f8 (“It is enough for White to win with the move 5 ♜xb7, but Morphy is trying to set an interesting trap for his opponent.” - Ilya Maizelis) 5...♚d7 (If 5...♜b8, then 6 ♚xf6+! ♘xf6 7 ♜xg5+ ♚h6 8 ♜g4+ ♚h5 9 ♜f7#, or 6 ♜xg5+! fg 7 ♜f7+ ♚f5 8 ♜e8+ followed by mate.) 6 ♜xb7 ♜d8 7 ef ♜xf6 8 ♜e4+ ♚h5 9 ♜e3 h6 10 ♜g3 ♜g7 and there arises a position seen earlier in the analysis (11 ♚f7+ ♚xf7 12 ♜h3#).

Diagram 165. 1 e6! fe (Black had to give up his queen by 1...♚xc6 2 ♜xc6 fe) 2 ♜xb6! c6 3 ♜xc6! bc 4 ♚a6+ ♚c7 5 ♚b7#.

Diagram 166. 1...♜xg2+! 2 ♚xg2 ♚h3+ (or 2...♜g8+ 3 ♚f3 ♚h5+ 4 ♚f2 ♚h2+ 5 ♚f3 ♜g4#) 3 ♚f2 (if 3 ♚g1, then 3...♜g8+ and checkmate) 3...♚h2+ 4 ♚f3 ♜f8+ 5 ♚f7 ♜xf7#.

Diagram 167. 1 ♘xg6! (This move breaks Black’s defense indeed, but it seems to us that White wins more quickly with the line 1 gf! gf 2 ♜g6 and after almost any move, White has the crushing 3 ♜xe6!) The game ended 1...♚xg6 2 gf++ ♚f7 3 fe+ ♚xe6 4 f5+ ♚e7 5 ♚h4+ ♚e8 6 f6 ♜xf6 (“Black gives back the piece, but that cannot save him from the crushing attack.” - Yakov Neishtadt) 7 ef ♜xg1 8 ♜xg1 ♘xf6 9 ♜g6+ ♚d7 10 ♜f5+ ♚e8 11 ♜xh6 ♚h8 12 ♜g7 ♘g8 Here, Black resigned without waiting for his opponent’s next move.

Diagram 168. 1 ♜b5+! ♚a4 (or 1...♚xa6 2 ♚xb7#) 2 ♚c2+ ♚b3 3 ♚b3#.

Diagram 169. 1 ♘xd5! cd (or 1...♘xd5? 2 ♜xg7#) 2 ♜xd5! ♘b6 3 ♜b3 Black resigned. (If 3...♜e2!, then 4 ♜xf6+ ♘c4 5 ♜f7 ♜xf1 6 ♜xg7+ ♚f8 7 ♜f7+ ♚g8 8 ♜xf1 b5 9 ♜xh8.)

Diagram 170. 1...♙xe6! 2 ♙xe6 ♘d3+! (“Now you can see the fine points behind the bishop sacrifice. White loses his queen, or he gets checkmated.” — Maróczy) 3 ♖xd3 (or 3 cd? ♙b4+ 4 ♖d2 ♖xd2#) 3...ed 4 0-0-0 ♙xa3 5 ♙b3 d2+ 6 ♖b1 ♙c5 7 ♘e5 ♖f8 8 ♘d3 ♖e8! and Black wins.

Diagram 171. 1...♙xh3! 2 gh ♖d3! 3 ♖xd3 (or 3 ♙xd3? ♖xh3+ 4 ♖g1 ♖g2#) 3...♘xd3 4 ♙xd3 ♖d6+ 5 f4 ♖xd3 and Black won.

Diagram 172. 1 c5 (“White’s position is no doubt winning. In his typical fashion, Morphy quickly seizes the opportunity to destroy Black’s defense with an elegant combination. If 1...dc, then White wins immediately with 2 ♖xe5+. In case Black declines the sacrifice with 1...♖d7, White wins with 2 cd ♙xd6 3 ♘xd6 ♖dxd6 4 ♖xe5 ♖d7 5 ♖e8+ ♖g8 6 ♖e5+ ♖g7 7 ♖ff8; or 4...♖b5 5 ♖e8+ ♖g7! 6 ♖e7+, followed by 7 ♖h4+ and 8 ♖e7+.” - Maróczy) 1...♖xc5 2 ♖xh7+! ♖xh7 3 ♖h5+ ♖g8 4 ♘xe7+ ♖g7 5 ♘f5+ ♖g8 6 ♘xd6. Black resigned (6...♖xg2+ 7 ♖xg2+!).

Diagram 173. 1e7!c4 (or 1...♖xe7 2 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 3 f6+ ♖xf6 4 ♖xf6, and White wins) 2 ♖g3 c3 3 ♖e6 ♖d4+ 4 ♖f2 ♖xd5 5 f6+. Black resigned.

Diagram 174. 1 ♖e7+ ♖g8 (or 1...♖f8 2 ♖e8++ ♖f7 3 ♖e7#; 1...♖f6 2 ♖h4+ g5 3 ♖d4#) 2 ♖xg7+! ♖xg7 3 ♖e7+ ♖g8 4 ♖f8+ ♖h7 7 ♖f7#.

Diagram 175. 1 ♖xe6! Black resigned (1...fe 2 ♖f3).

Diagram 176. 1...♖d6+ 2 ♖h1 (or 2 f4 ♖xf4+ 3 ♖g3 ♖xf2+ 4 ♖g2 ♖xg2#) 2...♙xf3+! 3 ♖xf3 ♖d1+ 4 ♖h2 ♖g1#.

Diagram 177. 1 ♖d2! ♖h7 (Black noticed just in time that after 1...♙xe6?, White had 2 ♖xh6+! gh 3 ♖xh6#) 2 ♖xd7 and White won anyway.

Diagram 178. 1...♖xf1! 2 ♘e6+ (or 2 ♖xf1 ♖e1+ 3 ♖xe1 de ♖#; 2 c3 ♖e1 crushes) 2...♖xe6! and White resigned (3 ♙xe6 ♖xd1#; 3 ♖xf1 ♖e1+ 4 ♖xe1 de ♖#).

Diagram 179. 1♖xg6!hg2 ♖xg6 (It is also good for White to continue 2 ♖f3! ♖e8 3 ♖xf4 ♖e1+ 4 ♖f2.) 2...♖f5 (or 2...♖e8 3 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 4 ♖xf4 ♖h7 5 ♙f7) 3 ♖xf4! ♖xg6 4 ♖xf8+ ♖h7 5 ♙g8+ ♖h8 6 ♙f7+ ♖h7 7 ♙xg6+ ♖xg6 8 ♙f4 and White wins.

Diagram 180. 1 ♖xe5+! ♖xe5 2 ♖e1+ ♖d4 (or 2...♖d6 3 ♖xd5#) 3 ♙xd5! ♖e8 (or 3...♖f6 4 ♖d3+ ♖c5 5 b4+! ♖xb4 6 ♖c4+ ♖a5 7 ♖b1, or 5...♖b6 6 ♖e3+ ♖a6 7 ♖c5 b5 8 a4; White wins in both cases.) 4 ♖d3+ ♖c5 5 b4+! ♖xb4 (If 5...♖b6, then 6 ♖d4+ c5 7 ♖xc5+ ♖a6 8 ♙c4+ b5 9 ♖xb5#) 6 ♖d4+ with mate; for example, 6...♖a5 7 ♖xc3+ ♖a4 8 ♖b3+ ♖a5 9 ♖a3+ and 10 ♖b1#.

Diagram 181. 1 ♖e8! ♚xe8 2 ♚xf6! ♚e7 (or 2... ♞e5 3 ♚g5 h6 4 ♚g3 ♜xf5 5 fe) 3 ♚xg7+ (It is also possible for White to try 3 ♚xe7 ♞xe7 4 f6 d5 5 fe.) 3... ♚xg7 4 f6 ♚xg2+ (or 4... ♚f7 5 ♜xf7 h5 6 ♖e1 ♜f7 7 ♜xh5) 5 ♚xg2 ♜xh3+ 6 ♚xh3 h5 7 ♖g1 and White wins.

Diagram 182. 1 ♖xf6! ♜xf6 2 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 3 ♚xf6+ ♚g7 (or 3... ♚g8 4 e7 ♚c8 5 ♚e6+) 4 ♚d8+ ♚g8 5 e7 ♖e5 6 ♞h5 (or 6 ♞f5 and then as in the game) 6... ♖xe4 7 e8 ♚e1+ 8 ♚xe1 ♚xd8 9 ♚c3+. Black resigned (9... ♚g8 10 ♚g7#).

Diagram 183. 1 ♚f8+! (White can also win without sacrifices: 1 ♚a3 cb 2 ♚a8+ ♚c7 3 ♚xh8, but Morphy's move is faster.) 1... ♚d8 (or 1... ♖xf8 2 ♖xf8+ ♞c8 3 ♖a8+! ♚xa8 4 ♖xc8#; 1... ♞c8 2 ♚xh8) 2 ♖a8+! ♚xa8 3 bc!. Black resigned (3... ♚xf8 4 ♖a1#).

Diagram 184. 1 ♚b4! and White wins (for example, 1... ♚xb4? 2 ♖e8+ ♚f8 3 ♖xf8#; 1... ♚c8? 2 ♚xb7! ♚xb7 3 ♖e8#; 1... ♚f4+ 2 ♚b1 ♞d7 3 ♚xb7, and White wins a piece).

Diagram 185. 1 ♞c5+ (or 1 ♞f8+ with the same variations) 1... ♚b8 (or 1... ♚d8 2 ♚d7#) 2 ♞d7+ ♚c8 3 ♞b6++ ♚b8 (or 3... ♚d8 4 ♚d7#) 4 ♚c8+! ♖xc8 5 ♞d7#.

Diagram 186. 1 ♖g6! ♚xg6? (Black should defend here with 1... ♚f5, and if 2 ♞d2, then 2...hg! 3 h7 ♚h5 It was evidently better for White to play 2 hg+ ♖xg7 3 ♖xg7 ♚xb1+ 4 ♚g2 ♚e4+ 5 ♚h3) 2 ♚xg6 hg 3 h7 ♖e1+ 4 ♚xe1 ♚e7 5 ♜g8! and White wins.

Diagram 187. 1 ♖xd3+ ♜d7 (or 1... ♞d5 2 ♖xd5+ ♚xd5 3 ♚xd5+ ♜d7 4 ♖d1 and mate to follow) 2 ♚f8+ ♖xf8 3 ♖xf8#.

Diagram 188. 1... ♖xe4! 2 ♚xe4 ♞g3! 3 ♚xd4 (3 ♚xh7 ♞de2#) 3... ♞e2+ 4 ♚h1 ♚xh2+! 5 ♚xh2 ♖h8+ with mate.

Diagram 189. 1 ♞xb6+! ab ("If 1... ♚e7, then White follows with 2 ♖c7+ ♚f8 3 ♞d7+ and 4 ♞xf6+." - Géza Maróczy) 2 ♖c7+ ♚d8 ("If Black's king captures the rook then White continues with 3 ♚xb6+ ♚c8! 4 ♖c1+ ♚c3 5 ♖xc3+ ♚d7 6 ♚c7#." - Maróczy) 3 ♚xb6 ♚xf2+ 4 ♚xf2 ♞xf2 5 ♖a7 ♞h3+ 6 gh ♚c8 7 ♚f2 and White wins.

Diagram 190. 1 ♚a3+ ♚g8 (or 1... ♚e8 2 ♚e7#) 2 ♞e7+ ♚f8 3 ♞g6++ ♚g8 (or 3... ♚e8 4 ♚e7#) 4 ♚f8+! ♖xf8 5 ♞e7#.

Diagram 191. 1 ♜g5! ♜f3? (or 1... ♚f8? 2 ♜xh6+; 1...hg? 2 ♚g8+ ♚e7 3 ♖xf7+ ♚e6 4 ♚g6+ ♚d5 5 ♚xg5+; 1... ♜xf5? 2 ♚g8+ ♖f8 3 ♖e2+ ♚e6 4 ♖xe6+ ♚d7 5 ♚g7+ ♚xe6 6 ♚e7+ ♚d5 7 ♚e5+ ♚c4 8 ♚c5#; 1... ♚f5 2 ♖xf5 ♜xf5 3 ♚xh6; 1... ♚e6! 2 ♚g8+ ♚d7 3 ♚xf7+ ♚xf7 4 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 5 ♚xf7+. Black avoids immediate loss only in the last two variations.) 2 ♖xf3 ♚xd4+ 3 ♖e3+ ♚f8 4 ♜xh6+ ♖g7 5 ♜xg7+ ♚xg7 6 ♚d6+ ♚g8 7 ♖g3. Black resigned.

Diagram 192. 1 ♖e6! (1 h7? ♘xg6 2 ♙xg6 ♕c2+) 1... ♕xe6? (“After 1... ♕c2 2 ♙f6 ♙f8! 3 ♖xe7 ♙g8 4 ♖xb7 a5, Thompson would have reached a theoretically drawn position.” - Yakov Neishtadt) 2 h7 ♘f5+? (“Here Black had to play 2... ♖d7, and after 3 h8 ♙, 3... ♘c6, preventing the advance of White’s king.” - Neishtadt) 3 ♙f6 ♖d7 4 h8 ♙ and White won.

Diagram 193. 1... ♙d2+ 2 ♖b1 ♙d1+! 3 ♖xd1 ♖xd1#.

Diagram 194 1... ♘e4! 2 ♕xd8 (or 2 de ♙xg5 3 ed 0-0-0 4 ♙d1 g3! and Black wins; 2 ♙xe4 de 3 ♕xd8? ♘e2#; 2 ♘xf7 ♙c7 3 ♙xe4+ de 4 ♘xh8 ♘f3+! 5 gf ♙g3+ with mate) 2... ♘g3! (or 2... ♘e2+! 3 ♙xe2 ♘g3! and mate) 3 ♘c6+ (or 3 fg ♘f3#) 3... ♘de2+ (or 3... ♘ge2+) 4 ♙xe2 ♘xe2#.

Diagram 195. 1... ♖g1+! 2 ♖xg1 ♕xf3+ 3 ♖xf3 ♙c6. Black won.

Diagram 196. 1... ♕c5+ 2 ♖h1 ♘g3+!! 3 hg ♙g5 4 ♖f5 h5!! 5 gh (or 5 ♖xg5 hg+) 5... ♙xf5 6 g4 ♙f2 7 g3 ♙xg3 8 ♙f1 ♙xg4. White resigned.

Diagram 197. 1 ♙f5+! (1 ♖xd8+ is weaker due to 1... ♙xd8 2 ♖e8 ♘f6) 1... ♙xf5 (or 1... ♖b8 2 ♙xg5) 2 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 3 ♖e8#.

Diagram 198. 1 ♙h6!! and White mates in three (1...gh 2 ♘xh6#; 1... ♕xf2+ 2 ♖xf2 ♙f6 3 ♕xf6 gh 4 ♘xh6#, or 3...gf 4 ♙g7#).

Diagram 199. 1 ♘d8+! ♙xd5 (or 1... ♖f8 2 ♕xd6+ ♙xd6 3 ♙xd6+ ♖g8 4 ♖e8#) 2 ♖e8#!

Diagram 200. 1...g3! 2 fg (or 2 ♘xb6 ♖xh2+ 3 ♖g1 ♘h3#; 2 h4 ♖xh4+ 3 ♖g1 ♖h2 and 4... ♘h3#) 2... ♖xh2+! 3 ♖xh2 ♖h8#.

Diagram 201. 1... ♘xf3! 2 ♖xf3 (or 2 ♙xf3 ♕xf3+) 2... ♙f2+ 3 ♖h1 ♕xf3+. White resigned.

Diagram 202. 1...d5! 2 ♕xd5? (White was forced to part with his bishop.) 2... ♙xc3+ 3 bc ♕a3#!

Diagram 203. 1 ♖1e6!







White can also follow with 1 ♖7e6! ♕xe6 2 ♙xh6 f6 3 ♙g6+ ♖h8 4 ♕xf6+ ♖xf6 5 ♙xf6+ ♖g8 6 ♖xe6 ♖e8 7 ♙xg5+ ♖f7 8 ♙g6+ ♖f8 9 ♖f6+ winning, or 1 ♖1e5 ♙g6 2 ♙xg6+ fg 3 ♖xc7 ♖d8 4 ♖ee7, and Black must give up his bishop to avoid being mated.

1... ♙xe6

Or 1...fe 2 ♙g6#; 1... ♕xe6 2 ♙xh6 and 3 ♙g7#; 1... ♙xc2 2 ♙xh6 ♙d1+ 3 ♖e1 ♙xd4 4 ♖7e5 f6 5 ♖e7, or 4... ♕f5 5 ♖xf5 f6 6 ♙g6+ ♖h8 7 ♖f3 and Black’s position is hopeless.

2 ♖xe6 ♕xe6 (or 2...fe 3 ♙g6#) 3 ♙xh6 f6 4 ♙g6+ ♖h8 5 ♕xf6+ ♖xf6 6 ♙xf6+ and White wins.

Diagram 204. 1 ♘e5! ♘xb3 (Or 1...c5 2 ♘exf7+ ♖c7 3 ♘e6+ ♙xe6 4 ♙g3+ and White wins

easily.) 2 xf7+ xf7 3 xf7+ d7 4 b5+! c6 5 e7#.

VI

First Unofficial World Championship Match (1861 - 1870)

The pleasure of a chess combination lies in the feeling that a human mind is behind the game, dominating the inanimate pieces with which the game is carried on, and giving them the breath of life.

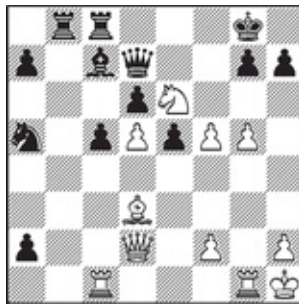
Richard Reti

This was not a very memorable period in the history of chess. The key moment was the first-to-win-eight-games match between the experienced Anderssen and the younger, fast-improving Steinitz.

After Steinitz's convincing victories against the best masters in England during 1862-1864, there were three English clubs which tried to arrange a match between him and Anderssen.

The fight was tense and uncompromising and the match was considered to be equivalent to a world championship. Steinitz won with a result of 8:6, without a single draw. Anderssen lost the match indeed, but he created several masterpieces of combinational skill.

Here is an example:



205

Anderssen - Steinitz
London, 1866, 9th game of the match

White to move

1 g5 - g6!

“Anderssen ignores his queenside and concentrates all his forces against the enemy king.” (Yakov Neishtadt)

1 ... ♖a5 - b3

“If 1...h6, then 2 f6! and if 2...♞b3, then 3 f7+ ♔h8 4 ♚xh6+! gh 5 g7#.” (Emanuel Schiffers)

2 g6 x h7+ ♔g8 - h8
3 ♖d2 - g5! ♛c7 - d8

“If 3...♞xc1, then 4 f6.” (Schiffers).

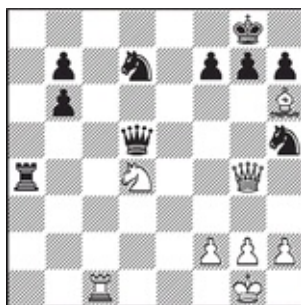
5 ♞e6 x d8 ♞b3 x c1

“In case of 5...♖xd8, White follows with: 6 f6! ♖b7 7 fg+ ♚xg7 8 ♚xd8+.” (Schiffers)

6 f5 - f6! ♜c8 - c7
7 f6 - f7 ♞d7 x f7
8 ♞d8 x f7+ ♜c7 x f7
9 ♜g1 x c1 ♜f7 x f2
10 ♞g5 - e7

And Black resigned after eight moves.

Russia also had quite a few talented chessplayers. Although the Russians were not able to demonstrate their ability in Europe during the mid-nineteenth century, some of their games were published in foreign chess magazines. The clerk of the Ministry of the Marine of Saint Petersburg, Ilya Shumov, and the writer, Carl Jaenisch, were among the strongest Russian masters. The following combination from a game between them was praised by Howard Staunton.



206

Shumov - Jaenisch
Saint Petersburg, 1868

White to move

“This surprising move makes Black’s position absolutely hopeless.” (Staunton)

1 ... ♗d5 - e4

Black loses after 1...♖xg4, because of: 2 ♖c8+ ♘f8 3 ♘e7+ ♔h8 4 ♖xf8#. It is better for him to try 1...♗e6, but even then, after 2 ♗xg7! ♘c5 3 ♗d4+ ♔f8 4 ♗xh5, White wins.

About the position after 1...♗e4, Staunton wrote: “In this situation, which is in itself a remarkable problem, White checkmates in five.”

2 ♗h6xg7! ♔h6

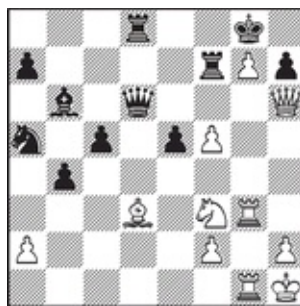
No better is 2...♗xg2+ 3 ♗xg2! and mate on move six.

3 ♖c1 - c8+

White mates in three: 3...♗e8 4 ♖xe8+ ♘f8 5 ♖xf8+ ♔h8 6 ♖h8#.

Meanwhile, Steinitz was still not accepted in Europe as the best chess player in the world. First, his win over Anderssen was by a rather small margin and not very convincing; and second, Steinitz was not so successful in winning first prizes in tournaments against top competition. At the same time Anderssen was absolutely unsurpassed as a tournament player. After his win in the second International Tournament in London in 1862, he took first prizes in Hamburg (1869) and in Bremen (1869) quite convincingly, demonstrating spectacular and impressive play.

Anderssen’s combination against his pupil, Johannes Herman Zukertort, who was later to become a challenger for the world title, was soon published all over the world. Zukertort was a chess journalist, and the chief editor of the magazine, *Neuer Berliner Schachzeitung*.



207

**Anderssen - Zukertort
Bremen, 1869**

White to move

1 ♖h6 x h7+! ♔g8 x h7
 2 f5 - f6+! ♕h7 - g8

Black also loses after 2... ♔xd3 and 3 ♖h3+ ♕g8 4 ♖h8#.

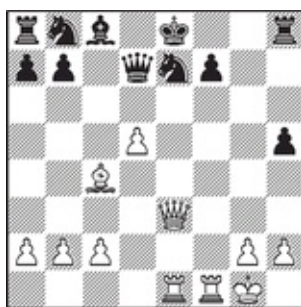
3 ♕d3 - h7+! ♔g8 x h7
 4 ♖g3 - h3+ ♕h7 - g8
 5 ♖h3 - h8#

What about the legendary American player Paul Morphy? He conquered Europe and after coming back to New Orleans he abandoned chess and tried (unsuccessfully) to develop a law practice.

“He could not and he did not wish to become a professional player, since he considered chess to be an art and not a profession.” (Géza Maróczy)

Morphy visited the Old World sometimes, but he hardly participated in European chess. During the 1860s he seldom played chess, except, almost exclusively, against a childhood friend, and with a handicap at that.

The American champion finished one of those games with the following simple combination:



208

Morphy - Maurian
New Orleans, 1869

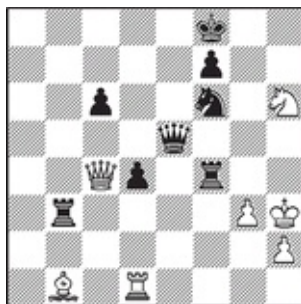
White played without his b1-knight

White to move

1 ♕c4 - b5!

“An exquisite finish. After 1... ♖c6, White follows with 2 dc ♔c7 3 cb+.” (Géza Maróczy).
 Black resigned.

In 1870, the tournament in Baden-Baden was the main chess event of the year, and it attracted the strongest players. Anderssen won first place, beating Steinitz twice - avenging himself for his loss in the match three years before. Steinitz also played well and took second prize.



209

**Steinitz - Anderssen
Baden Baden, 1870**

Black to move

1 ... ♖f4 - h4+!

Black could have won even more quickly here: 1... ♔h5+ 2 ♕g2 ♖f2+! 3 ♕xf2 ♔xh2+ 4 ♕e1 ♖e3+ 5 ♕f1 ♖f3+ 6 ♕e1 ♔f2#.

2 ♕h3 - g2

If 2 ♕xh4, then 2... ♔h5#.

2	...	♖h4 x h2+!
3	♕g2 x h2	♖e5 x g3+
4	♕h2 - h1	♖g3 - h3+
5	♕h1 - g1	♖b3 - g3+

White resigned.

After 6 ♕f2 ♔g2+ 7 ♕e1 ♖e3+ Black mates on e2.

How Would You Play?



210
Steinitz - NN
Vienna, 1861

White to move



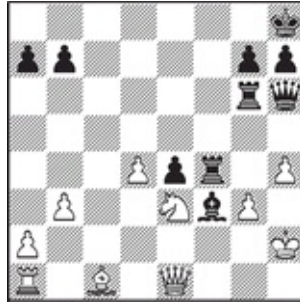
211
Mayet - Hirschfeld
Berlin, 1861

Black to move



212
Anderssen - De Lelie
Amsterdam, 1861

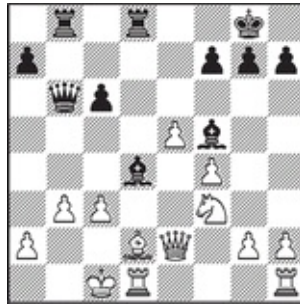
White to move



213

Kolisch - Anderssen
London, 1861

Black to move



214

Rosanes - Anderssen
Breslau, 1862

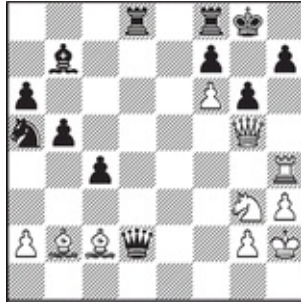
Black to move



215

Mayet - Anderssen
Berlin, 1862

Black to move

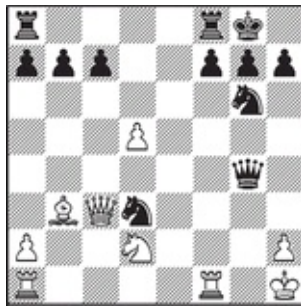


216

Anderssen - Zukertort
Breslau, 1862

White to move

White played without the a1-rook



217

Anderssen - Steinitz
London, 1862

Black to move



218

Steinitz - Wilson
London, 1862

White to move



219
Steinitz - Pilhal
Vienna, 1862

White to move



220
Steinitz - Holstein
London, 1862

White to move
White played without the a1-rook



Steinitz - NN
London, 1863

White to move

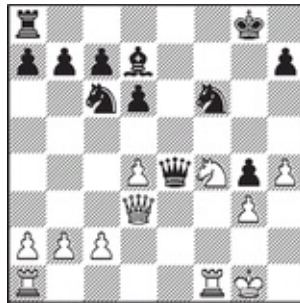


222

Steinitz - NN
London, 1863

White to move

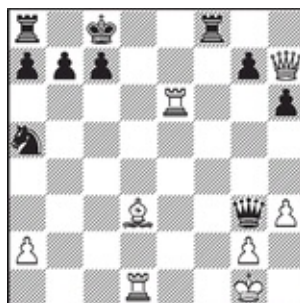
White played without the a1-rook



223

Steinitz - Hirschfeld
London, 1863

White to move



224
Steinitz - Schlessler
London, 1863

White to move



White to move

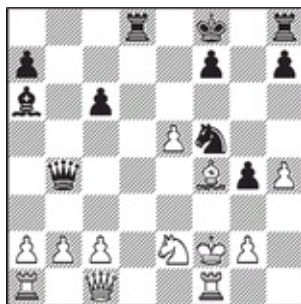
225
Steinitz - Mongredien
London, 1863

White to move



226
Steinitz - Rock
London, 1863

White to move
White played without the b1-knight



227

**NN - Petrov
Paris, 1863**

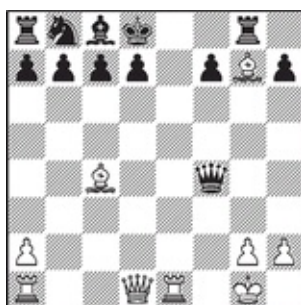
Black to move



228

**Morphy - De Riviere
Paris, 1863**

White to move



229

**Lindehn - Maczuski
Paris, 1863**

White to move



230

Rosanes - Anderssen
Breslau, 1863

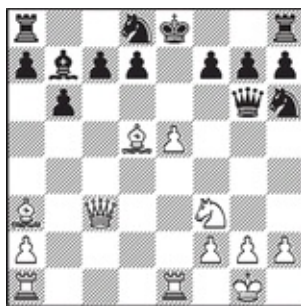
Black to move



231

Anderssen - Schalopp
Berlin, 1864

White to move



232

Neumann - Anderssen
Berlin, 1864

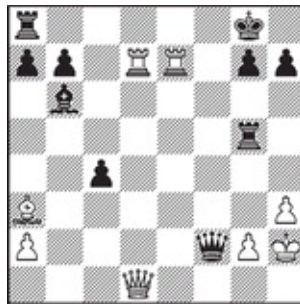
White to move



233

**Zukertort - Anderssen
Breslau, 1864**

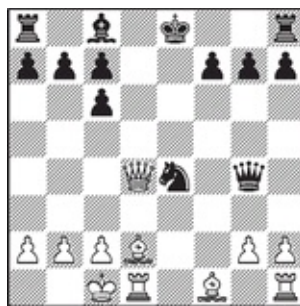
Black to move



234

**Steinitz - NN
London, 1864**

White to move



235

**Maczuski - Kolisch
Paris, 1864**

White to move

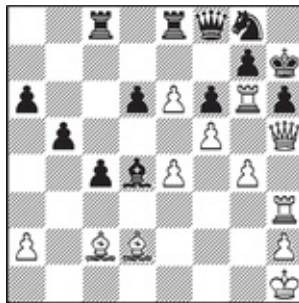


236

Morphy - Dominguez
Havana, 1864

Simultaneous display - blindfolded

White to move



White to move

237

Anderssen - Neumann
Berlin, 1865

White to move



238

Zukertort - Anderssen
Breslau, 1865

White to move



239

**Zukertort - Anderssen
Breslau, 1865**

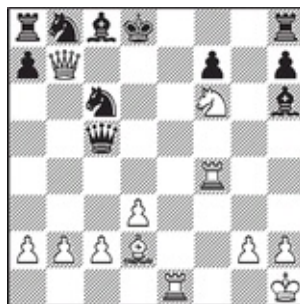
Black to move



240

**Zukertort - Anderssen
Breslau, 1865**

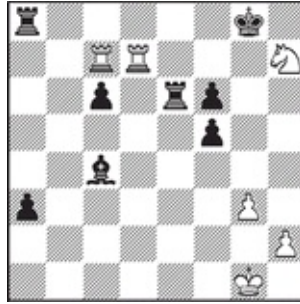
White to move



241

**Zukertort - Anderssen
Breslau, 1865**

White to move

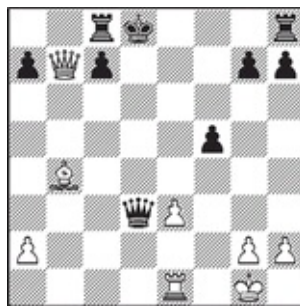


242

Morphy - Maurian
New Orleans, 1866

White to move

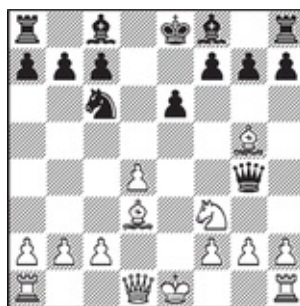
White without his knight on b1



243

Morphy - Maurian
New Orleans, 1866

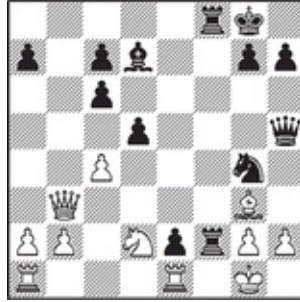
White to move



244

Steinitz - Bird
London, 1866

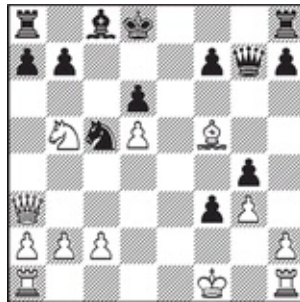
White to move



245

**Hewitt - Steinitz
London, 1866**

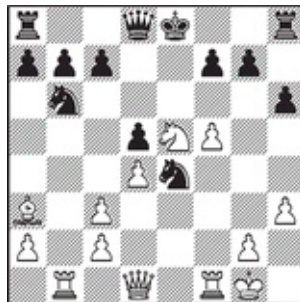
Black to move



246

**Steinitz - Anderssen
London, 1866, 8th game of the match**

Black to move

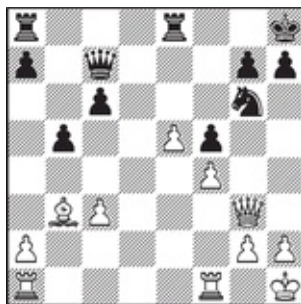


247

Steinitz - Winawer

Paris, 1867

White to move

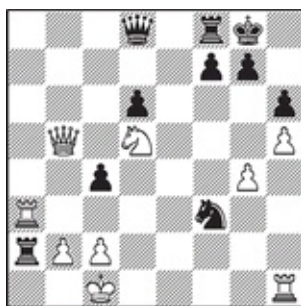


248

Kolisch - Loyd

Paris, 1867

White to move



249

Golmayo - Loyd

Paris, 1867

Black to move



250

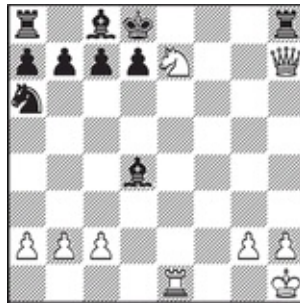
Potter - Matthews
London, 1868

White to move



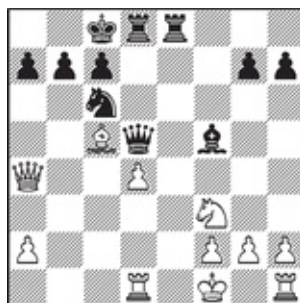
251
NN - Zukertort
Berlin, 1868

Black to move



252
Shumov - Beskrowny
Saint Petersburg, 1869

White to move



253

John McDonnell - Boden
London, 1869

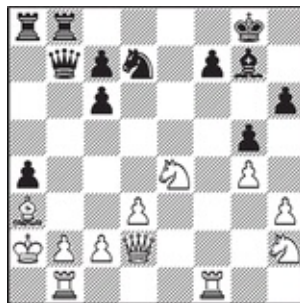
Black to move



254

NN - Steinitz
London, 1869

Black to move



255

Minckwitz - Anderssen
Berlin, 1869

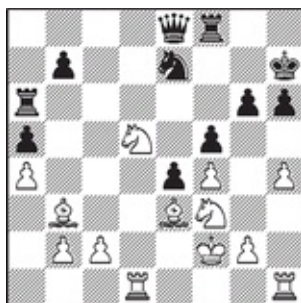
Black to move



256

John McDonnell - Bird
London, 1870

White to move



257

Steinitz - NN
London, 1870

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 210. 1 ♖d8+! ♚xd8 (or 1... ♔h7 2 ♖xh6+! gh 3 ♚e7+ ♔g6 4 h5#) 2 ♚e6+ ♔h7 3 ♖xh6+! gh 4 ♚f7#.

Diagram 211. 1... ♗xd4+! 2 cd (or 2 ♔h1 fg#) 2... ♖xg2+ 3 ♔h1 ♖xh2+! (but not 3... ♚h4, because of 4 ♗xf4!) 4 ♔xh2 ♚h4+ 5 ♔g1 ♚g3+ 6 ♔h1 ♚g2#.

Diagram 212. 1 ♖xe6! fe 2 ♚g4+ ♗g6 3 ♚xe6+ (It is also good for White to play 3 ♗xg6.) 3... ♔f8 4 ♗f5. Black resigned. If 4... ♖g8 5 ♗g5.

Diagram 213. 1... ♖xh4+! 2 gh (or 2 ♔g1 ♖h1+ 3 ♔f2 ♚h2+) 2... ♚f4+ 3 ♔h3 ♗g2+! (or 3... ♗g2! 4 ♗xg2 ♚g4+ 5 ♔h2 ♚xg2#) 4 ♗xg2 ♚f3+ 5 ♔h2 ♚xg2#.

Diagram 214. 1... ♚xb3! 2 ab ♖xb3 3 ♗e1 ♗e3+! and 4... ♖b1#.

Diagram 215. 1... ♚xg2+! (or 1... ♖xf1+? 2 ♚xf1 e2?? 3 ♚xf7+ ♔h8 4 ♚xe8#) 2 ♚xg2 ♖xf1#.

Diagram 216. 1 ♗f5! ♚xg5! 2 ♗e7+ ♔h8 3 ♗xg6+! ♚xg6! 4 ♗xg6 ♖d2 (or 4... fg?? 5 f7+ mating) 5 ♖xh7+ ♔g8 6 ♖g7+. This is a perpetual check and a draw.

Diagram 217. 1... ♗h4! and White had to resign. (2 ♚xd3 ♚g2#; 2 ♖g1 ♗f2#)

Diagram 218. 1 ♖f8+! ♗xf8 2 d6+. Black resigned. (2... ♗e6 3 ♗xe6#)

Diagram 219. 1 ♗xd7! ♚xd5 2 ♗f6++ and 3 ♗xe7#.

Diagram 220. 1 ♚f3+! ♔xe5 2 ♚f5+ ♔d6 3 e5+ ♔e7! (or 3... ♔d5? 4 ♚f7+! ♔c5 5 a4 ♗c4 6 ♗d2! ♗xd2 7 ♗a3#) 4 ♗a3+ d6 (It is also possible for Black to try 4...c5 5 bc+ d6 6 ed+ ♚xd6 7 ♗xd6+ ♔xd6 8 ♚f8+ ♔xc6 9 ♚xg7 ♗e6 10 ♚xh8, and his position is quite defensible.) 5 ed+ ♔e8?? (Black had to give up his queen, for example, 5... ♚xd6 6 ♗xd6+ ♔xd6 7 ♚f8+ ♔d5 9 ♚xg7 ♗c4 10 ♚xh8 ♗g4 11 ♚h7 ♗e2.) 6 d7+! and 7 ♚f8#.

Diagram 221. 1 ♚xe7+! ♔xe7 2 ♗g5+ ♖f6 3 ef+ ♔f8 (or 3... ♚xd6 4 ♗f4#; 3... ♔d8 4 f7#) 4 ♗h6#.

Diagram 222. 1 ♗fg6+! (or 1 ♗eg6+! and 2 ♗xg6#) 1...hg 2 ♗xg6#.

Diagram 223. 1 ♗h5! Black resigned, due to 1... ♚xd3 2 ♗xf6+; 1... ♚xd4+ 2 ♚xd4 ♗xd4 3 ♗xf6+ and 4 ♗xd7.

Diagram 224. 1 ♖f5! ♜xf5 2 ♜e8+ ♔d7 3 ♙b5#.

Diagram 225. 1 ♜h1 ♜e8 2 ♚xg6 ♚f6 3 ♙xf7+! (Also good is 3 ♚h7+ ♙f8 4 ♜h3, with a crushing attack.) 3... ♚xf7 4 ♜h8+! ♔xh8 5 ♚xf7. Black resigned. ("Black has a pair of rooks for the queen indeed, but his dark-squared bishop has no scope for action; moreover, White's pawn majority is very powerful. Black is defenseless." - Reti)

Diagram 226. 1 de! ♜xb3? (There was a similar position in the game Morphy - NN. It was correct for Black to defend with 1... ♜xc4! 2 ef++ ♙xf7 3 ♜e5+ ♙g8 4 ♜xc4 ♚d5 5 ♜e5 ♚f7 6 ♜e7 ♚d5, but still, after 7 ♜ae1, White would have maintained the advantage.) 2 ef++ ♙d7 3 ♙e6+ ♙c6 4 ♜e5+ ♙b5 5 ♙c4+ ♙a5 6 ♙b4+ ♙a4 7 ab#. Morphy won his game, too.

Diagram 227. 1...g3+!? (It is preferable for Black to play 1... ♙xe2! 2 ♙xe2 ♚e4+ 3 ♙f2 g3+! 4 ♙xg3 ♜g8 5 ♚f4 ♜xg3, with an extra knight.) 2 ♙f3?? (White had to sacrifice the exchange by 2 ♜xg3!) 2... ♙xe2+ 3 ♙xe2 ♚e4+ 4 ♙e3 ♜d4+ 5 ♙e1 ♜xc2+ 6 ♙e2 ♚xg2+. (It was more elegant to play 6... ♚g4+ 7 ♜f3 ♚c4#.) White resigned.

Diagram 228. 1 ♜xc7+! (or 1... ♜d7 2 ♚f8+ ♙e6 3 ♜e8#; 1... ♚xc7 2 ♚g7+) 1... ♙e6 2 ♜e8+! ♜xe8 3 ♚xg6+ and 4 ♚f5#.

Diagram 229. 1 ♚g4! ♙d6 (or 1... ♚xg4 2 ♙f6#) 2 ♙f6+! with the unavoidable 3 ♚xg8# to follow.

Diagram 230. 1... ♚f1+! 2 ♚xf1 ♙xd4+ 3 ♙e3 ♜xe3 4 ♙g1 (or the rook checkmates from e2) 4... ♜e1#.

Diagram 231. 1 ♚xe4+! ♜xe4 (or 1... ♚e7 2 ♚xe7#; 1... ♜e5 2 ♚xe5+ ♙e6 3 ♙xe6 and White wins) 2 ♙xf7#.

Diagram 232. 1 e6! Black resigned in view of: 1... ♙xd5 2 ed++ ♙xd7 3 ♜e7+ ♙c8 4 ♚xc7#; 1...de 2 ♚xc7!; 1...fe 2 ♜e5!; 1... ♜xe6 2 ♙xb7.

Diagram 233. 1... ♜g3! and Black wins. (2 ♚xh2 ♜xf1+ and 3... ♜xh2 - simple, but elegant.)

Diagram 234. 1 ♚d5+! ♙h8 (or 1... ♜xd5 2 ♜xg7+ ♙h8 3 ♜xh7+ ♙g8 4 ♜dg7#), and here White wins outright with the line 2 ♜d8+! ♜xd8 3 ♚xd8+! ♙xd8 4 ♜e8+ ♙f8 5 ♜xf8#.

Diagram 235. 1 ♚d8+! ♙xd8 2 ♙g5++ ♙e8 3 ♜d8#.

Diagram 236. 1 ♜c4! d6 (or 1... cd 2 ♜d6#) 2 ♜xd6+ ♙d7 3 ♙e6+ ♙c7 4 ♜xc8+ ♙d6 5 ♚xd6#.

Diagram 237. 1 e5! (Also good was 1 ♖xh6! gh 2 ♖xh6+ ♗xh6 3 ♗g6+! ♕h8 4 ♖xh6+ ♗xh6 5 ♗xh6+ ♕g8 6 ♗g6+ ♕h8 7 g5 ♖e7 8 gf! with a win for him.) **1...♕xe5** (or 1...fe 2 f6) **2 g5! fg 3 f6 ♕h8 4 ♖xg7 ♗xg7 5 fg+**. Black resigned. (5...♕xg7 6 ♗g6 ♗f6 7 ♖xh6+ ♕xh6 8 ♗xh6+)

Diagram 238. 1 ♗d8+! ♕xd8 2 ♖e8#.

Diagram 239. 1 ♗g5+! (or 1 ♕g5+! hg 2 ♗xg5#) **1...hg 2 ♕xg5#.**

Diagram 240. 1 ♗xg8! ♖xg8? (1...cd was better defense, but even then after 2 ♗xh8 dc 3 ♕h6 White's advantage would be overwhelming.) **2 ♗f6+ ♕e7 3 ♗xg8+ ♕e8 4 ♗f6+ ♕e7 5 ♗xd7 ♕xd7 6 ♕g5+**. Black resigned.

Diagram 241. 1 ♖d4+! (It is more or less the same as in the game after 1 ♕a5+!; for example, 1... ♗xa5 2 ♖d4+! ♗d5 3 ♖xd5+ ♕d7 4 ♖xd7+ ♗xd7 5 ♗xd7#.) **1...♗xd4** (or 1...♗xd4 2 ♕a5+! ♗xa5 3 ♗e7#, or 2...♗b6 3 ♕(♗)xb6+ ab 4 ♗(♕)xb6#; 1...♕(♗)d7 2 ♖xd7+! and 3 ♗xd7#) **2 ♕a5+! ♗xa5 3 ♗e7#.**

Diagram 242. 1 ♖g7+ ♕h8 2 ♗f8! ♖xf8 (or 2...a2 3 ♗g6#) **3 ♖h7+ ♕g8 4 ♖cg7#.**

Diagram 243. 1 ♖e2! ♖e8 (or 1...♗xe2 2 ♗d5+ ♕e8 3 ♗e6+ ♕d8 4 ♗e7#; 1...♗d1+ 2 ♕f2) **2 ♖d2 ♖xe3 3 ♖xd3+ ♖xd3 4 ♕e7+! ♕d7** (or 4...♕xe7 5 ♗xc8) **5 ♗b5+**. Black resigned. (5...♕xe7 6 ♗xd3)

Diagram 244. 1 h3! ♗xg2 (or 1...♕b4+ 2 ♕f1 ♗h5 3 g4; 1...♗h5 2 g4, White winning the queen in both variations) **2 ♖h2 ♗xh2 3 ♗xh2 ♗xd4 4 ♕b5+!**. Black resigned. (4...♕xb5 5 ♗d8#)

Diagram 245. 1...♖xg2+! 2 ♕xg2 (or 2 ♕h1 ♖xh2+! 3 ♕g1 ♖h1+ 4 ♕g2 ♗h3#) **2...♗h3+!** (Later it was established that it was also good for Black to play 2...♖f2+! 3 ♕g1! ♗h3! 4 ♗f3 ♖xf3 5 ♗xf3 ♗xh2! and Black wins.) **3 ♕xh3** (Now White gets mated, while 3 ♕g1 ♖f2! 4 ♗f3 ♖xf3 transposes to a position which was analyzed in our notes to the previous move.) **3...♗e3+ 4 ♕h4 ♗g2+ 5 ♕g5 ♖f5+ 6 ♕g4 h5+ 7 ♕h3 ♖f2#.**

Diagram 246. 1...♗h6! (Black is threatening 2...♗h3+, as well as 2...♗d2.) **2 ♕d3** (After 2 ♗c3, Black's simplest line is 2...♖e8 3 h4 ♕xf5, according to Yakov Neishtadt.) **2...♖e8 3 h4 ♗d2 4 ♖g1 ♖e2!** and White resigned. (5 ♕xe2 ♗xe2#; 5 ♗c3 ♖f2#)

Diagram 247. 1f6!g6 (or 1...♗xf6 2 ♗e2!; 1...gf 2 ♗h5! ♖h7 3 ♖ae1!; 1...g5 2 ♗h5 ♖h7 3 ♖f5 ♗d7 4 ♗xf7! ♖xf7 5 ♗g6; White's attack is overwhelming in all variations.) **2 ♗g4 ♗c8 3 ♗xg6! ♗e6 4 ♗g7 0-0-0 5 ♗xf7.** White wins, since after 5...♖dg8, he has 6 ♗xh8! ♖xg7 7 fg.

Diagram 248. 1 ♗xg6! hg (This move loses immediately. If Black refuses to take the queen, he

would end up a full piece down.) 2 ♖f3 and White checkmates in three.

Diagram 249. 1... ♖a1+!! 2 ♖xa1 ♗g5+ 3 ♖b1 (or 3 ♖d1 ♗d2#) 3... ♗d2+ 4 ♖c1 (or 4 ♖a2 ♖a8+) 4... ♗b3++ 5 ♖b1 ♗c1+! 6 ♖xc1 ♗d2+ 7 ♖a2 ♖a8+. White resigned.

Diagram 250. 1 ♗xe5! (It is worse for White to play 1 ♗xf7+ ♖xf7 2 ♗xe5+ de 3 ♗xg4.) 1... ♗xd1 (Even after the best line for Black, 1...de 2 ♗xg4, White is a piece up.) 2 ♗b5+ ♖e7 (Now Black gets mated, while after 5... ♗d7 6 ♗xd7+ he is two pieces down.) 3 ♗g5+? (White could win in just two moves with 3 ♗d7+, or 3 ♗g4+, and then 4 ♖xe2#.) 3...f6 (3... ♖e6! 4 ♗f3+ ♖f5 5 ♗d3+ ♖g4 6 h3+ ♖h5 7 g4#) 4 ♗g6++ ♖f7 5 ♗xh8#.

Diagram 251. 1... ♖xc3! 2 ♗xc3 (otherwise White is two pieces down) 2... ♗f1+! 3 ♖xf1 ♗e2+ 4 ♖h1 ♗fg3+! 5 fg ♗xg3#.

Diagram 252. 1 ♗c6+! and then 2 ♗e7#.

Diagram 253. 1... ♗xf3! 2 gf ♗h3+ 3 ♖g1 ♖e6 4 ♗c2 ♖xd4! (It was even stronger for Black to play 4... ♗e5! 5 ♗f5! ♗xf5 6 ♖g2 ♖g6+ 7 ♖f1 ♗d3+ 8 ♖xd3 ♗xd3) 5 ♗xd4 (Or 5 ♖c1! ♗e5! 6 ♗f5! ♗xf5 7 ♗xd4 ♗xf3+ 8 ♖g2 ♗xd4; Black has material and initiative.) 5... ♗xd4! and Black wins. (6 ♖xd4 ♖e1#; 6 ♗d3 ♖g6+ 7 ♗xg6 ♗e2#)

Diagram 254. 1... ♗h4! 2 ♗xh4 (or 2 ♗xc5 ♖xg2+! 3 ♖h1 ♖xh2+!; 2 ♗bd2 ♗g4 3 g3 ♗h3) 2... ♗xe3! 3 ♗g6+ (or 3 h3 ♖f1++ 4 ♖h2 ♗g1+ 5 ♖h1 ♗g3#; 3 g3 ♖e2+ 4 ♖h1 ♖xe1+ 5 ♖g2 ♖g1+ 6 ♖h3 ♗f2#) 3...hg 4 g3 ♖e2+ 5 ♖h1 ♖xe1+ 6 ♖g2 ♖g1+ 7 ♖h3 ♗f2+ 8 ♖h4 ♖f4+!, followed by mate by the rook on g4.

Diagram 255. 1... ♗b3+! 2 cb (2 ♖a1 ♗xa3#) 2...ab+ 3 ♖a1 ♖xa3#.

Diagram 256. 1 ♗b5! and Black resigned. (1... ♗xb5 2 ♗xc7#; 1...c6 2 ♗c7#; 1... ♗e6 2 ♗xe8#; 1... ♖e7 2 ♗xe7#; 1... ♗d7 2 ♗xd7#; 1... ♖e6 2 ♗f8+ ♖e8 3 ♗xe8#; 1... ♗c6 2 ♗xc6 bc 3 ♗xc7#)

Diagram 257. 1 ♗g5+! hg (Or 1... ♖g7 2 ♗d4+ ♖ff6 3 ♗xf6 ♖xf6 4 ♗e6+ ♖f7 5 ♗c7+ and White wins.) 2 hg+ ♖g7 3 ♗d4+ ♖f7 4 ♗c7+. Black resigned. If 4... ♗d5, then 5 ♖h7+ ♖g8 6 ♖g7+ ♖h8 7 ♖h1#.

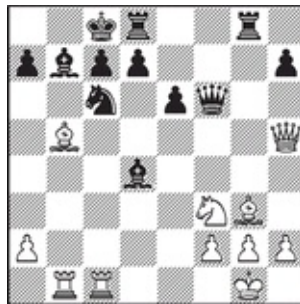
VII

Zukertort and Chigorin (1871 - 1880)

I don't believe in psychology. I believe in good moves.

Bobby Fischer

Time passed, and Anderssen's best years were behind him. In 1871, the great master of combinations lost a match to his pupil, Zukertort, winning only two games and losing five. One of his wins, however, was reminiscent of his old style:



258

**Anderssen - Zukertort
Berlin, 1871**

White to move

1 ♖b5 - a6!

“This brilliant combination became possible after misplacement of Black's bishop. If it had remained on the b6-square, Black's king shelter would have remained unassailable.” (Max Euwe)

1 ... ♗d4 - b6

“In case of 1... ♗xa6, White would have played 2 ♔a5!! and Black would be helpless; for example, 2... ♗b6 3 ♔xa6+ ♕b8 4 a4 etc.” (Euwe).

It is a mistake for Black to play in this variation 2... ♘xa5??. because of 3 ♖xc7#.

2 ♗h5 - b5 ♖g8 x g3?

“This was quite typical of the style of that time - the attempt to seize the initiative, instead of planning an exact system of defense. Players were keen on counterattacking as quickly as possible. Black eliminates the dangerous bishop on g3 with his last move and he can enjoy his “initiative” for a period of two moves. In fact, it was much stronger for him to play 2... ♖f5, and if 3 ♖c5, then 3... ♖xb1+ 4 ♖xb1 ♗xa6 with an approximately equal position.” (Euwe)

“It looks like White is still slightly better after 5 ♖c1.” (Yakov Neishtadt)

3 h2 x g3 ♗c6 - d4
4 ♖b5 - d3

“This is stronger than 4 ♗xd4 ♖xd4 5 ♖c2 ♖e4, and when Black forces the exchange of the light-squared bishops, after which White’s attack ebbs away.” (Euwe)

4 ... ♗d4 x f3+

5 g2 x f3 ♗b7 x a6
6 ♖d3 x a6+ ♖c8 - b8
7 ♖a6 - c4

“White is threatening 8 ♖xc7+.” (Euwe)

7 ... ♖b8 - a8
8 ♖g1 - g2

White soon won with his extra exchange. (See the section “How Would You Play?”)

A new master appeared in Russia - a teacher of mathematics and a writer - Emanuel Schiffers. His contemporaries had named him “The All-Russian Chess Teacher.” In his mature years he wrote, *Teach Yourself the Game of Chess*, which became the favorite book of Russian players. The next combination was illustrative of the young master’s talent:



259

Schiffers - Nolde
Saint Petersburg, 1872

White to play

1 e5 x f6!

“This queen sacrifice was magnificent - the more so that he found it in a very difficult, hot and nerve-breaking atmosphere.” (Ilya Shumov)

1	...	♙g4 x d1
2	♞f1 - e1+	♚e8 - d7
3	♜c4 - e6+	♚d7 - c6
4	d4 - d5+	♚c6 - c5
5	♞g5 - e4+	♚c5 - c4
6	♞e1 x d1	♙b6 - d4

“A thorough analysis of this position shows that Black is already beyond salvation.” (Chigorin)

7	♞a1 - b1	♙d4 x c3
8	♞d1 - c1	♞h8 - g8

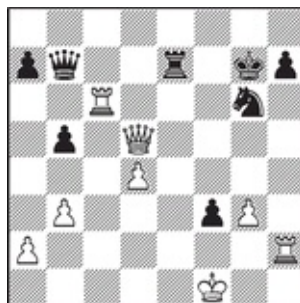
“This move is played in the hope that White would capture the rook; then Black would be able to gobble the d5-pawn.” (Chigorin)

9	♞c1 x c3+	♚c4 - d4
10	♞b1 - b4+	♞a5 - c4
11	♞b4 x c4+	♚d4 - e5
12	f2 - f4+!	♚e5 x f4
13	♞e4 - g5+	

Or 13 ♞d2+ ♚e5 14 ♜e4#.

13	...	♚f4 - e5
14	♞g5 - f3#	

After Anderssen lost the match against Zukertort, Steinitz, who had achieved great success in tournaments during 1871 - 1872, challenged the latter to a match. Steinitz beat him quite convincingly - 7:1 with four draws - and so he proved that he was the best in the world at that time. In 1876, he amazed the world once again by crushing Joseph Blackburne, an outstanding player of the combinational school, 7-0. A fragment of one of the games from this match appears in “How Would You Play?.”



Steinitz - Zukertort
London, 1872 6th game of the match

White to play

1 ♖h2 x h7+!

White destroys the last remnants of the Black king's shelter.

1 ...	♔g7 x h7
2 ♖d5 - h5+	♔h7 - g8

Black loses immediately after 2...♔g7, because of 3 ♖xg6+ ♔f8 (or 3...♔f7 4 ♖f5+ ♔e8 5 ♖g8#) 4 ♖h8+ ♔f7 5 ♖g8#.

3 ♖c6 x g6+	♔e7 - g7
4 ♖g6 - h6!	

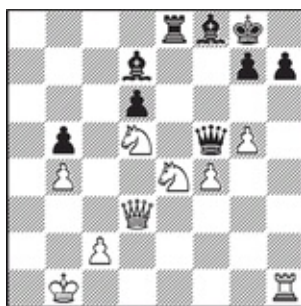
Or 4 ♖e6! and Black is again helpless.

4 ...	♔g8 - f8
-------	----------

It is no better for Black to try 4...♖g8 5 ♖c5+ ♔g7 6 ♖e5+ ♔f8 7 ♖d6+, and White wins.

5 ♖h6 - h8+	♔f8 - e7
6 ♖h5 - e5+	♔e7 - f7
7 ♖e5 - e8+	♔f7 - f6
8 ♖h8 - h6+	♔f6 - f5
9 ♖e8 - e5+	♔f5 - g4
10 ♖e5 - f4#	

A very strong tournament was organized in Vienna in 1873. Steinitz took first prize. Anderssen was third and he presented the world again with a dazzling combination.



Anderssen - Paulsen Vienna, 1873

White to move

1 ♖e4 - f6+!	g7 x f6
2 ♘d5 x f6+	♔g8 - f7
3 ♚h1 x h7+!	♙f8 - g7

If 3... ♔g6, then 4 ♚f3! ♖e1+ 5 ♔b2 ♚xf6+ 6 gf ♔xh7 7 ♚h5+ ♔g8 8 ♚g6+ ♔h8 9 ♚f7, and White wins.

4 ♚h7 x g7+!

Or 4 ♘xe8! ♔xe8 5 ♖xg7, and White wins.

4 ... ♔f7 x g7	
5 ♘f6 x e8+	♔g7 - f8
6 ♚d3 x f5+	♙d7 x f5
7 ♘e8 x d6	

The outcome of the game is clear.

Our next three examples are from the games of Mikhail Chigorin, born in Gatchina, near Saint Petersburg, who was the founder of the Russian chess school and a challenger for the world title at the end of the nineteenth century. He was a chess player with an outstanding ability for combinations.

Chigorin quickly became a powerful practical player. At the end of the 1870s, he was the strongest player in Russia, and he rapidly obtained an international reputation.

One of his first published games still ignites the imagination of today's grandmasters. For example, Ratmir Kholmov answered the question, "What game, or combination of a contemporary player, or of a player from the past, has impressed you most?" as follows: "That was the game Chigorin-Davidov. White's attack was very well conducted and it was crowned by an exchange sacrifice on the 20th move, followed by a dagger-like strike of White's bishop on move 23."



Chigorin - Davidov Saint Petersburg, 1874

White to move

“White had just sacrificed the exchange, but that was insufficient to win. Black had carelessly captured White’s g4-pawn with his bishop on c8 with his last move. We think that if he had played simply ♖c8-d7, instead of capturing that pawn, he would have had sufficient counterplay for a draw. The viewers of the TV Chess School found another solution to the problem of how to create counterplay with Black: ♗e6, and if White checks with the queen from d4 - then ♗d5!” (Yuri Averbakh and Mikhail Beilin, *Journey to the Kingdom of Chess*, Physical Education and Sports, Moscow, 1988, p. 130).

Black overlooked all these possibilities and thus he lost.

1 ♖e5 - d4+ ♔d8 - c8
2 ♗c4 - e6+!! ♗c8 - b8?

Black had to give up his queen: 2... ♗xe6 3 ♚xh4 ♖h8. (It was worse to play 2... ♗fe 3 ♚d7+ ♗b8 4 ♗xe8+ ♗c8 5 ♗d7#.)

3 ♗f6 - d7+ ♗b8 - c8
4 ♗d7 - c5+ ♗c8 - b8

It was necessary for Black to defend here with 4... ♗xe6, but still after 5 ♚xh4, White’s victory would be just a matter of time.

5 ♗c5 - a6+! ♖b7 x a6
6 ♗d4 - b4#

See what Chigorin, with typical modesty and self-deprecation, wrote about the game in the chess section of *Niva magazine* (1900):

“Chess games are sometimes repeated from the first move to the last. That happens because the inexperienced amateur makes at the beginning of the game some move which seems to him to be the most natural and even very good, while in fact it is a losing move. We are publishing a game like this in an opening which had been played a lot in the past and it is still encountered quite often in beginners’ games. The amateur with Black has already “played” that game four times!.”



Knorr - Chigorin Saint Petersburg, 1874

Black to move

1 ... h5 - h4!

Black is preparing a queen sacrifice.

2 ♖g5 x f7

2 ♜xf7+ ♔e7 is worse for White.

2 ... h4 x g3!

3 ♖f7 x d8

3 ♖xh8 also loses to 3... ♔e7 4 ♖f7 ♜xf2+ 5 ♜xf2 gf+ 6 ♔xf2 ♖g4+ 7 ♔g3 ♜f6 8 ♔f3 ♔g7, with a decisive advantage for Black.

3 ... ♜c8 - g4
4 ♜d1 - d2

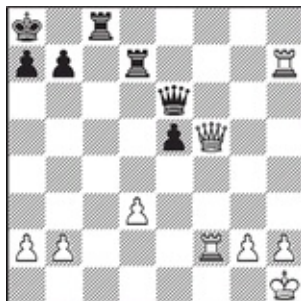
“White’s attempt to defend with 4 ♖xc6 would leave his position in shambles after 4...gf+ 5 ♔h1 ♜xd1 6 ♜xd1 ♖g4 7 h3 ♖e3 Also bad is 4 ♖f7 ♜h5 5 ♜xg4 ♖xg4 6 hg ♖d4 7 ♖c3 c6 8 a3 d5. All these variations, right to the end of the game, were analyzed by Steinitz in his comments to his game against Dubois.” (Mikhail Yudovich)

4 ... ♜c6 - d4!
5 ♖b1 - c3 ♜d4 - f3+!
6 g2 x f3 ♜g4 x f3

White resigned.

“White can postpone being checkmated, but only for five moves, by 7 ♜f7+ ♔xd8 8 ♔h6 ♜xh6 9 ♜h5 ♜xh5 10 h4 ♜xh4 and 11... ♜h1#.” (Chigorin)

Sometimes Chigorin was on the losing end of superb combinations. In the position in the next diagram, White delivered a memorable tactical blow that shattered Black’s defenses.



264
Schiffers - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1878

White to move

1 ♖f2 - c2!!

Black resigned.

Black either gets mated, or he loses a rook:

I. 1... ♕xf5 2 ♖xc8#;

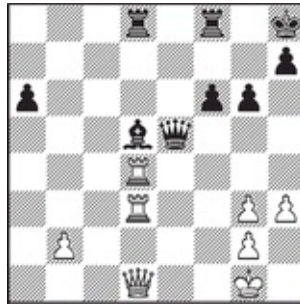
II. 1... ♖xh7 2 ♖xc8+ ♕xc8 3 ♕xc8#;

III. 1... ♖xc2 2 ♖h8+ mating;

IV. 1... ♕g8 2 ♕xd7 and if 2... ♖xc2, then 3 ♕xb7#;

V. 1... ♕e8 2 ♕xd7 ♕xd7 3 ♖xd7 and Black cannot play 3... ♖xc2, because of 4 ♖d8+.

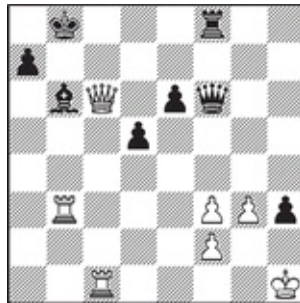
How Would You Play?



265

Anderssen - Paulsen
Krefeld, 1871

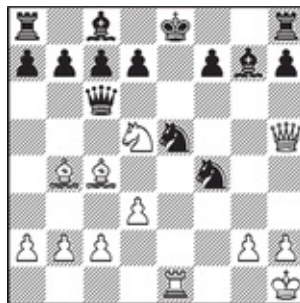
Black to move



266

Anderssen - Zukertort
Berlin, 1871

White to move



267

Beskronny - Consultants
Saint Petersburg, 1871

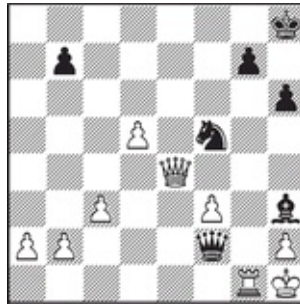
White to move



268

Steinitz - Sich
London, 1871

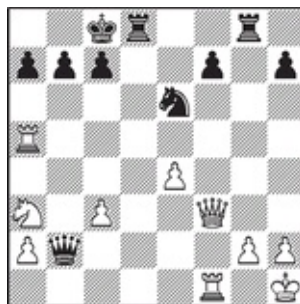
White to move



269

NN - Anderssen
1872

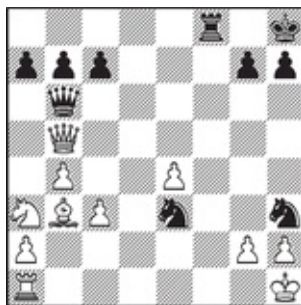
Black to move



270

Anderssen - Fleissig
Vienna, 1873

Black to move



271

Petrovsky - Shumov
Saint Petersburg, 1873

Black to move



272

Rosenthal - NN
1873

White to move



273

NN - Steinitz
The Hague, 1873

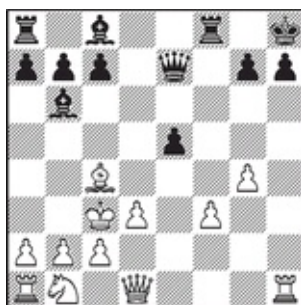
Black to move



274

Blackburne - Gifford
The Hague, 1874

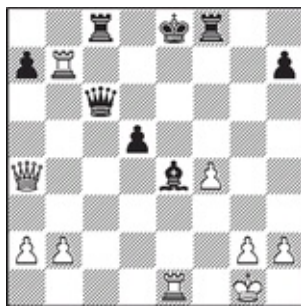
White to move



275

Porges - Steinitz
London, 1874

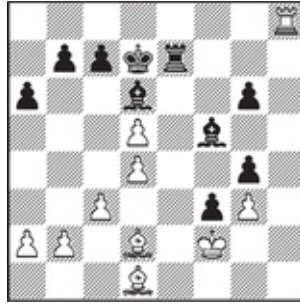
White to move



276

Shumov - Winawer
Saint Petersburg, 1875

White to move



277

Winawer - Shumov
Saint Petersburg, 1875

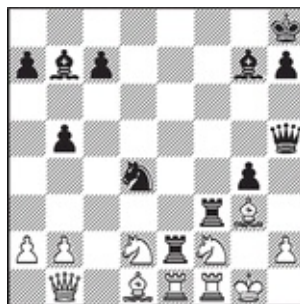
Black to move



278

Winawer - Shumov
Saint Petersburg, 1875

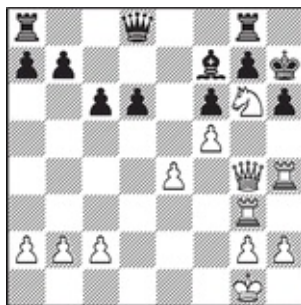
White to move



279

Kostrowitzky - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1875

Black to move



280

Chigorin - NN
Saint Petersburg, 1875

White to move



281

Chigorin - NN
Saint Petersburg, 1876

White to move



282

Riemann - Anderssen
Breslau, 1876

Black to move



283

Steinitz - Blackburne
London, 1876

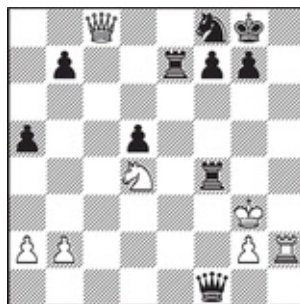
White to move



284

Paulsen - Anderssen
Leipzig, 1877

White to move



285

Goering - Anderssen
Leipzig, 1877

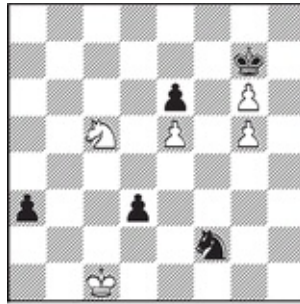
White to move



286

Goering - Schalopp
Leipzig, 1877

Black to move



Black to move

287

Franke - Metger
Leipzig, 1877

Black to move



288

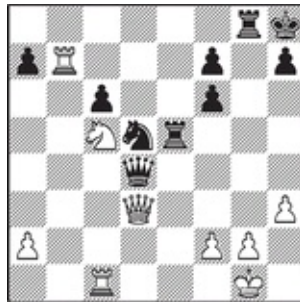
White - Rankin
Edinburgh, 1877

White to move



289
Solovtsov - Smitten
Tiflis, 1877

White to move



290
Anderssen - Bird
Paris, 1878

Black to move



291
NN - Bird

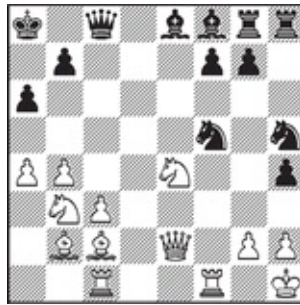
1878

Black to move



292
MacKenzie - Mason
USA, 1878

White to move



293
NN - Mason
USA

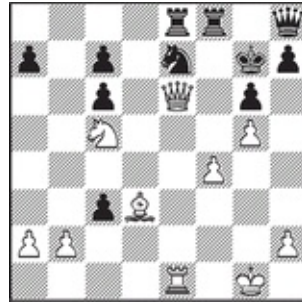
Black to move



294

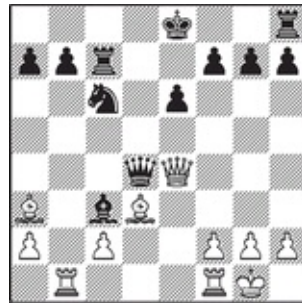
Schmidt - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1878

Black to move



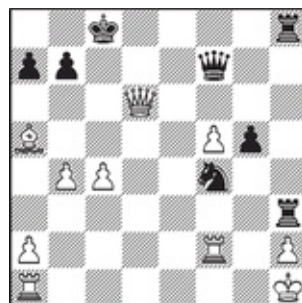
295
Chigorin - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1880

White to move



296
Hardin - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1878

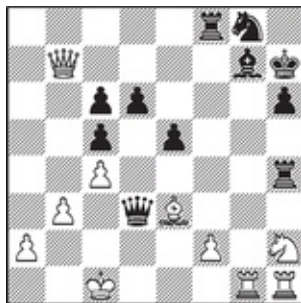
White to move



297

Schiffers - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1878

Black to move



298

Schiffers - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1878

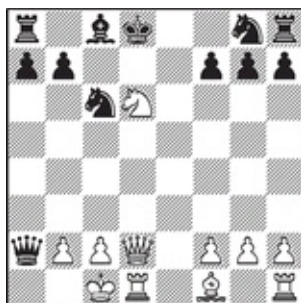
Black to move



299

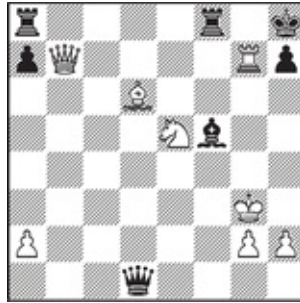
Sletser - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1878

Black to move



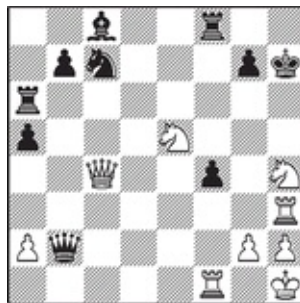
300
Grimshaw - Steinitz
London, 1878

White to move



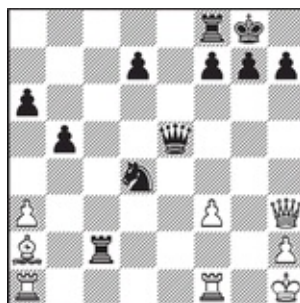
301
MacKenzie - Delmar & Consultants
New York, 1879

White to move



302
Loyd - Moore
USA 1879

White to move



303
Schmidt - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1879

Black to move



304
Chigorin - Schmidt
Saint Petersburg, 1879

White to move



305
Chigorin - Schmidt
Saint Petersburg, 1879

White to move



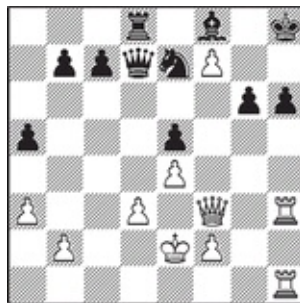
306
Schmidt - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1879

White to move



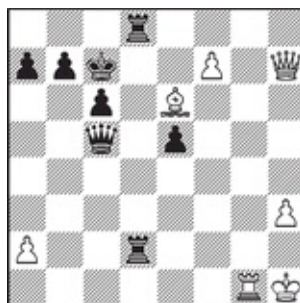
307
Chigorin - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1879

White to move



308
Chigorin - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1879

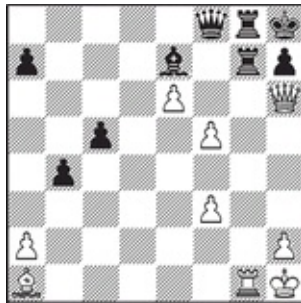
White to move



309

**Chigorin - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1879**

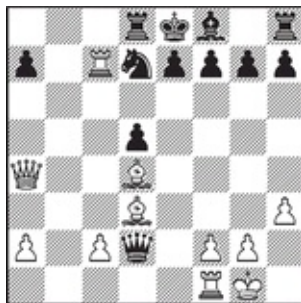
Black to move



310

**Chigorin - Yakubovich
correspondence game, 1879**

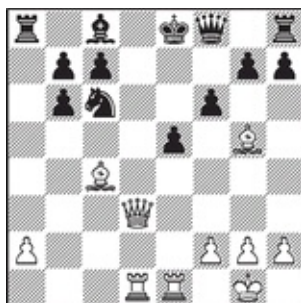
White to move



311

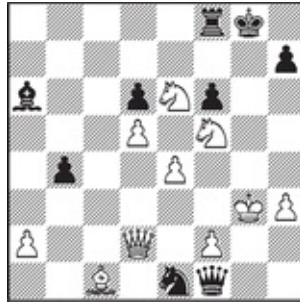
**Tarrasch - Scheve
Breslau, 1879 - 1880**

White to move



312
Chigorin - NN
Saint Petersburg, 1880

White to move



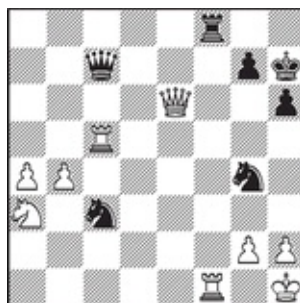
313
Urusov - Kalinsky
Correspondence game, 1880

White to move



314
NN - Blackburne
London, 1880

Black to move



315
Hoffer - NN
Vienna, 1880

White to move



316
Tarrasch - Mendelsohn
Breslau, 1880

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 265. 1...♙b3! (Black can also play 1...♙f3! with approximately the same variations.) 2 ♖xd8 (It is even worse for White to capture on b3, because of 2...♖xd4) 2...♙xd1 3 ♖xf8+ ♙g7 and Black wins.

Diagram 266. 1 ♖xb6+! ab 2 ♖xb6+ ♙a8 3 ♖a6+ (White plays precisely to the end. If 3 ♖a1+??, then ♙xa1+) 3...♙b8 4 ♖b1+. Black resigned. (4...♙c7 5 ♖b7+ and 6 ♖a8#)

Diagram 267. 1 ♖xe5+ ♘e6 (or 1...♙xe5 2 ♖xe5+ ♘e6 3 ♖xh8+ ♘f8 4 ♖xf8#) 2 ♙b5! ♖xc2 3 ♖xe6+ ♙d8 4 ♖g5+ f6 5 ♙e7+ ♙e8 6 ♖h5#.

Diagram 268. 1 ♖xe5! de (or 1...♖xe5 2 ♖f8+ ♖g8 3 ♖xg8+ ♙xg8 4 ♙f6+) 2 ♖xh5! ♘c7 (It would be more interesting after best defense by Black, 2...♖g6 - 3 ♙h6! ♙g8 4 d6! ♘b8 5 ♖xe5! ♖c8 6 ♖d5+ ♙h8 7 ♖f8+, and White wins. It is bad for Black to continue with 3...♖xg2+, because of 4 ♖xg2 ♖xh5 5 ♖f8#, or to play 2...♖xh5 immediately, due to 3 ♖f8+ ♖g8 4 ♙f6#.) 3 d6! ♖xg5 4 ♖xe8+ ♘xe8 5 d7!. Black resigned. (5...♖g8 6 d8♖)

Diagram 269. 1...♙g2+! (or 1...♘g3+?? 2 hg, but not 2 ♖xg3??, because of 2...♖f1+ 3 ♖g1 ♙g2#) 2 ♖xg2 ♖f1+ 3 ♖g1 ♘g3+!! 4 hg ♖h3#.

Diagram 270. 1...♖d3! 2 g3 (or 2 ♖xd3? ♖xg2#; 2 ♖f2 ♖xf2 3 ♖xf2 ♖d1+ 4 ♖f1 ♖xf1#) 2...♖xf3 3 ♖xf3 ♖c1+ 4 ♙g2 ♘f4+. White resigned.

Diagram 271. 1...♘d1!? (It is simpler for Black to play 1...♘f2+ 2 ♙g1 ♖g6 3 g3 ♘h3+ 4 ♙h1 ♖xe4#.) White resigned. (2 ♖xb6 ♖f1+; 2 ♙xd1 ♖g1#; 2 ♖xd1 ♖g1+! 3 ♖xg1 ♘f2#; 2 gh! ♘f2+ 3 ♙g2 ♖g6+ 4 ♙f1 ♘xe4+ 5 ♙e1 ♖g1+ 6 ♙e2 ♖xh2+ 7 ♙d3 ♖d2+ 8 ♙c4 ♘d6+ 9 ♙c5 ♖e3+ 10 ♙d5 ♖f5#)

Diagram 272. 1 ♖xh7+! ♙xh7 2 ♘g5+! ♙h6 (or 2...fg) 3 ♖h3#.

Diagram 273. 1...♘a6! 2 ♖xa8 ♙c7! 3 ♖xa7?! (Stronger was 3 ♖d2) 3...♙b4+?! (Black should continue 3...♖c3+! 4 ♖d2 ♙b4 5 ♘f3 ♖e8+ 6 ♙e2 ♖a1#, or 4 ♙e2 ♙c5! and Black wins.) 4 ♙e2! ♖xc2+ 5 ♙f3 ♖f5+! 6 ♙g3 (6 ♙e2 ♖e8#) 6...♙d6+ 7 ♙h4? (This move loses immediately, but even after 7 f4, Black weaves a mating net: 7...♖xf4+ 8 ♙h3 ♖h6+ 9 ♙g4 ♖g5+ 10 ♙f3 ♖f5+ 11 ♙e3 ♖e8+ etc.) 7...♖g5+ 8 ♙h3 ♖h5#.

Diagram 274. 1 fg ♖xg7 2 ♖xh6+! ♙xh6 3 ♘e6+ ♙h5 4 ♙e2+ ♙h4 5 ♖f4+ (5 g3+ ♙h3 6 ♘f4+ ♘xf4 7 ♘xf4#) 5...♘xf4 6 g3+ ♙h3 7 ♘exf4#.

Diagram 275. 1 ♖xh7+! ♙xh7 2 ♖h1+ ♙g6 3 ♖h5+ ♙f6 4 ♖h4+, winning the queen. (4...g5 5 ♖h6#; 4...♙g6 5 ♖xe7)

Diagram 276. 1 ♖c1! (but not 1 ♔xa7?? ♔c5+) 1... ♖f6 (or 1... ♔xa4? 2 ♖xc8#). There followed 2 ♖xc6 ♖fxc6 3 ♖xa7 ♔d8 4 ♔a5+, and Black soon resigned.

Diagram 277. 1... ♗c2! 2 ♗g5 (Or 2 ♗xc2 ♖e2+ 3 ♔f1 ♖xd2 4 ♖h7+ ♔d8 5 ♗a4 b5 6 ♗b3 ♗xg3 with mate in a few moves.) 2... ♗xd1 3 ♗xe7 ♔xe7 and Black wins.

Diagram 278. 1 ♖xh5! ♖xh5 2 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 3 ♖xf7+ ♔g8 (“If 3... ♗f6, then 4 ♗xf6+ ♔g8 5 ♖g7+ ♔h8 6 ♖g2+! ♖xf6 7 ♗xf6 ♖f3 8 ♔g1! and White wins.” - Schiffers) 4 ♖g7+ ♔h8 5 ♖xe7+ ♔g8 6 ♖g1+ and White checkmates in two.

Diagram 279. 1... ♖xg3+! 2 hg ♗h1+! 3 ♗xh1 ♖g2#.

Diagram 280. 1 ♖f4! (“The threat is 2 ♖xh6+! gh 3 ♖h3.” - Nikolai Grekov) 1... ♖e8 (“If 1... ♗b6+ 2 ♔h1 ♗xb2, then White mates in four: 3 ♗f8+!, followed by 4 ♖xg7+!, etc.” - Grekov) 2 ♗f8+ (We have discovered that White wins immediately here with 2 ♖xh6+! gh 3 ♖h3 ♗g8 4 ♗xh6 ♗xg6 5 ♗xg6+ ♔f8 6 ♖h8+ ♔e7 7 ♗g7#.) 2... ♔g8! (Also doesn't work for Black 2... ♖xf8? because of 3 ♖xg7+! with mate.) 3 ♖xg7+! ♔xf8! 4 ♗xh6 ♔e7?? (It is preferable for Black to play 4... ♗b6+ 5 ♔h1 ♗xb2 6 ♗h8+ ♔e7 7 ♖xf7+! ♔d8! 8 ♗xf6+, but White ends up with an extra pawn and a superior position.) 5 ♖xf7+!, and White mates in three. (5... ♔xf7 6 ♗h7+ ♔f8 7 ♗h8+ ♔e7 8 ♖h7#, or 6 ♗g6+ etc.)

Diagram 281. 1 ♖f6+! and White mates in five (1... ♔g7 2 ♗xg5#; 1... ♗xf6 2 ♖xf6+ ♗xf6 3 ♗xf6+ ♔h5 4 ♗f4+ ♔g4 5 h3+ ♔g3 6 ♗e2#; 1... ♗xf6 2 ♖xf6+ ♔h5 3 ♗f4+ ♔g4 4 ♖xh6! ♗xh6 5 ♗f5+ ♔h4 6 g3#; 1... ♔h5 2 ♗f4+ ♔g4 3 h3+ ♔h4 4 g3+, followed by mate in two.)

Diagram 282. 1... ♗xf3+! 2 gf (or 2 ♔g1 ♖e1+) 2... ♗h3+ 3 ♔g1 (3 ♔f2 ♗h4+ 4 ♔g1 ♖e1+ 5 ♗f1 ♖xf1#) 3... ♖e1+ 4 ♔f2 (4 ♗f1 ♖xf1#) 4... ♗h4#.

Diagram 283. 1 g6! ♗xg6 (or 1... ♗xf6 2 ♗xh7#; 1... hg 2 ♗g5 and Black cannot play 2... ♗xf6, because of 3 ♗xh7#) 2 ♗xg7 (“This move wins a piece, because in case of 2... ♗xg7, White plays 3 ♖hg1.” - Richard Reti) 2... ♗xh6+ 3 ♗xh6. Black soon resigned.

Diagram 284. 1 ♖f2! and White wins. (1... ♗xf2 2 ♗xa8+ ♖f8 3 ♗xf8#; 2... ♖h6+ 3 ♔g1)

Diagram 285. 1 ♗xf8+! ♔xf8 2 ♖h8#.

Diagram 286. 1... ♗xe1+! 2 ♗xe1 (or 2 ♗d1 ♗xd1#) 2... ♗f4+! 3 ♗d2 (or 3 ♔b1 ♖xe1+ 4 ♗d1 ♖xd1#) 3... ♖e1+ 4 ♗d1 ♖xd1#.

Diagram 287. 1... d2+! 2 ♔xd2 ♗e4+! 3 ♗xe4 a2. White resigned.

Diagram 288. 1 ♖xh7+! ♔xh7? (or 1... ♖h8? 2 ♘f6!; 1... ♖f8 2 ♖xf7+! ♖xf7 3 ♗h5+ ♖f8 4 ♖f1+ ♘f5 5 ♖xf5 ♗xf5 6 ♘xc7) 2 ♗h5+ (It is more precise for White to follow with 2 ♘f6!, and checkmate in five.) 2... ♖g8 3 ♗xf7+ ♖h8 4 ♘f6. Black resigned. ("If 4... ♖xf6, then 5 ♖xf6#, while in case of 4... ♘g6, White plays 5 ♗xg6 with mate in two." - Frank Marshall)

Diagram 289. 1 ♖g5! hg (or 1... ♗h8 2 ♖xe7; 1... ♘xf5 2 ef) 2 hg ♗h8 3 f6 ♖ab8 4 ♖f2. Black resigned.

Diagram 290. 1... ♖xg2+! White resigned. (2 ♖f1 ♗xf2#; 2 ♖xg2 ♘f4+; 2 ♖h1 ♗xf2)

Diagram 291. 1... ♘e2+ 2 ♖h1 ♖xf1+! (or without sacrifices: 2... ♘g3+ 3 ♖g1 ♖xf1#) 3 ♖xf1 ♘g3#.

Diagram 292. 1 ♗h6+! ♖xh6 2 ♘hf5+ ♖xf5 3 ♘xf5+ ♖h5 4 ♖h3+ ♖g4 (or 4... ♘h4 5 ♖xh4+ ♖g6 6 ♖h6#) 5 ♘e3#.

Diagram 293. 1... ♖b5!! 2 ab ♘hg3+! 3 ♘xg3 (or 3 hg ♘xg3+ 4 ♘xg3 hg+ and later, as in the game) 3... ♘xg3+ 4 hg hg+ 5 ♖g1 ♖h1+! 6 ♖xh1 ♖h8+ 7 ♖g1 ♖c5+! 8 ♘xc5 (White will not survive even if he refrains from capturing.) 8... ♖h1+! 9 ♖xh1 ♗h8+ 10 ♖g1 ♗h2#.

Diagram 294. 1... ♖g4+! 2 ♖h1 (or 2 fg ♗h1#; 2 ♖f2 ♗xf3+ 3 ♖e1 ♗e3+ and mate next) 2... ♗xf3+ 3 ♗xf3 ♖xf3#.

Diagram 295. 1 ♗xe7+! ♖xe7 (or 1... ♖g8 2 ♖c4+ ♖f7 3 ♗xf7#) 2 ♖xe7+ ♖f7 (or 2... ♖g8 3 ♖c4+ ♖f7 4 ♖e8+ ♖g7 5 ♘e6#) 3 ♘e6+ ♖g8 4 ♖e8+ ♖f8 5 ♖xf8#.

Diagram 296. 1 ♖xb7! ♖xb7 (or 1... ♗xe4 2 ♖xe4 ♖xb7 3 ♖xc6+ ♖d7 4 ♖d1) 2 ♗xc6+ ♖d7 (or 2... ♖d7 3 ♗c8+ ♖d8 4 ♖b5+ ♗d7 5 ♖xd7#) 3 ♗xc3 and White won.

Diagram 297. 1... ♖xh2+! 2 ♖xh2 ♖xh2+ 3 ♖xh2 (or 3 ♖g1 ♖g2+ 4 ♖f1 ♗xc4+) 3... ♗h5+ 4 ♖g1 ("Or 4 ♖g3 ♗h3+ 5 ♖f2 ♗h2+ 6 ♖e3 ♘g2+." - Nikolai Grekov) 4... ♗g4+ 5 ♖f2 ♗e2+ 6 ♖g3 ♗g2#.

Diagram 298. 1... ♗c3+ 2 ♖d1? (Or 2 ♖b1 e4 3 ♖xg7+ ♗xg7 and Black is up an exchange.) 2... ♖d4+! 3 ♖xd4 (3 ♖e2 ♗d3+ 4 ♖e1 ♗d1#) 3... ♗xd4+ 4 ♖c1 (Now White gets mated in three. It is also bad for White to play 4 ♖e2 ♖xf2+ 5 ♖e1 ♗d2#; a more tenacious defense is 4 ♖e1 ♗xf2+ 5 ♖d1 ♖f7 6 ♗a8 ♗d4+ 7 ♖e1 ♖f4! and Black wins.) 4... ♗a1+ 5 ♖d2 ♖xf2+ 6 ♖e3 ♗d4#.

Diagram 299. Looking at the position, it is hard to believe that White will last for only five more moves. The finish is striking: 1... hg!! (This is stronger than 1... ♖xf2+ 2 ♖f1.) 2 ♗xh8 ♗e7+ 3 ♖d1 ("Or 3 ♖f1 ♖xc2! 4 ♗xg8+ ♖d7 5 ♗c4 ♖e8 and Black wins." - Chigorin) 3... ♖xf2!! 4 ♗xg8+ ♖d7 5 ♗c4 ♖e8. White resigned.

Diagram 300. 1 ♘b5+! ♖e8 (or 1... ♖d7 2 ♗xd7#; 1... ♖e7 2 ♗d6+ ♖e8 3 ♘c7#) 2 ♘c7+ ♖f8 (or 2... ♖e7 3 ♗d6#) 3 ♗d6+! and it is all over. (3... ♘ge7 4 ♗d8+! ♘xd8 5 ♖xd8#)

Diagram 301. 1 ♖g6+! ♙xg6 (or 1...hg 2 ♖h7+ ♙g8 3 ♚g7#) 2 ♖xh7+! ♙xh7 (or 2...♙g8 3 ♚g7#) 3 ♙e5+ ♖f6 4 ♙xf6+ ♙g8 5 ♚g7#.

Diagram 302. This is a mate in three: 1 ♚e6! (If White wishes to win without sacrifices, he can do so in six moves: 1 ♖f5+ ♖h6 2 ♖xh6+ gh 3 ♚xc7+ ♙d7 4 ♚xd7+ ♖f7 5 ♚xf7+ and mate next move.) After 1 ♚e6, Black can resign. (Or 1...♙xe6 2 ♖f5+ ♙g8 3 ♖e7#; 1...♖(♙)xe6 2 ♖g6+ ♙g8 3 ♖h8#. Another amusing line is 1...♚xg2+ 2 ♖xg2#.)

Diagram 303. 1...♖xf3!. White resigned. 2 ♚xf3 fails to ♚xh2#; 2 ♖xf3 loses to ♚xa1+ 3 ♖f1 ♚xa2 and Black wins a rook; meanwhile he is threatening 2...♖xh2+ with mate.

Diagram 304. 1 ♖c5+! ♙b8 (or 1...bc 2 ♚b3+ ♙c6 3 ♖a6#; 1...♙c6 2 ♚a4+ b5 3 ♚a6+ ♙d5 4 ♚a2+ ♙c6 5 d5+! ♚xc5 6 b4+ ♙b6 7 ♚a7#, or 2...♙d5 3 c4+ ♙xd4 4 ♖d1+! ♚xc5 5 ♚b5#) 2 ♚a4. Black resigned. (2...bc 3 ♚a8#; 2...f2+ 3 ♙g2)

Diagram 305. 1 ♖xf6! gf 2 ♖e4 ♚h4 (“In case Black protects his f6-pawn in some other fashion, White would follow with 3 ♙c3.” - Chigorin) 3 g3 ♚h3 4 ♖xf6+ ♙g7 (“Or 4...♙h8 5 ♙c3 etc.” - Chigorin) 5 ♚d4 ♖g8 (“If 5...c5 6 ♖e8+, or 6 ♖h5+.” - Chigorin) 6 ♖d7+ f6 7 ♚xf6#.

Diagram 306. 1...♖xc5! 2 ♚xc5 ♙b7 3 ♖7d5 h5! 4 ♙f2 ♖c6! 5 ♚e3 ♖c2+ 6 ♖5d2 (or 6 ♖1d2 ♚xd5! 7 ♖xc2 ♚g2+) 6...♚g2+ 7 ♙e1 ♚h1+ 8 ♙f2 ♚xh2+ 9 ♙e1 ♚h1+ 10 ♙f2 ♚xd1. White resigned.

Diagram 307. 1 ♙b5! ♚xb5 (“If 1...♚b7, then 2 ♚a4!, or 2 ♚xd8! and 3 a6!.” - N. Grekov; 1...♖xd4 2 ♙xc6#.) 2 ♖xb5 ♖xd4 3 ♖xd4 and White won.

Diagram 308. 1 ♖xh6+! ♙xh6 (or 1...♙g7 2 ♖h7#) 2 f8 ♚+! ♖xf8 3 ♚xf8+ ♖g8 (or 3...♙h7 4 ♖xh6#) 4 ♖xh6+. Black resigned.

Diagram 309. 1...♖h2+! 2 ♙xh2 ♚f2+ 3 ♙h1 (or 3 ♖g2 ♚f4+ 4 ♖g3 ♖d2+ and the play transposes to the game) 3...♚f3+ 4 ♖g2 ♖d1+ 5 ♙h2 ♚f4+ 6 ♖g3 ♖d2+ 7 ♙h1 ♚f1+ 8 ♖g1 ♚f3+ 9 ♖g2 ♚xg2#.

Diagram 310. 1 ♖g3! c4 (Black can stop mate in three only if he gives away his pieces like candy: 1...♙f6 2 ♙xf6 ♚xf6 3 ♚xf6) 2 ♚xh7+! and White mates: 2...♙xh7 3 ♖h3+ ♙h4 4 ♖xh4#.

Diagram 311. 1 ♚xd7+! (The most direct road to victory. White also wins after 1 ♙b5 and 1 ♖xd7) 1...♖xd7 2 ♖c8+ ♖d8 3 ♙b5#.

Diagram 312. 1 ♖xe5+! fe (or 1...♖e7 2 ♚d8#; 1...♚e7 2 ♖xe7+) 2 ♚d8+! ♖xd8 3 ♖xd8#.

Diagram 313. 1 ♚g5+!! (but not 1 ♖xf8?? ♚g2+ 2 ♙h4 ♖f3+) 1...fg (1...♙h8 2 ♚g7#; 1...♙f7

2 ♖g7+ ♔e8 3 ♖e7#, or 3 ♗xd6#) 2 ♗h6+ ♖h8 3 ♗b2+ ♖f6 4 ♗xf6#.

Diagram 314. 1... ♗g4 2 h3 (or 2 ♖d1 ♖xf2+ 3 ♔h1 ♖g1+! 4 ♖xg1 ♗f2#) 2... ♗xf2+ 3 ♔h1 (or 3 ♖xf2 ♖xf2+ with mate next move) 3... ♗f5! 4 ♖xa8 ♖xh3+! 5 gh ♗xe4#.

Diagram 315. 1 ♖g8+!! (but not 1 ♖xc7?? 2 ♖xf1#) 1... ♖g6! (or 1... ♖xg8? 2 ♖xc7; 1... ♖xg8? 2 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 3 ♖xc7) 2 ♖e6+! (or 2 ♖c6+? ♖h5! 3 ♖f5+ ♖xf5 4 ♖e8+ ♖h4 5 ♖e1+ ♗f2+; this variation is favorable for Black too, because White cannot play 6 ♖xf2+, due to 6... ♖xf2 7 ♖xc7 ♖f1#) 2... ♖h7! 3 ♖g8+! with a perpetual check and a draw.

Diagram 316. 1 ♖xe6+! ♗e2 2 ♗g6+ ♖f7 3 ♖c6+ ♖d7 4 ♖a8+ ♖d8 5 ♗xf7+! ♖d7 6 ♗xe6+! ♖c7 (or 6... ♖e8 ♖c6+ with mate) 7 ♖a7+ ♖c6 8 ♖xa6+ ♖c5 9 ♖xc4+ ♖d6 10 ♖d4+ ♖c7 (or 10... ♖xe6 11 ♖xd8) 11 ♖b6#.

VIII

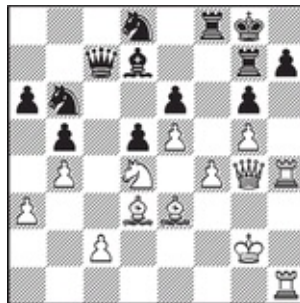
Steinitz - The First World Champion (1881 - 1890)

One of my favorite annotations is: All pieces participate in the attack!

Bent Larsen

“The year 1881 was remarkable not only in Chigorin’s life, but also in the history of Russian chess — in that year Chigorin made his international debut at the International Tournament in Berlin,” - wrote the historian Nikolai Grekov.

The participants were strong, yet still the young master managed to share third and fourth places with the strong Polish master, Shimon Winawer. Chigorin won several impressive games in sharp tactical style. Here you will see the end of one of his games, which soon became a calling card for the Russian.



317

**Chigorin - Paulsen
Berlin, 1881**

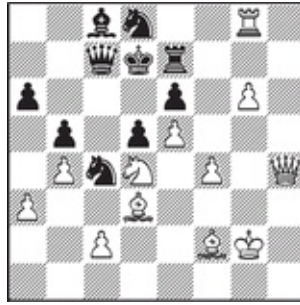
White to move

Paulsen had just played ♞a8-b6 and Chigorin, annotating that game, wrote, “This move enabled White to win the game quickly by sacrificing the rook. Black’s position was already bad anyway.”

1 ♜h4 x h7! ♜g7 x h7
2 ♜h1 x h7 ♜f8 - f7

Naturally, not 2... ♜xh7 , because of 3 ♞h5+ , followed by 4 ♞xg6+ and 5 ♞h7\# .

3 ♖h7 - h6	♜b6 - c4
4 ♖h6 x g6+	♚g8 - f8
5 ♙e3 - f2	♙d7 - c8
6 ♖g4 - h4	♚f8 - e7
7 ♖g6 - g8	♚e7 - d7
8 g5 - g6	♖f7 - e7



318

Position after Black's eighth mov

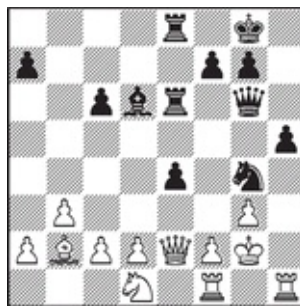
There follows the final strike.

9 ♖h4 x e7+!

Black resigned, because of 9... ♚xe7 10 ♙h4+ ♚d7 11 ♖g7+ ♚e8 12 ♖xc7.

“This was a brilliant victory! Even this game would be quite enough to consider the representative of Russia as a first-class maestro.” So it was written in the German magazine, *Deutsche Schachzeitung*.

Next, an amazing tactical blow by Chigorin in a fragment from a game played in a tournament in Vienna:



319

Bird - Chigorin
Vienna, 1882

Black to move

“Truly a masterstroke, forcing an elegant win.” (Steinitz)

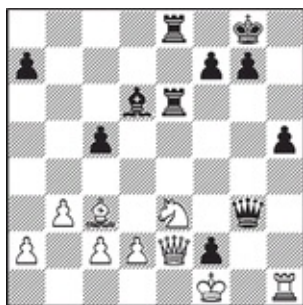
2 ♖b2 - d4

“In case of 2 de, Black would have played 2... ♘xe3! 3 ♘xe3 ♖xe3, with the threat of 4... ♖xg3+, winning for Black.” (Steinitz)

2	...	♘g4 x f2
3	♚f1 x f2	♗g6 x g3+
4	♔g2 - f1	e3 x f2
5	♘d1 - e3	

“If 5 ♗xf2, then 5... ♖e1+.” (Schiffers)

5	...	c6 - c5
6	♘d4 - c3	



320

Position after White' move six

6	...	♚e6 x e3!
---	-----	-----------

“This beautiful move is the fastest road to victory for Black.” (Steinitz)

7	d2 x e3	♚e8 x e3
8	♗e2 - d1	h5 - h4!
9	♘c3 - d2	h4 - h3!

White resigned.

If 10 ♗xe3, then 10... ♗g2+ 11 ♔e1 f1 ♗#.

In this competition, the famous British writer and theoretician James Mason carried out a wonderful combination.



321

Mason - Winawer
Vienna, 1882

White to move

1 ♖g3 x g5!!

“This move was played by a genius!” (Schiffers)

“As you can see later, this was a beautiful combination. Black’s best defense here was 1... ♕f8, but that move would be hardly sufficient.” (Emanuel Lasker)

1 ... ♗h6 x g5
2 ♖h5 - h7+ ♜c5 - d7

“It is bad for Black to play 2... ♕d8 3 ♖h8+ ♗e7 4 ♖g7+ ♜f7 5 f6+, when White wins.” (Alexander Kotov)

3 ♗c6 x d7 ♖c8 - g8!

“In case of 3... ♖xd7, White follows with 4 ♜c4+ ♗d8 5 ♖h8+ and he wins.” (Schiffers)



322

Position after Black’s move three

“This is again an ingenious move!” (Schiffers)

4 ... ♔c7 x b7

“The only move. Otherwise Black loses his queen.” (Kotov)

After 4... ♖b7 5 ♔xg8, the bishop on d7 is untouchable; 5... ♔xd7 would be followed by 6 ♔g7+ and 7 ♔xf6, winning a rook.

5 ♗d7 - c8+!!

“Behold this check! There is everything in it — covering of files, deflection and even some other ideas. Everything is so tricky. You must be tremendously sly in order to invent a combination like this!” (Kotov)

5 ... ♔b7 - a8

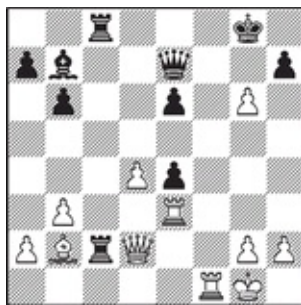
“After 5... ♔xc8, Black also loses his rook.” (Schiffers)

6 ♔h7 x g8 ♗f6 x f5
7 ♔g8 - d8

There followed 7... ♖xd5 8 ♔d7 ♖b1+ 9 ♔h2 ♖d2 10 ♔c6+ ♔b8 11 ♔xe4 ♖bb2 12 ♗e6.

“White wins, preserving his extra bishop, after 12... ♖xg2+ 13 ♔xg2, etc.” (Schiffers)

The outstanding chess event of 1883 was the International Tournament in England. Its winner was Johannes Herman Zukertort, who had just reached the peak of his playing strength. He scored three points more than the runner-up Steinitz. Zukertort beat Blackburne, who took third prize, in a brilliant game:



323

Zukertort - Blackburne
London, 1883

White to move

1 g6 x h7+

♔g8 - h8

“If 1... ♖xh7, or 1... ♗xh7, then 2 ♖h3+, or 2 ♖g3+.” (Schiffers)

2 d4 - d5+
3 ♗d2 - b4!

e6 - e5

“This is stunning and quite resolute.” (Steinitz)

3 ...

♖c8 - c5

“Black cannot take the queen, because he gets checkmated by force: 3... ♗xb4 4 ♗xe5+ ♖xh7 5 ♖h3+ ♖g6 6 ♖g3+ ♖h6 (or 6... ♖h7 7 ♖f7+ etc.) 7 ♖f6+ ♖h5 8 ♖f5+ ♖h6 9 ♗f4+ ♖h7 10 ♖h5#.” (Zukertort)

Emanuel Lasker gives another possible finish: 6 ♖f6+ ♖g5 7 ♖g3+ ♖h5 8 ♖f5+ ♖h6 9 ♗f4+ ♖h7 10 ♖h5#.

Schiffers adds to Lasker’s analysis: 6... ♖g7 7 ♖g3+ ♖h7 8 ♖f7+ ♖h6 9 ♗f4+ ♖h5 10 ♖h7#.

“Black cannot avoid the mating attack by 3... ♗e8, because of 4 ♖f8+ ♗xf8 5 ♗xe5+ ♖xh7 6 ♗xe4+!.” (Boris Turov)

4 ♗f1 - f8+!

“White’s previous moves and his last move combine into one of the greatest, maybe even the most beautiful combination, which has ever been seen on the chess board. Words are not sufficient to describe my admiration for the mastership with which Zukertort played this game.” (Steinitz)

4 ...

♔h8 x h7

“If 4... ♗xf8, then 5 ♗xe5+ ♖xh7 6 ♗xe4+ and White mates in four.” (Schiffers)

5 ♗b4 x e4+
6 ♗b2 x e5+

♔h7 - g7

“Zukertort could have checkmated in seven moves here: 6 ♖g8+ ♖xg8 7 ♗g6+ ♗g7 8 ♗e8+ ♗f8 9 ♖g3+ ♖h7 10 ♗g6+ etc.” (Schiffers)

6 ...

♔g7 x f8

7 ♗e5 - g7+!

♔f8 - g8

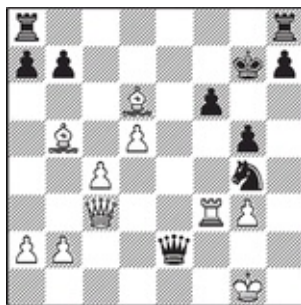
Or 7... ♗xg7 8 ♗e8#.

8 ♗e4 x e7

Black resigned.

Chigorin achieved moderate success in the tournament in London (fourth prize), while beating

Steinitz twice.



324

**Steinitz - Chigorin
London, 1883**

Black to move

1 ... ♖h8 - e8!

“This was superbly played!” (Steinitz)

It was also good for Black to play 1...♖ae8, or 1...♔h2+ with approximately the same variations as in the game.

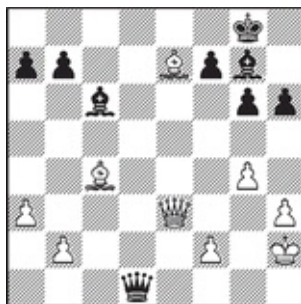
2 ♗b5 x e8 ♖a8 x e8
3 ♗d6 - c5 ♗e2 - h2+
4 ♘g1 - f1 ♖e8 - e2

“Black could have mated in two here: 4...♔h1+ 5 ♗g1 ♔h3#.” (Steinitz)
White resigned.

Zukertort was ahead of Steinitz in the tournament in London - taking, in fact, the first place - and already gaining respect as a worthy challenger. Another encounter between the two masters was unavoidable, and it occurred in 1886 — the beginning of the official matches for the world championship. The competition was held in three different American cities: New York, St. Louis, and New Orleans.

Steinitz won 10 games, Zukertort won five games, and five games ended in draws.

Steinitz’s contribution to chess cannot be overestimated. He was the first player to turn chess into science. He created and developed an idea that is called now “Accumulation Theory” - aggregating of small positional advantages and converting them into overall dominance. Tigran Petrosian, the ninth World Champion and master of strategy, put Steinitz’ legacy into a historical perspective: “The significance of Steinitz’s teaching is that he showed that in principle chess has a strictly defined, logical nature.”



325

Zukertort - Steinitz

Saint Louis, 1886

7th game of the match

Black to move

1 ... ♖g7 - e5!

It was also possible for Black to play the simple move 1...♗d4 and White would be forced to give up both his bishops.

2 f2 - f4

Or 2 ♖xe5 ♖h1+ 3 ♗g3 ♖f3+ 4 ♗h4 (or 4 ♗h2 ♖g2#); 4...♖xf2+ 5 ♖g3 g5+, and Black wins the queen.

2 ... ♗e5 x f4+!

Black had a tricky alternative: 2... g5! 3 fe (or 2 ♖xe5) 2... ♖h1+ 3 ♗g3 ♖g2#.

3 ♖e3 x f4 ♖d1 - h1+
4 ♗h2 - g3 ♖h1 - g1+

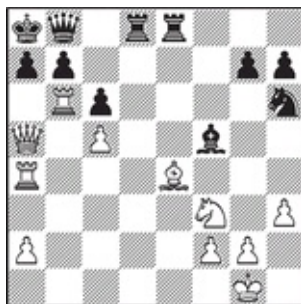
White resigned.

The variation 5 ♗h4 ♖e1+ 6 ♖g3 g5+ was absolutely unacceptable for White.

Meanwhile, there appeared an outstanding new master in Germany, Ziegbert Tarrasch. (We have seen some fragments of his games in the section “How Would You Play?” in chapter 7.)

“Doctor Tarrasch is a rising expert, who will soon begin to shine as a star of the first magnitude. He is very strong tactically, despite the fact that his understanding of the game still seems a bit immature,” Steinitz wrote about him.

Tarrasch created an amazing combination, calculating many moves ahead, in his game against Isidor Gunsberg, who was also to become a challenger for the world title.



326

Tarrasch - Gunsberg
Frankfurt, 1887

White to move

1 ♖b6 - a6! ♗d8 - d1+

“All Black’s moves now are forced.” (Tarrasch)
It is evidently bad for him to play 1...ba? due to 2 ♗xc6+.

2 ♘f3 - e1 ♗d1 x e1+
3 ♕a5 x e1 ♗f5 x e4
4 ♗a4 x e4 ♗e8 x e4

5 ♕e1 x e4 b7 x a6
6 ♕e4 x c6+ ♖b8 - b7
7 ♖c6 - e8+ ♖b7 - b8
8 ♖e8 - e4+ ♖b8 - b7
9 c5 - c6! ♖b7 - c7
10 ♖e4 - e8+ ♖c7 - b8
11 ♖e8 - d7!

This is a very interesting position. Black has an extra knight, but cannot avoid the loss. What follows is agony.

11 ... ♖b8 - b1+
12 ♗g1 - h2 ♗h6 - f5
13 c6 - c7

The march of White’s c-pawn is complete.
Black resigned.

Starting in 1889, the future chess king Emanuel Lasker entered the arena of international competitions. In the same year he played one of his most famous combinations, which became an example for future generations to imitate.



327

**Lasker - Bauer
Amsterdam, 1889**

White to move

1 ♖d3 x h7+!	♔g8 x h7
2 ♕e2 x h5+	♔h7 - g8
3 ♖e5 x g7!!	

“This brilliant combination, or variations of it, had been repeated twice more in tournament practice in the games Nimzowitsch - Tarrasch, Saint Petersburg, 1914 and Alekhine - Druitt, Portsmouth, 1923. The sacrifice of the second bishop deprives Black’s king of any shelter and White’s heavy pieces can attack it unopposed.” (Vladimir Zak)

3	...	♔g8 x g7
---	-----	----------

“If 3...f6, then 4 ♖f3 and White wins.” (Schiffers)

In case of 3...f5, White can follow with 4 ♖e5 ♖f6 5 ♖f3 ♕f8 6 ♖g3, winning.

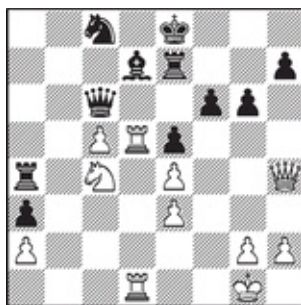
4 ♕h5 - g4+	♔g7 - h7
5 ♖f1 - f3	e6 - e5
6 ♖f3 - h3+	♕c6 - h6
7 ♖h3 x h6+	♔h7 x h6
8 ♖g4 - d7	

White had to foresee this double attack at the time he began the combination. There followed 8...♖f6 9 ♕xb7 ♕g7 10 ♖f1 ♖ab8 11 ♕d7 ♖fd8 12 ♕g4+ ♕f8 13 ♖e ♖g7 14 e6 ♖b7 15 ♕g6 f6 16 ♖xf6+! ♖xf6 17 ♕xf6+ ♕e8 18 ♕h8+ ♕e7 19 ♕g7+, and Black resigned.

The rest of the combinations in this chapter were played by Chigorin. We believe this is justified, because the ingenious master of tactics had created numerous masterpieces during the 1880s.

When Steinitz, the first official world champion, was in Havana in 1888, he was offered to pick the most worthy opponent and play a match against him. Steinitz pointed at Chigorin, because the Russian champion had a positive score against him in their encounters. That match was indeed played; Steinitz prevailed in it with 10 wins, six losses and one draw. Notwithstanding his defeat, the founder of the

Russian school of chess demonstrated his mastery of the game. Here is an example:



328

Chigorin - Steinitz

Havana, 1889, 13th game of the match

White to move

1 ♖d5 - d6! ♘c6 x d6

“If 1... ♙xc5, then 2 ♙xf6, threatening mate in two.” (Chigorin)

2 ♘c4 x d6+ ♔e8 - d8
3 ♜h4 x f6 ♜a4 - a5
4 ♜f6 - f8+ ♜e7 - e8

“It is obvious that after 4... ♙c7 5 ♙xe7 ♜xc5, Black will have to lose: 6 ♘e8+ ♙c8 7 ♘f6 ♜c1 8 ♙xd7+ ♙xd7 9 ♜xc1+, etc.” (Chigorin)

5 ♘d6 x e8 ♙c6 x c5
6 ♜f8 x c5

It looks like 6 ♙h8 would have won more quickly for White; for example, 6... ♙e7 7 ♘f6 ♙a4 8 ♘d5+ ♙e6 9 ♜f1, and White wins.

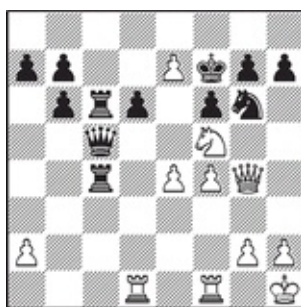
6 ... ♜a5 x c5
7 ♘e8 - f6! ♜c5 - c7
8 ♙g1 - f1 ♙d8 - c8
9 ♜d1 x d7 ♜c7 x d7
10 ♘f6 x d7 ♙c8 x d7

“The resulting king-and-pawn endgame is completely hopeless for Black, because he loses the isolated a3-pawn.” (Mikhail Yudovich)

Black resigned after 14 more moves.

After the match Chigorin competed successfully in the Sixth American Chess Congress in New

York; he shared first place with Max Weiss. In both games against William Pollock (the tournament was a double round-robin) Chigorin brought about delightful combinative wins.



329

**Chigorin - Pollock
New York, 1889**

White to move

Black's last move, ...♖c8-c6, provoked Rudolph Spielmann to comment: "This move weakens the eighth rank. White now makes an ingenious breakthrough."

1 e4 - e5!!

"This is the beginning of a victorious attack." (Steinitz)

"The best fortified outpost in Black's camp is the e5-square. White attacks it once, while Black attacks it four times. The ability to break the enemy front at its strongest point shows supreme mastership of the attack. Chigorin believes that he opens files decisively in that fashion." (Spielmann)

1 ... ♖f6 x e5

"If 1...de, then 2 ♖d8 ♘xe7 (or 2...♖e6 3 e8 ♚+ ♖xe8 4 ♘d6+ and White wins.) 3 ♚xg7+ ♗e6 4 ♘xe7, threatening f4 - f5#." (Steinitz)

"The e5-square has been protected four times; nevertheless Black cannot capture that pawn: 1...de 2 ♖d8 ♖e6 3 ♖f8+!; 1...♘xe5 2 ♚xg7+; 1...♚xe5 2 ♘xd6+ ♖xd6 3 fe." (Yevgeny Vasjukov, Alexander Nikitin)

2 ♘f5 x d6+!

"This is a crushing tactical blow." (Steinitz)

We believe that the following line is also very strong for White: 2 e8 ♚+! ♗xe8 3 ♘xg7+ ♗e7 (or 3...♗f7 4 ♚d7+ ♘e7 5 fe+ ♗xg7 6 ♚xe7+ ♗g6 7 ♖f6+ and mate) 4 ♚e6+ ♗f8 (or 4...♗d8 5 ♚e8+ ♗c7 6 ♘e6#) 5 ♚f6+ ♗g8 6 ♘f5, with an unavoidable checkmate.

2 ... ♖c6 x d6
3 ♖f4 x e5+ ♖d6 - f6
4 e7 - e8♚+!

"Chigorin finishes the game precisely and elegantly." (Steinitz)

4 ... ♔f7 x e8
 5 ♖g4 - d7+ ♕e8 - f8
 6 e5 x f6

Black resigned. (6... ♔c7 7 fg++ ♕g8 8 ♖e6+ ♖xg7 9 ♖d7+)

“The greatness of Chigorin’s ideas is simply charming - his every move is a creative endeavor, showing an overwhelming will to win.” (Spielmann)

In 1890 Chigorin played another match in Cuba, this time against Gunsberg. Their strength proved to be balanced, each scoring nine wins and five draws.



330
Gunsberg - Chigorin
Havana, 1890, 2nd game of the match

Black to move

The combination in this game was called the best of the match by many of the commentators:

1 ... ♖f4 x f3!!

“This combination is tremendously deep and beautiful.” (Steinitz)

“This combination could only be created by a great master.” (Gunsberg)

2 ♖e2 x f3

“If 2 ♖xh4, then 2... ♖g3+! 3 ♖xg3 ♖xh4+ 4 ♖f3 ♖h3+ 5 ♖f2 ♖f7+ 6 ♖e1! ♖g3+ 7 ♖d1 ♖f2 and Black wins the queen.” (Chigorin)

It is the same result after 2... ♖xh4 3 ♖xf3 ♖h3+ 4 ♖f2 ♖h2+ 5 ♖e1 ♖g3+ 6 ♖d1 ♖h2. It is just terrible for White to play 2 ♖xf3 ♖f4+ 3 ♖g2 ♖g3+ 4 ♖f1 ♖f7+.

2 ... ♖h6 - d2+
 3 ♕g2 - g1 ♕h4 - f2+!
 4 ♕g1 - f1

“If 4 ♖xf2, then 4... ♖xh1+ 5 ♖g2 ♖h2+.” (Chigorin)

4	...	♞c6 - d4!
5	♙b2 x d4	♜d2 x c1+
6	♚f1 - e2	♞h7 x h1
7	♞d4 x f2	♜c1 x b1
8	g4 - g5	♜b1 - f1+

White resigned.



331
Gunsberg - Chigorin
Havana, 1890, 6th game of the match

Black to move

1 ... g7 - g5!!

“Black has organized the attack with unbelievable skill and inventiveness.” (Steinitz)

“This was a brilliant and profoundly planned sacrifice, which was quite difficult to calculate over the board in all its variations.” (Deutsche Schachzeitung).

2 ♞f2 x g4

“If 2 fg, then 2...f4! 3 ♞xg4 hg 4 ♚f1 ♜xh4+ 5 gh g3+ 6 ♚h3 ♞xg5+! 7 hg ♚h5#.” (Chigorin)

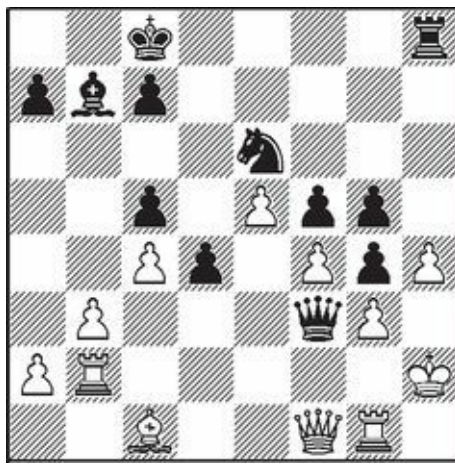
“Or 2 fg f4! 3 ♞xg4 hg 4 ♜gg2 ♞xg5 5 ♚g1 (or 5 ♞xf4 ♜xh4+ 6 gh ♚h3+ 7 ♚g1 ♞f3+) 5... ♚xg2+! 6 ♜xg2 ♞f3+ 7 ♚f1 ♞xe1, and Black wins. These variations are incredibly beautiful!”
 (Deutsche Schachzeitung)

In case of 3 ♞xf4 ♞xf4, White must play 4 ♚d1.

“If 2 ♚e2, then 2...gh 3 ♚xf3 ♞xf3 4 ♞xg4 hg 5 gh ♜xh4+ 6 ♚g3 ♜h3+ 7 ♚f2 ♞e4 8 ♚e1 d3! and Black’s position is winning.” (Nikolai Grekov)

2 ... h5 x g4
 3 ♚e1 - f1

“Black was threatening ♜xh4+ and ♚h3#.” (Chigorin)



332

3 ... ♖h8 x h4+!

“This charming surprise is the consequence of the extremely smart attacking plan on the kingside.”
(Steinitz)

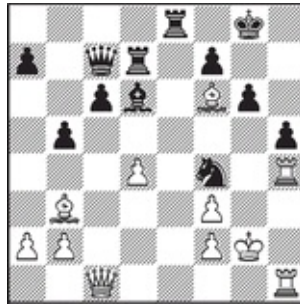
“This is the second ingenious sacrifice, which settles the issue.” (*Deutsche Schachzeitung*)

“Black was also winning after 3... gh 4 ♔xf3 hg++ 5 ♔xg3 ♖h3+ 6 ♔f2 ♖xf3+ 7 ♔e1 ♗xf4, etc.
His two passed pawns should decide the outcome of the game.” (Chigorin)

4 g3 x h4	g4 - g3+
5 ♖g1 x g3	♗f3 x f1
6 ♖g3 - g1	♗f1 - f3
7 f4 x g5	♘e6 - f4
8 ♙c1 x f4	♗f3 x f4+

Black won.

How Would You Play?



333

Blackburne - Schwartz
Berlin, 1881

White to move



334

Kupfer - Silski
Walka, 1881

White to move



335

Chigorin - Schmidt
Berlin, 1881

White to move



336

Chigorin - Otto
Saint Petersburg, 1881

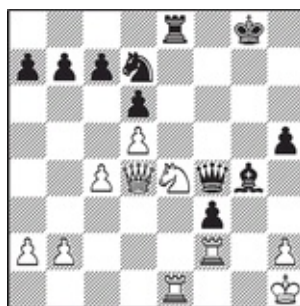
White to move
White played without the b1-knight



337

Winawer - Chigorin
Warsaw, 1882

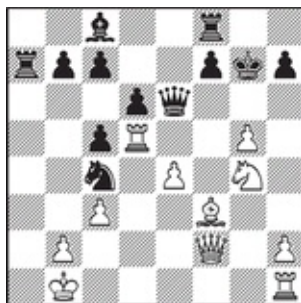
Black to move



338

Helving - Chigorin
Correspondence game, 1882

Black to move



339

Blackburne - McKenzie
London, 1882

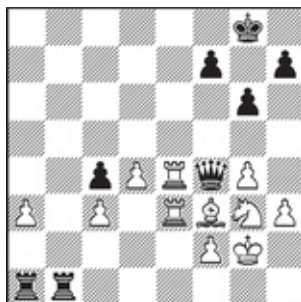
Black to move



340

Steinitz - Weiss
Vienna, 1882

White to move

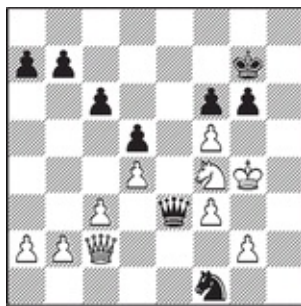


341

Meitner - Steinitz

Vienna, 1882

Black to move



342
Vittek - Meitner
Vienna, 1882

Black to move



343
Berger - Kotz
Germany, 1882

White to move



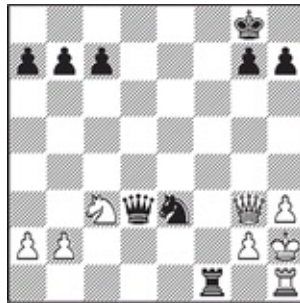
Richter - Tarrasch
Halle, played in between 1882 - 1885

Black to move



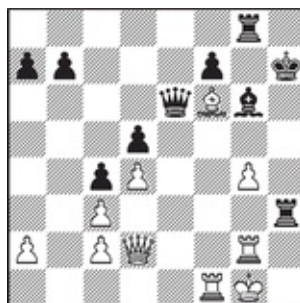
345
Schwartz - Tarrasch
Nurnberg, 1883

Black to move



346
Riemann - Tarrasch
Leipzig, 1883

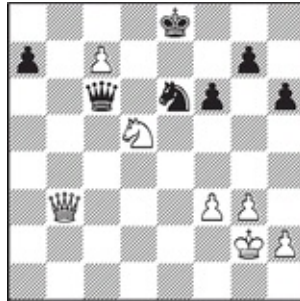
Black to move



347

Tarrasch - Scheve
Nurnberg, 1883

White to move



348

Zukertort - Englisch
London, 1883

White to move



349

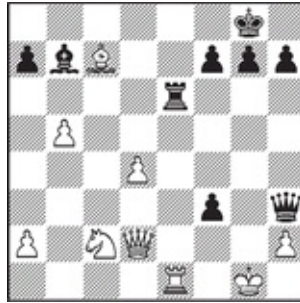
Weiss - Schalopp
Nurnberg, 1883

Black to move



350
Blackburne - Steinitz
London, 1883

White to move



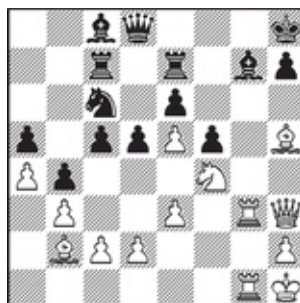
351
Steinitz - Rosenthal
London, 1883

Black to move



352
Chigorin - Sellmann
London, 1883

White to move



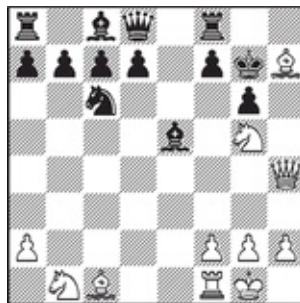
353
Chigorin - Sellmann
London, 1883

White to move



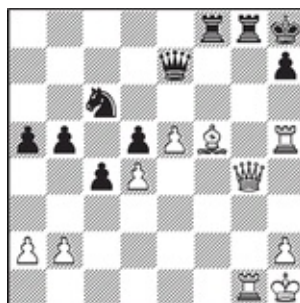
354
De Riviere - Chigorin
Paris, 1883

Black to move



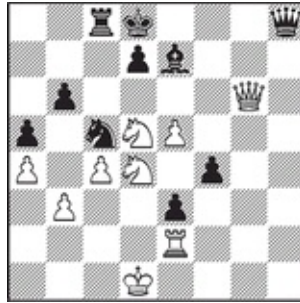
355
Chigorin - Alapin
Saint Petersburg, 1883

White to move



356
Solovtsov - Chigorin
Moscow, 1884

White to move



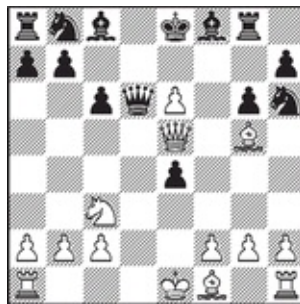
357
Chigorin - Solovtsov
Moscow, 1884

White to move



358
City of Cardiff - City of Bristol
Correspondence game, 1884

Black to move



359

Steinitz - Reiner
New York, 1885

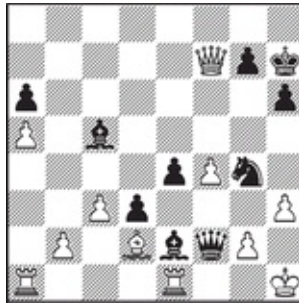
White to move



360

McKenzie - NN
Birmingham, 1885
Simultaneous display

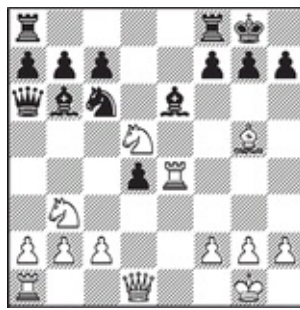
White to move



361

Arnold - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1884
Simultaneous display - blindfolded

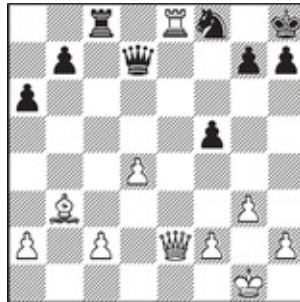
Black to move



362

**Chigorin - Alapin
Saint Petersburg, 1885**

White to move



363

**Lipschutz - Schalopp
London, 1886**

White to move



364

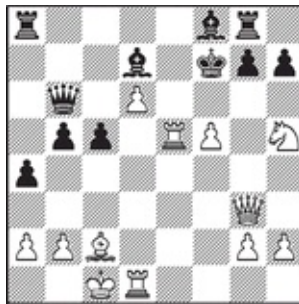
**Neumann - NN
Vienna, 1886**

White to move



365
Zukertort - Steinitz
USA, 1886

White to move



366
Steinitz - Sands
New York, 1887

White to move



367
Richardson - Delmar
New York, 1887

White to move



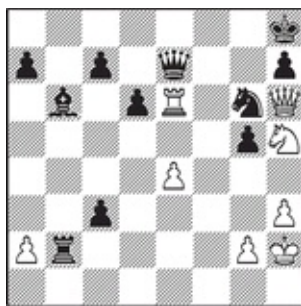
368
Owen - Burn
Liverpool, 1887

White to move



369
Bachmann - Fiechtl
1887

White to move



370
Fritz - Blackburne
Frankfurt, 1887

Black to move



371

Taubenhaus - Halpern
Germany, 1887

White to move

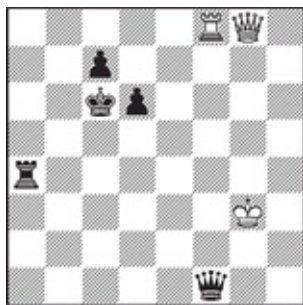


372

Eckart - Tarrasch
Nurnberg, 1887

Black to move

Black played without the f7-pawn



373

Tarrasch - Schallop
Frankfurt, 1887

Black to move



374

Kurschner - Tarrasch
Nurnberg, 1888

White to move

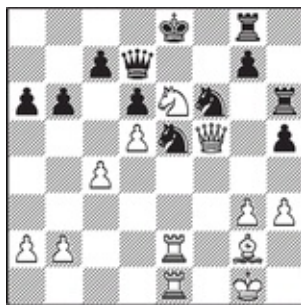


375

Eckart - Tarrasch
Nurnberg, 1888

Black to move

Black played without the f7- pawn



376

Mieses - Tarrasch
Leipzig, 1888

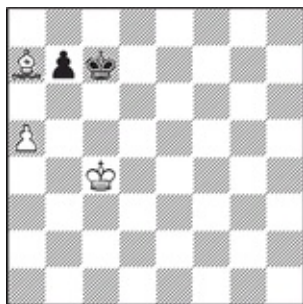
White to move



377

Falk - Solovtsov
Moscow, 1888

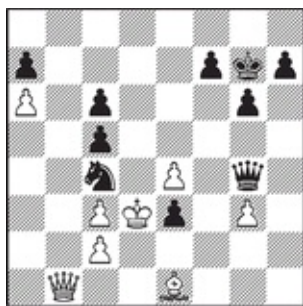
Black to move



378

Paulsen - Metger
Nurnberg, 1888

Black to move



379

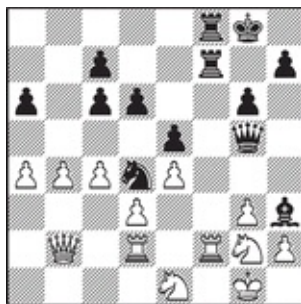
Paulsen - Tarrasch
Breslau, 1889

Black to move



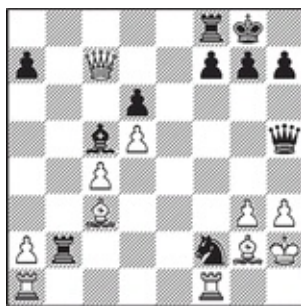
380
Showalter - Gossip
New York, 1889

Black to move



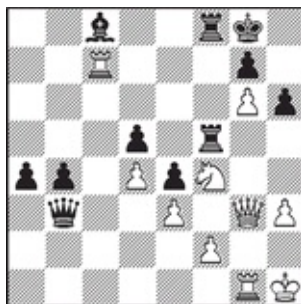
381
Mason - Gunsberg
New York, 1889

Black to move



382
Lasker - Polner
Berlin, 1889

Black to move



383

Blackburne - Lipschutz
New York, 1889

White to move



384

Blackburne - Hanham
New York, 1889

White to move



385

Chigorin - Gossip
New York, 1889

White to move



386

Pollock - Chigorin
New York, 1889

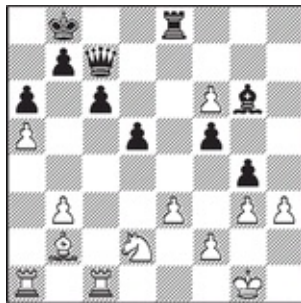
Black to move



387

Delmar - Chigorin
New York, 1889

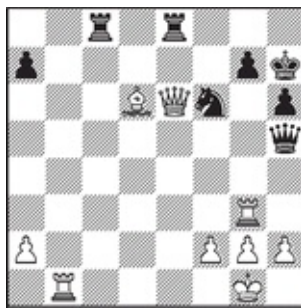
Black to move



388

Delmar - Chigorin
New York, 1889

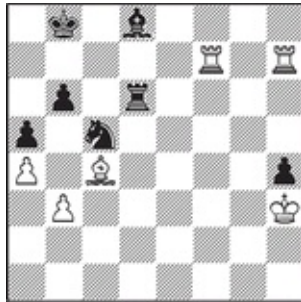
Black to move



389

**Chigorin - Bird
New York, 1889**

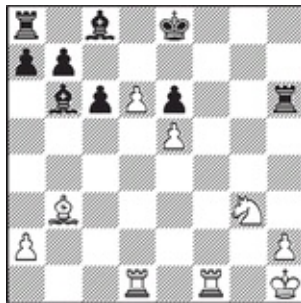
White to move



390

**Chigorin - Steinitz
Havana, 1889, 3th game of the match**

White to move



391

**Chigorin - Steinitz
Havana, 1889, 7th game of the match**

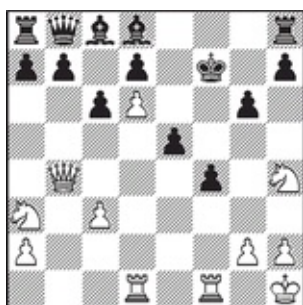
White to move



392

Steinitz - Chigorin
Havana, 1889, 8th game of the match

White to move



393

Chigorin & Pons - Steinitz & Gavilan
Havana, 1889

White to move



394

McKenzie - Parnell
1890

White to move



395

**Lasker - Bird
Liverpool, 1890**

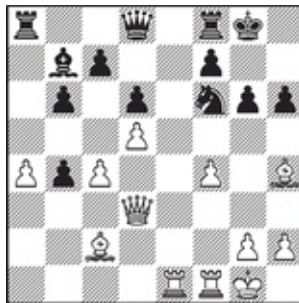
White to move



396

**Lasker - Scheve
Berlin, 1890**

White to move



397

**Chigorin - Gunsberg
Havana, 1890, 11th game of the match**

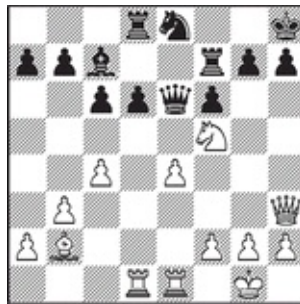
White to move



398

**Tarrasch - Gunsberg
Manchester, 1890**

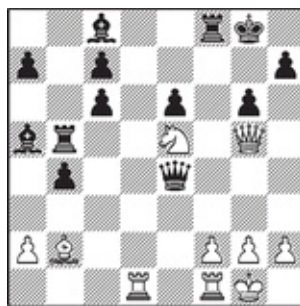
White to move



399

**Tarrasch - Blackburne
Manchester, 1890**

White to move



400

**Tarrasch - Kelz
Nurnberg, 1890**

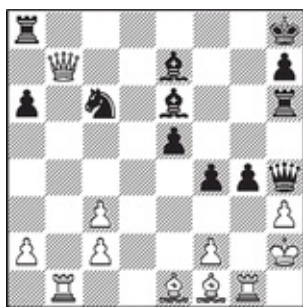
White to move



401

**Kurschner - Tarrasch
Nurnberg
played in between 1890 -1892**

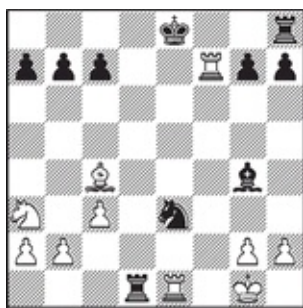
Black to move



402

**Eckart - Tarrasch
Nurnberg
played in between 1890 -1892**

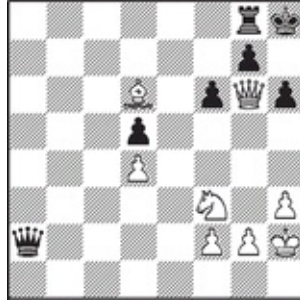
Black to move



403

**Tarrasch - Eckart
Nurnberg
played in between 1890 -1892**

White to move



404

**Schiffers - Kalinsky
correspondence game**

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 333. 1 ♔xf4! ♕xf4 2 ♖xh5! Black resigned. (2...gh 3 ♖xh5)

Diagram 334. 1 ♕f7+! ♔xf7 (or 1...♔d7 2 ♖xg4+ f5 3 ♖xf5#) 2 ♘xe5++ ♔e6 (or 2...♔e7) 3 ♖f7#.

Diagram 335. 1 ♖h7! (This is spectacular indeed, but you have to agree that 1 ♖e5! is just as good: 1... de 2 ♘xe5+ ♖xe5 3 ♖h6#, or 1...♖xe5 2 ♖h6#, or 1...♖xf6 2 ♖h6+! ♔xh6 3 ♖xf6+ ♖g6 4 ♖h5+! ♔xh5 5 ♖h4#.) 1...♖xf6 (or 1...♔xh7 2 ♖xg5 ♘g6 3 ♖h1+ ♔g8 4 ♖h8+!) 2 ♖h6+! ♔xh6 3 ♖xf6+ ♖g6 (after 3...♘g6, Black would have resisted for a few more moves.) 4 ♖h1#.

Diagram 336. 1 ♖e7! ♘xe7? (“A peculiar position: almost all continuations by White lead to interesting and surprising variations with sacrifices. If Black had played 1...♖h3, then 2 ♖fx7 ♖xf7 3 ♖xf7 ♖xh5 4 ♖xg7+ and 5 ♖g8#. Or 3...♕xc3 4 ♖xh7+ ♔f8 5 ♖f7+ ♔e8 6 ♖xg6 and White would be still winning.” -Chigorin. The correct move for Black was 1...♖c6+.) 2 ♖xf7? (Why not 2 ♕xf7+?. Black is mated after that: 2...♔h8 3 ♕xg7+ ♔xg7 4 ♖e5+ ♔h6 5 ♖f4+ ♔g7 6 ♖f6#.) 2...♖c6+ 3 ♖f3+ ♔h8 4 ♕d5 (It is also interesting for White to play 4 de, for example, 4...♖xf3 5 e8 ♖+ ♖f8+ 6 ♖xc6 ♘xc6 7 ♖h6 ♖f1+ 8 ♔g2 ♕xc3 9 bc ♕h3+ 10 ♔xh3, or 9...♖f5 10 g4!) 4...♖e8? (It is better for Black to defend with 4...♘f5, or 4...♖xc3) 5 ♖h6 (5 de! is simpler 5...♘f5 (“If 5...♖g8, then 6 ♕xg8 ♖xg8 7 ♖xg7+! ♖xg7 8 de!; Black cannot prevent White from promoting his pawn, since he must also parry the mate threat ♖f8#.” - Chigorin) 6 ♖xf5 ♖e1+ (“Or 6...♖g8 7 ♕xg8 ♖xg8 8 ♖xg7+ ♖xg7 9 ♖f8#; 7...♖e1+ 8 ♔g2 ♖e2+ 9 ♖f2, and White wins.” - Chigorin) 7 ♕xe1 ♕xh6? (This was Black’s last mistake; it would be better for him to continue with 7...♘f5, although after 8 ♕c3, White would maintain his advantage.) 8 ♕c3+ ♖f6 9 ♖xf6 ♔g7 10 ♖f4+ ♔g6 11 ♕f7+ ♔g5 12 ♕f6#.

Diagram 337. 1...♕d4! 2 ♖xd4 (or 2 ♖b3 ♕xb2) 2...♖xf3+ 3 ♖g2 ♕h3 4 ♖g1 ♖e8 5 ♖c3 ♕xg2+! 6 ♖xg2 ♖xe4! 7 ♖xf3 ♖e1+, and it is all over.

Diagram 338. 1...♘c5! 2 ♖fe2 (“An interesting position arises after 2 ♘f6+ ♔f7!!, and Black wins.” - Chigorin) 2...♖e5! “With this move the following variations were included in the mailed response: 3 ♖e3 ♘xe4 4 ♖xf4 ♘f2+ 5 ♔g1 ♘h3+ 6 ♔h1 ♘xf4 7 ♖xe5 de 8 ♔g1 f2+; 3 ♘f6+ ♖xf6 4 ♖xe5 de 5 ♖xe5 (or 5 ♖xe5 ♔f7 and f3 -f2) 5...♖xe5 6 ♖xe5 f2 7 ♔g2 ♕h3+ 8 ♖xf2 ♘d3+; 3 ♖e3 f2, and Black wins.” (Chigorin) White resigned.

Diagram 339. 1...♖xd5! 2 ed ♕f5+ 3 ♖c2 (or 3 ♔c1 ♖a1#) 3...♖a1+! 4 ♔xa1 ♕xc2 and 5...♖a8# cannot be stopped.

Diagram 340. 1 ♖xd4! cd (or 1...♕xe5 2 fe+) 2 ♕a3+ ♕e7 (or 2...♖e7 3 ♕xe6) 3 ♕xe6 ♕xa3 (defending against 4 ♖xg8#.) 4 ♘g6#.

Diagram 341. 1...♖g1+ 2 ♔h2 ♖h1+! 3 ♜xh1 ♚xf2+ 4 ♜g2 ♚g1#.

Diagram 342. 1...♚xf4+!? (This spectacular sacrifice wins for Black, but it would have been much more effective for him to play 1...♚e1!, after which White loses because he has no satisfactory defense against 2...♚g3# and 2...♞e3+.) 2 ♖xf4 ♜g5+ 3 ♚g4 ♞e3+, followed by 4...♞xc2, and Black won.

Diagram 343. 1 ♚h8+! ♞xh8 2 ♖g7#.

Diagram 344. 1...♞e2+ 2 ♔h1 ♖xh2+! 3 ♔xh2 ♖h8+ 4 ♜h6 ♚h4#.

Diagram 345. 1...♜c5+ 2 ♔h1 ♞f2+ 3 ♖xf2 (or 3 ♔g1 ♞h3++) 3...♚d1+ 4 ♞g1 ♚xg1+! 5 ♖xg1 ♖d1#.

Diagram 346. 1...♞g4+! 2 ♚xg4 (“Or 2 hg ♖xh1+ winning the queen.” - Tarrasch) 2...♚d6+ 3 ♜g3 ♚d2+ 4 ♞e2 ♖f2+ 5 ♔g1 ♚e1#.

Diagram 347. 1 ♖f3! ♖h6 (or 1...♖xf3 2 ♖h2+ ♜h5 3 ♖xh5+ ♔g6 4 ♚h6#, or 4 ♖h6#) 2 ♚xh6+! ♞xh6 3 ♖h2+ ♜h5 4 ♖xh5+ ♔g6 5 ♖g5+ ♔h6 (or 5...♔h7) 6 ♖h3#.

Diagram 348. 1 ♚b5!! ♚xb5 2 c8♚+ ♔f7 (or 2...♞d8 3 ♞c7+) 3 ♚xe6+! ♔xe6 4 ♞c7+, and after 5 ♞xb5, White wins a piece.

Diagram 349. 1...♜xe3 2 fe gf 3 ♚f1 ♞g4!. White resigned. (4 ♖xg4 ♚xf1+; 4 ♚xh3 ♞f2#)

Diagram 350. 1 ♚h6+ ♔g8 (or 1...♔h8 2 ♖f8+ followed by mate) 2 ♖f8+! ♚xf8 3 ♚xh7#.

Diagram 351. 1...♖g6+ 2 ♜g3 ♖xg3+! 3 hg f2+! 4 ♔xf2 (or 4 ♚xf2 ♚h1#) 4...♚g2+ 5 ♔e3 ♚f3#.

Diagram 352. 1 ♚xg5! ♞xd5 (or 1...hg 2 ♖xh8+ ♔d7 3 ♜c6+ ♔e6 4 ♞d5! and White wins) 2 ♚xd5 ♜b7 3 ♞c6! ♜xc6 (or 3...♚d7 4 ♖e5+!) 4 ♚xc6+ and White won.

Diagram 353. 1 ♞g6+! (or 1 ♜g6! h6 2 ♞h5 and Black is helpless) 1...hg? (Black had to give up the exchange.) 2 ♜xg6+ ♔g8 3 ♚h7+ ♔f8 4 ♜h5! ♖f7 (“White was threatening 5 ♚h8+ and mate next move.” - Chigorin) 5 ♖xg7! Black resigned. (5...♖xg7 6 ♚h8+)

Diagram 354. 1...♞g5! 2 ♔h1 (“Or 2 fg ♜xh2+ 3 ♖xh2 ♖xh2 4 ♖xf5+ ♔g6 winning.” - Nikolai Grekov) 2...♞f3 White resigned. (“Black is threatening mate in three - 3...♖xh2+ etc., and if 3 ♚c2, then 3...g3 4 ♖e2 ♞xh2” - Nikolai Grekov)

Diagram 355. 1 ♖e6+! (Also interesting is 1 ♖g8) 1...fe? (Black should play 1...de, giving up his queen after 2 ♜h6+ ♔f6 3 ♘g5+, because here, as Chigorin wrote, “White checkmates in no more than 10 moves.”) 2 ♜h6+ ♔f7 3 ♘xg6+ ♔e7 4 ♜h4+ ♖f6 (If 4...♔d6, then 5 ♘a3+ and mate in two” - Chigorin) 5 ♘a3+! d6 (“Black could have postponed being mated for a couple of moves by giving up his knight and the c7-pawn.” -Chigorin) 6 ♜h7+ ♔f8 7 ♜h8+ ♔e7 8 ♜g7+ ♖f7 9 ♜xf7#.

Diagram 356. 1 ♖xh7! ♖xg4 2 ♘e4+! Black resigned. (or 2...♔g7 3 ♖h7+; 2...♔g8 3 ♘xd5+ ♖f7 4 ♖xg4+ ♔f8 5 ♖h8#)

Diagram 357. 1 ♖h2! ♜f8 (“It is obvious that if Black captures the rook, he gets mated in two.” - Chigorin) 2 ♜xb6+ ♔e8 3 ♖h7 ♖c6 (“The bishop has no square to retreat to, because of the threat of a check with the queen from the g6-square.” -Chigorin) 4 ♜b8+ ♘d8 5 ♘xc6 ♘e6 6 ♜xd8+! (or 6 ♘c7+!) 6...♘xd8 7 ♘c7#.

Diagram 358. 1... ♜f3+! 2 gf ♘h3#.

Diagram 359. 1 ♖d1! ♜xe6 (or 1... ♜xe5 2 ♖d8#; 1... ♘g4 2 ♖xd6! ♘xe5 3 ♖d8#) 2 ♘c4! Black resigned. (2... ♜xe5 3 ♖d8#)

Diagram 360. 1 ♖xf5! (White could have also played 1 h5+ ♘xh5 2 ♖xf5 ♜xf5 3 ♖f1+ ♔g6 4 ♜xe4+” - Schiffers) 1... ♔xf5 (Black would not have saved the game either with 1... ♖f8 2 h5+ ♘h7 3 ♖af1.) 2 ♘f7! ♘xd4 3 ♖f1+ ♘f3+ 4 gf gf 5 ♖xf3+! ♔g4 6 ♖f4+ ♜xg3 7 ♜h2#.

Diagram 361. 1... ♜xg2+!! 2 ♔xg2 ♘f3+ 3 ♔f1 (or 3 ♔g3 ♘f2#) 3... ♘h2#.

Diagram 362. 1 ♘f6+! gf (“1... ♔h8 2 ♜h5 h6 3 ♘xh6!” - Nikolai Grekov; or 2... ♘f5 3 ♖h4 and White wins.) 2 ♘xf6 ♘f5? (“After 2... ♖fc8 3 ♜h5, Black’s king has nowhere to hide: 3... ♜f8 4 ♜xh7 ♔e8 5 ♖xe6+ fe 6 ♖e1 ♜c4 7 ♖e5, threatening ♖e5-g5.” - Neistadt) 3 ♜h5 Black resigned.

Diagram 363. 1 ♜c4! Black resigned. (1... ♖xc4 2 ♖xf8#; 1... ♜(♖)xe8 2 ♜g8#)

Diagram 364. 1 ♖e8+! (or 1 f3? ♘xg3!) 1... ♘xe8 (or 1... ♘g8?? 2 ♖xg8#) 2 ♜h7+!! ♔xh7 3 ♘f8+ ♔h8 4 ♘g6+ with perpetual check and a draw.

Diagram 365. 1 ♖xg7!. Black resigned. (1... ♖xg7 2 ♖xg7 ♜xg7 3 ♘xe6+ and 4 ♘xc7)

Diagram 366. 1 ♜g6+! hg 2 fg#.

Diagram 367. 1 ♘f6+! gf 2 ♜f8+! ♔xf8 3 ♘h6+ ♔g8 4 ♖e8#.

Diagram 368. 1 ♖g1+ ♜h8 (or 1... ♘g7 2 ♖xg7+) 2 ♚xf6+! ♘xf6 3 ♜xf6#.

Diagram 369. 1 ♚xf6+! ♜f2 ♜h6+ ♚g8 3 ♘xf6#.

Diagram 370. 1... ♘h4! (or 1... ♚xe6?? 2 ♚g7#; 1... ♜g1+ 2 ♚h1!) 2 ♚f6+! (or 2 ♖xe7?? ♖xg2+ 3 ♚h1 ♖g1+ 4 ♚h2 ♘f3#) 2... ♚g8! (or 2... ♚xf6?? 3 ♖e8+ ♚f8 4 ♖xf8#) 3 ♖xe7 ♖xg2+ 4 ♚h1 ♖g1+ Draw by perpetual check.

Diagram 371. 1 ♖e1 ♘xd4+ 2 ♚xd4! ♚xe1 3 ♚a4+ b5 4 ♚xb5+ ♚e7 5 ♚d7+ ♚f6 6 ♘xd5+ ♚e5 (or 6... ♚g6 7 ♚f5+ and 8 ♜xf4+) 7 ♜xf4+ ♚d4 8 ♘c3+ ♚c5 9 ♘a4#.

Diagram 372. 1... ♚f2+! 2 ♚xf2 ♖d1+ 3 ♜e3 ♜xe3#.

Diagram 373. “After 1... ♖f4!! White resigned. Besides 2... ♖xf8, Black is threatening 2... ♚f2+ and 3... ♜h4#.” (Tarrasch) If 2 ♖xf4, then 2... ♚g1+ and 3... ♚xg8.

It was even stronger for Black to follow with 1... ♖a3+, as this forces mate in a few moves. It is amusing that in his notes to the previous move, Tarrasch had written, “In similar positions whoever checks first wins.”

Diagram 374. 1 ♚xg6+! ♜f2 ♖xg6+ ♚f7 (or 2... ♚h7 3 ♖g7#) 3 ♖g7+ ♚e6 4 ♖e8+ ♜e7 (or 4... ♚f6 5 ♜g5#) 5 ♖exe7+ ♚f6 6 ♜g5#.

Diagram 375. 1... ♜xd5! 2 ♘xf6+? (It is more tenacious for White to defend with 2 ♜xf6 ♜c4+ 3 ♚g1 ♘e2+ 4 ♚f1 ♚d7 5 ♘d2.) 2... ♚xf6! 3 ♜xf6 ♜c4+ 4 ♚g1 ♘e2+ 5 ♚f1 ♘c1+ 6 ♚g1 ♖e1#.

Diagram 376. 1 ♖xe5! de 2 ♖xe5 ♚f7 3 ♘g5+ ♚f8 4 ♖e6 (White is threatening 5 ♖xf6+, while in case of 4... ♚d8, he continues with 5 d6, followed by ♜c6.” - Tarrasch) 4... ♚a4 5 b3! Black resigned. “The queen cannot protect the e8-square any more, so White wins with 6 ♖e8+ ♚xe8 7 ♚c8+ (or 7 ♚e6+, if Black’s queen cannot cover the king) 7... ♚e7 8 ♚e6+ and White mates in one.” (Tarrasch)

Diagram 377. 1... ♖e3! White resigned. (2 fe ♚xf3+ 3 ♖g2 ♚xg2#; 2 ♘xe3 ♚xf3+ 3 ♖g2 fe 4 ♚f1 e2)

Diagram 378. 1... b5+! (or 1... ♚c6? 2 ♚b4 b6 3 a6!, winning) 2 ab+ (or 2 ♚xb5 ♚b7 drawing) 2... ♚b7 (Black can also play 2... ♚c6 or 2... ♚c8, leading to a theoretically drawn position.) 3 ♚b5 ♚a8 4 ♜b8 (This is the last attempt; 4 ♚a6, or 4 ♚c6 is stalemate.) 4... ♚xb8 5 ♚c6 ♚c8 Draw. (6 b7+ ♚b8 7 ♚b6 is stalemate.)

Diagram 379. 1... ♘e5+! 2 ♚xe3 ♚f3+ 3 ♚d2 ♘c4+ 4 ♚c1 ♚e2. White resigned. This is an astounding situation for a grandmasters’ game - White is helpless against mate in one.

Diagram 380. 1...♘f3+! 2 gf (or 2 ♖h1 ♘xh4) 2...♙xf3+ 3 ♙g3 ♚xg3+! 4 hg ♜xg3+ 5 ♖h2 ♙xf2 6 ♙h3 ♜xh3+! 7 ♖xh3 ♜h8#.

Diagram 381. 1...♙xg2 2 ♖xg2 (or 2 ♘xg2 ♘f3+ and Black wins the exchange) 2...♚e3 3 ♖f1 ♘b3! White resigned. (4 ♜de2 ♜xf2+ 5 ♜xf2 ♘d2+)

Diagram 382. 1...♚xh3+! (or 1...♘g4+ 2 ♖h1 ♚xh3+! 3 ♙xh3 ♜h2#) 2 ♖h1 (or 2 ♙xh3 ♘g4++ 3 ♖h1 ♜h2#) 2...♚h1+! 3 ♘xh1 ♘h3#.

Diagram 383. 1 ♜xg7+! ♖xg7 (or 1...♖h8 2 ♜h7+ ♖g8 3 g7) 2 ♘h5+! ♜xh5 (or 2...♖g8 3 ♚c7) 3 ♚c7+ ♖f6 4 ♚d6+ and Black's position is hopeless. (4...♖g7 5 ♚e7+ with mate; 4...♙e6 5 ♚xf8+ ♙f7 6 ♚xf7#)

Diagram 384. 1 ♚xh7+! ♖xh7 2 ♜h3+ ♖g7 3 ♙h6+ ♖h8 4 ♙xf8#.

Diagram 385. 1 ♘c4 ♚a6 (or 1...♙e6 2 ♙xe6 ♚a6 3 ♙xf5) 2 ♙g5+! ♖xf7 3 ♘d6#!.

Diagram 386. 1...♙xh3! 2 gh (or 2 ♜fe1 ♜e4 and 3...♚g4) 2...♜8xe3! 3 ♜ce1 ("It is obvious that if 3 fe, then Black plays 3...♚xh3 4 ♜f2 ♚g3+ and he wins." - Steinitz) 3...♚xh3 4 ♜xe2 ♜xe2 5 ♜b1 ♜e4 (or 5...♜e6). White resigns. (6 ♜b4 ♜e1#)

Diagram 387. 1...g5! 2 ♘g6 Chigorin wrote about this position: "If 2 ♚xg5, then 2...♜eg8 3 ♚h5 ♙g6 4 ♚g5 ♜h5. If 2 ♘hf3, then 2...g4! 3 hg fg (It is also good for Black to play 3...♜eg8, threatening ♘f6 and ♙g6) 4 ♚xg4 ♜eg8 5 ♚e6 ♙d3 6 ♘f1 ♜g6 7 ♚f7 ♜f8 8 ♚h7 ♜xg2+, winning the queen." 2...♘f6 3 ♚h6 ("If 3 ♚xg5, then 3...♚g7, winning a piece" - Chigorin.) 3...♜hg8 4 ♘e5 ♙xe5 5 de ♜g6 6 ♚xg6 ♙xg6, and Black won.

Diagram 388. 1...♜xe3! ("An artistic combination." - Steinitz) 2 fe ♚xg3+ 3 ♖h1 ("If 3 ♖f1, then 3... f4, threatening ♙d3#, 4 ♖e2 f3+ with mate in a few moves." - Chigorin) 3...♚xh3+ 4 ♖g1 ♚xe3+ 5 ♖f1 g3 6 ♙e5+ ♚xe5 7 ♜e1 ♚d4. White resigned.

Diagram 389. 1 ♜xg7+!! ♖xg7 2 ♜b7+ ♖g6 3 ♚f7+ ♖f5 4 ♜b5+ ♖e4 5 f3+ ♖e3 ("After 5...♖d3, there would be no forced checkmate, but Black would not have saved the game anyway." - Steinitz) 6 ♚b3+ ♖e2 ("If 6...♖d2, then 7 ♙f4+ ♖e1 8 ♚b1+ ♖e2 9 ♚f1#. Or 7...♖e2 8 ♚b2+, followed by ♚d2+ etc." - Steinitz) 7 ♚b2+ ♖d3 ("An amazing finish of the game would have occurred after 7...♖d1 8 ♚b1+. If here 8...♖d2, or 8...♖e2, then it would be the same checkmate as in the game, while after 8...♜c1, White would mate by 9 ♚d3+ ♖e1 10 ♙g3#." - Steinitz) 8 ♚b1+ ♖e2 9 ♜b2+ ♖e3 10 ♚e1+ ♖d4 11 ♚d2+ ♖c4 12 ♜b4#.

Diagram 390. 1 ♙f1! ("White is threatening ♙g2 and ♜a7." - Steinitz) 1...♘e6 ("If 1...♘xb3,

then 2 ♖b7+ ♕c8 3 ♗a6, threatening ♖c7+ and ♖c8#” - M. Chigorin) 2 ♖d7! (“If 2 ♖b7+, then 2... ♕c8, and Black is threatening to play ♗c7, cutting off the rook and winning the exchange.” - Steinitz) 2... ♖c6 (“The endgame after 2... ♗g5+ 3 ♕g4 ♗xh7 4 ♖xd6 is lost for Black; for example, 4... ♕c7 5 ♖h6 ♗f6+ 6 ♕f5 ♗d7 7 ♗b5 ♗c5 8 ♕e5 ♗xb3 9 ♖h7+ ♕b8 10 ♕d6, etc.” - Evgeny Vasjukov, Alexander Nikitin) 3 ♕g4 ♖c7 4 ♗c4 ♖xc4+ 5 bc ♕c8 6 ♖d6 ♗c5 7 ♖c6+ ♕b8 8 ♖h8. Black resigned. (“If 8... ♗b7, then 9 ♖xb6.” - Steinitz)

Diagram 391. 1 ♗e4. Black resigned. (“In case of 1... ♗d8, White follows with 2 d7+ ♗xd7 3 ♗d6+ ♕e7 4 ♖f7#.” - Chigorin)

Diagram 392. 1 ♖xe5! fe 2 ♗xe5 g5 3 ♗g6+ (White can also continue 3 ♗xd7) 3... ♕f8 4 ♖xd7 ♕a7 5 ♖f5+ ♕g8 6 d7. Black resigned.

Diagram 393. 1 ♖xf4+! ♕g7 M. Chigorin wrote, “If 1...ef, then 2 ♖xf4+ ♕g7 3 ♖f1 ♖g8 (Black’s only move; if 3... ♗xh4, then 4 ♖d4+ ♕g8 5 ♖c4+ ♕g7 6 ♖f7+.) 4 ♖d4+ ♕h6 5 ♖f7 ♗g5 (Black plays this because of the threat 6 ♖e3+ ♗g5 7 ♗f5+ and 8 ♖h3+.) 6 ♖g4, threatening ♖h3; if 6... ♖g7, then 7 ♖h3 ♖xf7 8 ♗f5#.”

2 ♗f5+!! (“By playing 2 ♖af1, White would have forced his opponent to capture the rook, transposing into the position analyzed in our notes to the previous move. The move in the game is much more resolute.” - Chigorin) 2...gf 3 ♖xf5 ♖g8 4 ♖df1! b5 5 ♖g4 and White wins. (5... ♕h8 6 ♖f8 ♗g5 7 ♖xg5)

Diagram 394. 1 ♖xf5! ♕xf5 (Or 1... ♗bd7 2 ♖xf6+! ♗xf6 3 h5+ ♗xh5 4 ♖xg4+ ♕g5 5 ♖xe4+ ♖f5 6 ♗f7+! ♕g5 7 ♖e3+ ♕h4 8 g3+ ♕h3 9 ♗xh5, with a win for White.) 2 ♗f7! e3 (or 2...g3 3 ♖f1+ ♕g4 4 ♖f4#) 3 ♖d3+ (It is more precise for White to finish with 3 ♖f1+ ♕e4 4 ♖d3#.) 3... ♗e4 4 ♖xe4+! ♕xe4 5 ♗c3+ ♕f5 6 ♖f1#.

Diagram 395. 1 ♗g6+ ♕h7 2 ♗g5+! hg 3 ♖h1#.

Diagram 396. 1 ♖xd3! ♖xd3 (or 1... ♖xd3 2 ♖xa8+) 2 ♖e8+! Black resigned. (2... ♕h7 3 ♖h5#; 2... ♖xe8 3 ♖xd3)

Diagram 397. 1 ♖e6! b3 (or 1...fe 2 ♖xg6+ ♕h8 3 ♗xf6+) 2 ♗xf6 ♖d7 3 ♗c3! (“No doubt White should win after 3 ♗b1 as well, but the move in the game forces Black to resign sooner.” - Chigorin) 3...f6 4 ♗xf6 ♖xf6 5 ♖xf6 bc 6 ♖xg6+ ♕f8 7 ♖f6+ ♕e7 8 ♖g6 Black resigned.

Diagram 398. 1 ♗xe6! fe (or 1... ♖xe6 2 ♖xe4) 2 ♖xe4. Black resigned. It is amazing, but in the year 1887, Tarrasch won just like this against Zukertort.

Diagram 399. 1 ♗h6! ♖xh3 (“Black would not change anything with 1... ♖e7, because of 2 ♖xe6 and 3 ♗f7+.” - Tarrasch) 2 ♗xf7+ ♕g8 3 gh ♖xf7 4 f4 ♕e6 5 ♖g2, and White pressed his material advantage home.

Diagram 400. 1 ♖f7! (“The other, almost as beautiful, move 1 ♘g4, would have been a blunder, because of 1... ♗xg2+! and 2... ♖xg5.” - Tarrasch) 1...e5 (or 1... ♖xg5 2 ♘h6#; 1... ♖xf7 2 ♖d8+ ♖f8 3 ♗f6) 2 ♘h6+ (In the correspondence game Sandford - Breton, 1895, White won after 2 ♗f6) 2... ♖h8 3 ♖d8 ♗g7 (but not 3... ♖xd8 4 ♗f6#) 4 ♖xf8 (“It is also possible for White to play 4 ♗e7+, followed by ♗xf8+.” - Tarrasch) 4... ♖xf8 5 ♗f6+ ♖e8 6 ♘g8. Black resigned. The mating threat on e7 can only be parried by 6... ♗h4.” (Tarrasch)

Diagram 401. 1...h4+! 2 ♗xh4 (or 2 ♖h3 ♘f2#) 2...f4+ 3 ♖h3 ♘f2#.

Diagram 402. 1... ♗xh3+! 2 ♖xh3 ♖xh3+ 3 ♖g2 f3+ 4 ♖f1 ♖c4#.

Diagram 403. 1 ♖ff1! (“Black evidently overlooked this beautiful move and here he loses a piece.” - Tarrasch) 1... ♖e2 2 ♖xe2 (“Of course not 2 ♖xe2, because of 2... ♖xf1#.” - Tarrasch) Black resigned.

Diagram 404. 1 ♘e5! (“It was stronger and also more beautiful for White to follow with 1 ♘g5! fg 2 ♖e5” - Schiffers) 1... ♖c8 (or 1...fe 2 ♖xe5 ♗d2 3 f4, threatening 4 ♗xh6#) 2 ♘f7+. Black resigned in view of 2... ♖g8 3 ♘xh6+ ♖h8 4 ♘f5 ♗a7 5 ♖e7.

IX

Lasker and Pillsbury (1891 - 1900)

Combination is a possible impossibility! It is a divine spark which exists independently of all the other chess ideas and illuminates the chess game as a meteor.

Saviely Tartakower

The rivalry between Steinitz and Chigorin continued. In April 1891, Chigorin won a mini-match of two games against Steinitz played on the telegraph.

“Never has a chess competition attracted such tremendous and literally total interest, as that match.” Steinitz wrote.



405

Steinitz - Chigorin 1890 - 1891, 2nd game of the match on the telegraph

Black to move

1 ... ♖f5 x e4!

“This is a beautiful queen sacrifice based on a profound evaluation of the position.” (Grekov)

2 ♕c2 - e2!

“If 2 ♕xe4, then 2... ♖xf2+! 3 ♕xf2 ♕xe4 4 ♖f3 ♖f8 5 ♕g2 ♖g6 (threatening ♖xf3) 6 ♖he1 ♕xe1 7 ♖xe1 ♖h4+ 8 ♕xh4 ♕xf3+ 9 ♕g1 ♖f4 etc.” (Chigorin)

2	...	♙e4 x f3!!
3	♖e2 - e6+	♚g8 - h7
4	♙b2 x d4	♙f3 x h1
5	♖e6 - h3	♘e7 - f5
6	♙d4 - e5	♗a8 - e8
7	♙e5 - f4	♘f5 - d4

“This move was stronger than 7...♖e4.” (Schiffers)

8 ♙h3 - d3+

“If 8 ♙xh6, Black would have played 8...gh 9 ♖d7+ ♖e7 10 ♖xd4 ♖g8 11 f3 (or 11 ♖d3+ ♙e4 12 ♖h3 ♖eg7, and if 13 ♘f3, then 13...♙d3#) 11...♙g2+ 12 ♖f2 ♘b7 13 ♖d3+ ♖h8 14 ♘e2 ♙c5+ 15 ♖e1 ♖e3 and Black wins.” (Steinitz)

8	...	♙h1 - e4
9	♖d3 x d4	♗f8 x f4
10	f2 - f3	

“But not immediately 10 ♖xa7 ♖g4 11 f3 ♙d3+ 12 ♖f2 ♖g5, threatening ♙c5+.” (Chigorin)

10	...	♗e8 - f8
11	♖d4 x a7	c6 - c5!

“Now White’s queen is cut off and Black’s knight enters the action.” (Schiffers)

12	♖a7 - c7	♘a5 - c6!
13	a2 - a3	

“It was no better for White to defend with 13 ♖g2 ♖xf3! 14 ♘xf3 ♖xf3 15 ♖b6 ♘d4, etc.” (Chigorin)

“If 13 ♖d1, then 13...♘d4 14 ♖xd4 cd, etc.” (Schiffers)

Black’s advantage is already decisive.

The final combination of this encounter can be found in the section “How Would You Play?”

Chess society in Saint Petersburg was quite excited by the victory of its leading player, and several days after the end of the telegraphic match, Steinitz was invited to play another serious match against Chigorin. It was again held in Havana. Once again, just as in 1889, the world champion Steinitz defeated the challenger, but this time it was in a tough, and even dramatic, fight. Steinitz won 10 games, Chigorin won eight, and five games ended in a draw.

Chigorin’s combinative skills were on display in the very first game of the match. At the critical moment, after the 19th move of the game, he inflicted a surprising tactical blow, which provoked lively discussion among the top chess players.



406

Chigorin - Steinitz
Havana, 1892, 1st game of the match

White to play

1 ♖d6 x f7!?

“This beautiful and profound combination by Chigorin inspired great admiration at the time; the game was acknowledged as the best in the entire match. It has been reprinted endless times.” (Grekov).

“Meanwhile, the combination is fundamentally incorrect, since it activates the presently-idle forces of the opponent, and with best defense White’s victory is highly problematic. Instead, White could have won easily with 1 a5. After 1... ♗xa5, he would play 2 ♖xb7 ♕d8 3 ♕a4 h6 4 ♘xf5 ♘xf5 5 ♕xc6 ♖c8 6 ♗b5, or 3...h5 4 ♘g5 ♘xd6 5 ed ♘f5 6 ♘xf7 ♕c8 7 ♖fb1 ♗b6 8 ♕a6. Black simply succumbs to the superior force of his opponent, since his rook on h8 is completely isolated from the action.” (Emanuel Lasker)

“There were two solutions in that position and they both led to victory ... No doubt, in such a case the choice between them is just a matter of style.” (Grekov)

1	...	♔g8 x f7
2	e5 - e6+	♔f7 x e6
3	♖f3 - e5!	♕d7 - c8?

“Black had to play 3... ♕e8 to try to neutralize White’s attack by sacrificing his queen. For example: 4 ♖e1 ♗f6 5 g4 h5 6 gf ♘xf5 7 ♘g4+ hg 8 ♖xe8 ♖xe8, or 6 ♗f3 g6, and White’s win would be far from clear.” (Emanuel Lasker)

Efim Bogoljubow did not agree with that opinion. He suggested the move 5 ♗xe7+ (instead of 5 g4). Then Serzhanov analyzed that variation more deeply and he found the following possibilities: 5... ♘xe7 (or 5... ♕xe7 6 ♘g4+) 6 ♕f3+ ♔e6 7 ♘f7+ ♔d7 8 ♕g4+ ♔c7 9 ♕f4+ ♔d7 10 ♕d6+ ♔c8 11 ♖xe7. Thus he proved that Chigorin’s combination had been correct.

4	♖f1 - e1	♔e6 - f6
5	♕d1 - h5	g7 - g6

“If 5... ♘g6, then 6 g4, threatening g4 - g5+!” (Chigorin)

6 ♖a3 x e7+

♔f6 x e7

“If 6... ♞xe7, then 7 ♚h4+ g5 8 ♞g4+ ♚f7 9 ♚xg5 and White wins; if 9... ♖e8, then White mates in two.” (Schiffers)

7 ♜e5 x g6+

♚e7 - f6

8 ♜g6 x h8

♞b6 x d4

“If 8... ♚xh8, then White can follow with 9 ♖e5 ♚c8 10 g4; or 8... ♚d7 9 ♖b3! ♖xh8 10 ♖f3 ♖g8 11 ♖e5 ♖g5 12 ♚h6+ ♖g6 13 ♖xf5+ ♚xf5 14 ♚f8+.” (Chigorin)

9 ♞b1 - b3

♞c8 - d7

10 ♞b3 - f3

♞a8 x h8

11 g2 - g4

♞h8 - g8

12 ♞h5 - h6+

♞g8 - g6

13 ♞f3 x f5+

Black resigned. (13... ♚xf5 14 ♚f8+)

The best game by Steinitz also had a tactical conclusion.
(see next digram)

1 ♖h1 x h7+!

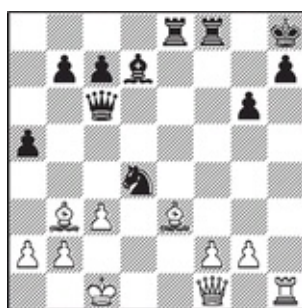
“...Despite my old age I can still hold my own.” (Steinitz)

1 ...

♚h8 x h7

2 ♞f1 - h1+

♚h7 - g7



407

Steinitz - Chigorin

Havana, 1892, 4th game of the match

White to play

3 ♜e3 - h6+

♚g7 - f6

Or 3... ♚h8 4 ♜xf8+ ♚h3 5 ♚xh3#.

It is no good for Black to play 4...g5 because of 5 ♔xg5#.

5 ♖h4 x d4+

Black resigned. (5...♔f5 6 ♖f4#, or 6 g4#)

Meanwhile Tarrasch enjoyed success in tournaments during 1889 - 1892, and his game was highly regarded. In 1892 he challenged Chigorin-to a match. The negotiations about the conditions of the match lasted for more than a year.

Tarrasch wrote: “Amidst the tranquility and the silence of the summer of 1893, we came to an agreement for a match between the famous Russian chess maestro and me. I had received an exquisitely phrased invitation, from the Saint Petersburg Chess Society to play a match there, and I had no reason to decline it. In addition, Chigorin had emphasized before how important our encounter would be for the development of the game of chess in Russia.”

The match met with great enthusiasm among chess fans in Russia, and it turned into a tough fight between the two worthy competitors. It ended in a draw, as each player won nine games and drew four.



408

Tarrasch - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1893
5th game of the match

White to play

1 ♖f3 x e5!

“This was a fatal surprise for Black. If he captures the queen, then White follows with 2 ♘xf6+ gf 3 ♘xf7+ ♔f8 4 ♘h6#, or 2...♔f8 3 ♘f(e)d7+ ♔xd7 4 ♘xd7+.” (Tarrasch)

1	...	d6 x e5
2	♖d5 x f6+	g7 x f6
3	♗d1 x g4	♕e7 - g6

“But not 3...♔xd3, because of 4 ♖d1.” (Tarrasch)

4 ♖b3 - d5 ♜a8 - b8
5 f2 - f4 c7 - c6

“Black’s position is completely lost and he is trying desperately to complicate the game somehow.”
(Tarrasch)

6 ♗d5 x c6+ ♔e8 - e7
7 ♗c6 - d5

“Black was threatening to win his opponent’s bishop after 7... ♚b6+.” (Tarrasch)

7 ... b5 - b4
8 f4 x e5!

“It would have been simpler and more reliable, although not so aggressive, for White to have followed with 8 ♗e3 ♗b6 9 d4.” (Tarrasch)

8 ... ♚d8 - b6+
9 ♔g1 - h1

“But not 9 d4, in view of 9... ♞xe5, followed by 10...bc.” (Tarrasch)

9 ... ♞g6 x e5
10 ♚g4 - h5 ♞e5 - g6



409

Position after Black’s move ten

11 ♜f1 x f6!

“Second surprise for Black.” (Tarrasch)

11 ... ♔e7 x f6
12 ♗c1 - g5+ ♗f6 - g7

“If 12... ♖e5, then 13 ♗e7+ with a checkmate on the next move.” (Tarrasch)

13 ♖h5 - h6+	♔g7 - g8
14 ♗a1 - f1	♗b8 - f8
15 ♗g5 - f6	♖b6 x f6
16 ♗f1 x f6	

Black resigned.

“The checkmate after 17 ♖xg6+, followed by 18 ♗xg6# is impossible to parry, because after the retreat of the knight, White would play 17 ♗g5+.” (Tarrasch)

At the beginning of the 1890s, Karl Schlechter’s remarkable chess career began. The native of Vienna was a theoretician and chess composer as well as a tournament player.

The following combination occurred in a game which was called by his contemporaries, “The immortal game of Schlechter.”



410

**Fleisig - Schlechter
Vienna, 1893**

Black to move

1 ...	♗b5 - d5+
2 ♖d1 - c1	♗f2 - e3+!
3 ♗f4 x e3	♗e4 - f2!

This brilliant strike clarifies the situation. It turns out that Black’s queen is capable of dealing with White’s king by itself, because after 4 ♗xf2, Black has the resource: 4... ♗d2+ 5 ♖b1 ♗d1+ 6 ♖a2 ♗xc2#! and the line 4 ♗g5+ f6 only prolongs the game for a while.

During these years Emanuel Lasker achieved remarkable success. In 1891- 1892 he practically conquered England, crushing the best British players in matches. In 1893 he took the first prize in the New York International. He was thrilled with his achievement and he challenged the world champion to a match.

“I understand that it would be a difficult fight.,” Lasker said. “I will need to mobilize all my forces in order to beat Steinitz. I will have to think my combinations over much more deeply than before. I hold a high opinion of Steinitz’ abilities, and I know that it would be hard for me to wrest from him

the title of world champion, which he has defended proudly and honorably for more than a quarter of a century. Still, I have more than enough confidence to undertake that challenge. I believe the upcoming match will be the most important one among all that have been played before now.”

The match occurred in 1894. It was held in three North American cities (New York, Philadelphia, and Montreal) and it ended in a convincing victory for Lasker, who won ten games, losing five, with four draws in between.

The next combination gave Steinitz his first point in the match:



411

**Steinitz - Lasker
New York, 1894
2nd game of the match**

White to play

1 ♖g1 x g6!	♔h7 x g6
2 ♜f3 - f5+	♔g6 - f7
3 ♜f5 x h5+	♔f7 - g8
4 ♜h5 x c5	

White easily converted his material advantage.

Accordingly, Lasker became the second official world champion. Still, the world required a new convincing proof that Lasker was the best of the best. The new champion had the chance to prove that in the following year at the International Tournament in Hastings. Lasker failed to do that, however; and he came in only third after Pillsbury and Chigorin.

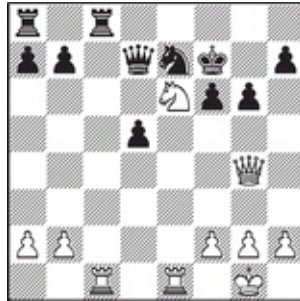
Here is what Lasker said:

“Fate was quite kind to me, since I managed to prevail over Blackburne as well as over the old veteran Steinitz, in my matches. In 1895, based on a relatively subjective evaluation, four players could be considered superior to the others: Steinitz, Tarrasch, Chigorin and I. It seemed that the fight should be among ourselves. The occasion proved to be the tournament in Hastings. We witnessed there the birth of a new style, represented there by the remarkably talented 23-year-old Harry Pillsbury, who won the first prize. The participants were soon in for another surprise. Besides Pillsbury, the Hungarian Géza Maróczy and his friend Rudolf Charousek had unbelievable success.

In addition, there were swiftly progressing players, the French-Prussian master Yanovsky and the Austrian Schlechter, who soon became first-rank.”

Let us go back to Hastings, though. We offer you three delightful combinations from that tournament.

The first combination, one of the most spectacular in the history of chess, is from the game which was acknowledged to be the best of the tournament. The second is from the game which was awarded the prize as the second-best, and the third was played by the winner of the event.



412
Steinitz - Bardeleben
Hastings, 1895

White to play

1 ♖e6 - g5+! ♔f7 - e8
2 ♚e1 x e7+!!

It was also possible for White to play 2 ♘h7!, and if 2... ♚xg4, then 3 ♘xf6+ and 4 ♘xg4 with an extra pawn for White. Had Steinitz chosen that line, the art of chess would have suffered a great loss.

Now miracles start happening.

2 ... ♔e8 - f8!

Black can't play 2... ♚xe7 in view of 3 ♖xc8+, while against 2... ♔xe7, the first world champion had prepared the following variation: 3 ♖e1+ ♔d6 (or 3... ♔d8 4 ♘e6+ ♔e7 5 ♘c5+) 4 ♚b4+ ♔c7 (or 4... ♖c5 5 ♖e6+) 5 ♘e6+ ♔b8 6 ♚f4+ ♖c7 7 ♘xc7 ♚xc7 8 ♖e8#.

3 ♚e7 - f7+!!

White could not capture Black's queen, because 3... ♖xc1+ would be mating. It is considerably weaker than the text for White to play 3 ♖xc8+ ♖xc8 4 ♖f7+. Why? Play the game over and pay attention to the notes to move ten.

3 ... ♔f8 - g8!

Black cannot capture the rook: 3... ♔xf7? 4 ♖xc8+, or 3... ♔xf7?? 4 ♔xd7+.

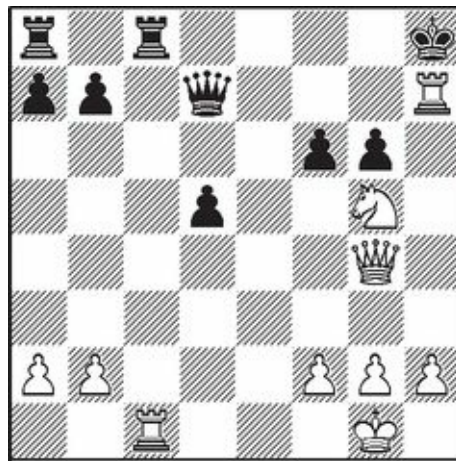
4 ♜f7 - g7+!!

Black's queen is again untouchable, because of the attack against the c1-square.

4 ... ♔g8 - h8!

Black's king is like a crab going back and forth. It is again bad for him to capture the rook, and White cannot capture Black's queen either. The black monarch cannot go to the other side, because after 4... ♔f8, White wins with 5 ♞xh7+.

5 ♜g7 x h7+!!

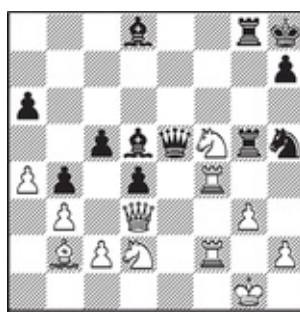


413

We see on this diagram the position after White's move five. Here something absolutely unexpected happened. Without saying a word, von Bardeleben stood up from the board, left the tournament hall and did not come back.

Later Steinitz demonstrated a possible finish of the game: 5... ♔g8 6 ♖g7+ ♔h8 7 ♞h4+ ♔xg7 8 ♞h7+ ♔f8 9 ♞h8+ ♔e7 10 ♞g7+ ♔e8; or 10... ♔d8 11 ♞f8+ ♔e8 12 ♞f7+, and 13 ♞d6#; while if 10... ♔d6, 11 ♞xf6+.

We must also mention the following important detail: If Steinitz had played the intermediate move 3 ♖xc8+, Black's king would have been able to retreat to the c-file in this variation. 11 ♞g8+ ♔e7 12 ♞f7+ ♔d8 13 ♞f8+ ♔e8 14 ♞f7+ ♔d7 15 ♞d6#.



414

**Tarrasch - Walbrodt
Hastings, 1895**

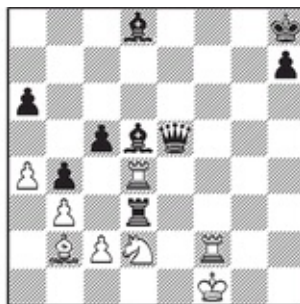
White to move

1 ♖f4 x d4! ♗h5 x g3

Black answers the sacrifice with a sacrifice of his own. He cannot play 1... cd, due to 2 ♗xd4, or 1... ♗f6, because of 2 ♖xd5 ♗xb2 3 ♖xd8. Black's best defense is 1... ♗f6 2 ♖xd5 ♗xb2 3 ♗e4.

2 ♗f5 x g3 ♖g5 x g3+
3 h2 x g3 ♖g8 x g3+
4 ♔g1 - f1! ♖g3 x d3

What should White do now? If 5 ♖xd3?, then 5... ♗xb2, while if 5 ♖xd5?, Black would play 5... ♖xd5.



position after Black's move four

415

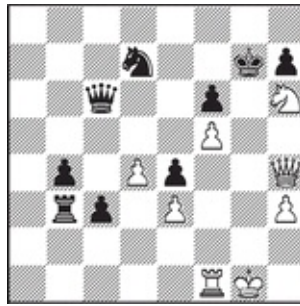
Position after Black's move four

5 ♖d4 - g4!!

Now, in answer to 5... ♗xb2, White checkmates: 6 ♖f8+ ♗g8 7 ♖f(g)xg8#. Altogether a brilliant

combination.

Black resigned.



416

**Pillsbury - Tarrasch
Hastings, 1895**

White to move

1 ♖h4 - g3!

Before playing this move, White had to calculate thoroughly the consequences of a similar line starting with 1 ♖g4+. As we will see later, this choice was extremely important.

1 ... ♗g7 x h6

1... ♖f8 does not work, because of 2 ♖g8+ ♗e7 3 ♖xb3, nor does 1... ♖h8, because of 2 ♖g8#, or 2 ♘f7#.

2 ♖g1 - h1!

But not 2 ♖f4? due to perpetual check (2... ♖b1+ etc.).

2 ... ♖c6 - d5
3 ♖f1 - g1! ♖d5 x f5?

It seems much better for Black to play 3... ♖f7! 4 ♖h4+ ♖h5 5 ♖f4+ ♖g5 6 ♖xg5 ♖f6 7 ♖d6+ ♖h5 8 ♖xd7 ♖h4 9 ♖f6 ♖h5 10 ♖f7 ♖b1+.

4 ♖g3 - h4+	♖f5 - h5
5 ♖h4 - f4+	♖h5 - g5
6 ♖g1 x g5	f6 x g5
7 ♖f4 - d6+	♖h6 - h5
8 ♖d6 x d7	

If White had played 1 ♔g4+ on move one, then on move three Black would have continued with 3... ♖f7 and later the game would have developed similarly, except that Pillsbury would have preserved his f5-pawn. Is that good for him? It seems to be, but in fact it is not. Black would then have the move 8... ♖h4, which is not possible now, because of 9 ♔g4#!. (See the notes to the third move.)

9 ... c3 - c2
10 ♖d7 x h7#!

The supremacy of the chess world required clarification. The Chess Society of Saint Petersburg organized at the end of 1895 and the beginning of 1896 a match tournament in which the four best players in the world participated. Lasker won first prize in that event. See how he prevailed over his 1894 match opponent.



417

Lasker - Steinitz
Saint Petersburg, 1895

White to move

1 ♖f3 - g5! ♖d8 - d7

Black is beyond salvation: 1... ♖e7 2 cd cd 3 ♖xd6! and White's knights are untouchable, because of 4 ♖f7+; 1... ♖f8 2 g3, winning the exchange. After 1... ♖xe4 2 ♖xf4! ef 3 ♖f7+ ♖g8 4 ♖xd8. White wins.

2 ♖e3 x f4!

This is even stronger than 2 ♖f6.

2 ... e5 x f4
3 ♖e4 - f6! ♖g7 - e6

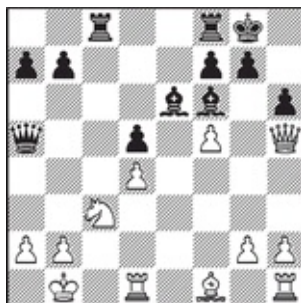
It is bad for Black to play 3... ♖b5, because of 4 ♖f7#. He cannot save the game in any case, though.

4 ♖f6 x d7 ♜e6 x g5
 5 ♝e1 - e7 ♔h8 - g8

6 ♜d7 - f6+ ♚g8 - f8
 7 ♝e7 x c7

Black resigned.

Here is how Lasker won against the talented American.



418
Pillsbury - Lasker
Saint Petersburg, 1896

Black to play

1 ... ♝c8 x c3!
 2 f5 x e6

“If 2 bc, then 2... ♝xc3 3 fe ♜c8 4 ef+ ♜f8 5 ♝e2 ♜xd4! and Black wins.” (Schiffers)

Following 3 ♝f3, Vladimir Zak recommends 3... ♝xf3 4 gf ♜xf5+ 5 ♜d3 ♜h3. White has good winning chances.

2 ... ♝c3 - a3!

“This move, like the entire game, is beautiful and can be considered the most exquisite in the tournament.” (Schiffers)

3 e6 x f7+

“Or 3 e7 ♜e8 4 ba ♝b6+ 5 ♜c2 (In case of 5 ♜a1, Black would have won by playing 5... ♜xd4+, followed by 6... ♜xe7) 5... ♜c8+ 6 ♜d2 ♜xd4 and White is beyond salvation.” (Emanuel Lasker)

3 ... ♝f8 x f7
 4 b2 x a3 ♜a5 - b6+
 5 ♜f1 - b5

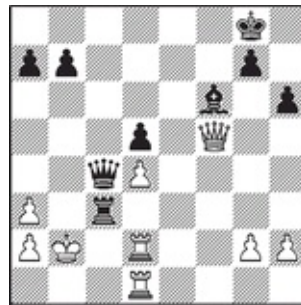
“That is the best for White. If, for example, 5 ♖c2, then 5... ♖c7+ 6 ♖d2 ♗xd4+ 7 ♗d3 ♖c2+ and Black would checkmate his opponent rather quickly.” (Emanuel Lasker)

5 ... ♗b6 x b5+
6 ♖b1 - a1 ♗f7 - c7?

“Black was in a time trouble here and he overlooked a simple win with 6... ♖c4. With that resource, he either won the d4-pawn, or he made the only defense for his opponent, 7 ♖d2, impossible, because he would then have 7... ♖c3+.” (Em. Lasker)

7 ♗d1 - d2 ♖c7 - c4
8 ♗h1 - d1 ♗c4 - c3
9 ♗h5 - f5 ♗b5 - c4
10 ♖a1 - b2?

“That was a mistake. White should play here 10 ♖b1.” (Emanuel Lasker)



419

position after White’s move ten

10 ... ♖c3 x a3!
11 ♗f5 - e6+ ♖g8 - h7

Schiffers considered the move 11... ♖h8 to be weaker than 12 ♖e8+. In fact, the move with the king to h8 was the best for Black: 12 ♖e8+ ♖h7 13 ♖xa3 ♖c3+ 14 ♖a4 a6! 15 ♖b1 b5+ 16 ♖xb5 ab+, and Black would win.

12 ♖b2 x a3?

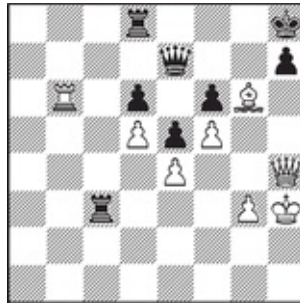
“In case of 12 ♖b1, Black would play 12... ♗xd4 13 ♖f5+ g6 14 ♖d7+ ♗g7 and he would win.” (Emanuel Lasker)

White’s best is 12 ♖f5+! ♖g8! (12... ♖h8 13 ♖b1! and the d4-pawn is untouchable, because of 14 ♖f8+) 13 ♖e6+, and Black must play 13... ♖h8, and later, as in the notes to move 11.

12	...	♖c3 - c3+
13	♙a3 - a4	b7 - b5!
14	♙a4 x b5	♖c3 - c4+
15	♙b5 - a5	♙f6 - d8+

Black mates on the next move. (16 ♖b6 ♗xb6# , or 16...ab#)

After his win at Saint Petersburg, Lasker convincingly took the first prize in Nurnberg (1896). He firmly established his right to be called the strongest player on the planet with his successes. Still, the first world champion Steinitz challenged Lasker to a return match. Steinitz failed, however, to regain his chess crown. The match in Moscow (1896 - 1897) resulted in a comprehensive victory for the new champion. Lasker won ten games; Steinitz won only two, and five games were drawn. Here is one of them:



420

**Lasker - Steinitz
Moscow, 1896
8th game of the return match**

White to move

Lasker's position had been lost for a long time, but Steinitz's mistake on the previous move enabled the new champion to draw.

1 ♖b6 - b7! ♖e7 x b7

“Black cannot play 1...♖c7 2 ♖xc7 ♗xc7 3 ♗xf6+ ♙g8 4 ♗f7+ etc.” (Euwe)

2 ♗h4 x f6+ ♙b7 - g7

But not 2...♙g8 3 ♗xd8+ ♙g7 4 ♗h5 etc.” (Euwe).

3 ♗f6 x d8+ ♙g7 - g8
4 ♗d8 - f6+

Draw by perpetual check.

Now we will set aside the legacy of the world champion for a while and we will see an amazing combination, by the president of the Carlsbad Chess Club, which made its city famous because of the

major tournaments held there during the twentieth century.



421

Titz - Romish
Carlsbad, 1898

White to move

This is the initial position according to Laszlo Polgar's *Chess Middlegames*. In Russian books devoted to combinations, White's pawn on f2 and the black pawn on e7 are absent, and that makes the following sacrifice quite senseless, since in that case White wins simply with the move 1 ♔c2.

1 ♖c1 x c6! ♔d7 x c6

It is better for Black to play 1... ♘b4 2 ab ♖xc6.

2 ♗d3 x b5+! ♔c6 x b5

After 2... ♖b7 3 ♗xe8, Black loses a piece, but now he is checkmated.

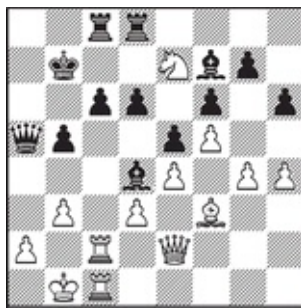
3 ♕d1 - a4+! ♔b5 - c4

Or 3... ♖xa4 4 ♘c3+ ♖b3 5 ♘d2#.

4 b2 - b3+ ♔c4 - d3
5 ♕a4 - b5+ ♔d3 - e4

6 ♗g6 - g4+
6 ♘fg3# is quicker.
6 ... ♔e4 - f5
Or 6... ♗f4 7 ♗xf4#.
7 ♘f1 - e3#

The International Tournament in London had attracted strong participants. The world champion was brilliant once again in that event. The next three examples are from his games.



422

**Chigorin - Lasker
London, 1899**

Black to move

1 ... ♖f7 x b3!
2 ♘e7 x c8

2 ♘xc6 (or 2 ab? ♔a1#) also loses: 2...♖xc6 3 ♖xc6 ♔b4.

2 ... ♗d8 x c8!
3 ♕e2 - d2

“If 3 ♖d2, then 3...♗f7.” (Schiffers) The other possibility, recommended by *Anthology of Chess Combinations*, is 3...♗a4, with a decisive advantage.

3 ... ♕a5 - a3
4 ♗c1 - h1 ♗c8 - a8
5 ♗h1 - h2 ♗b3 x a2+!
6 ♗c2 x a2 ♕a3 - b3+
7 ♘b1 - c1

“Or 7 ♖b2 ♗xb2 8 ♔xb2 ♗xd3+, etc.” (Schiffers).

7 ... ♗a8 x a2
8 ♕d2 x a2 ♗d4 - e3+
9 ♕a2 - d2 ♕b3 x d3

White resigned.

The following game between Lasker and Steinitz received the first prize at the tournament.



423

**Steinitz - Lasker
London, 1899**

Black to move

1	...	♘h4 x g2!!
2	♙g1 x g2	♕d7 x h3+!
3	♙g2 - f2	

“If 3 ♙xh3, then Black plays 3... ♕f5+ 4 ♙g2 ♕g4+ 5 ♙h1 ♕h3+ 6 ♙g1 ♕g3+ 7 ♙h1 ♖e4 8 ♕g5 ♖g4 9 ♖f2 ♕xf2, etc.” (Schiffers)

3	...	f7 - f6!
4	♖f1 - g1	

“In case of 4 ♖h1, Black would follow with 4... ♕f5, threatening ♕g3+.” (Schiffers)

4	...	g7 - g5
5	♕c1 x g5	

“This is White’s only defense.” (Schiffers)

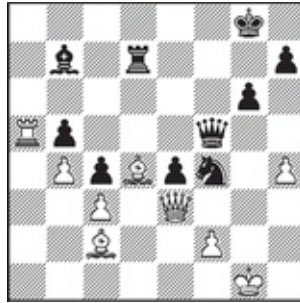
5	...	f6 x g5
6	♖g1 x g5	♕d5 - e6
7	♖d1 - d3	♕d6 - f4
8	♖a1 - h1	

“Black would counter 8 ♖h5 with 8... ♕g4 9 ♘h4 ♖xe2+, while if 8 ♖g7, then 8... ♕f5.” (Vladimir Zak)

8	...	♕f4 x g5
9	♘f3 x g5	♕e6 - f6+
10	♕e2 - f3	♕h3 - f5
11	♘g5 x h7	♖f6 - g6
12	♖d3 - b5	c7 - c6

13 ♖b5 - a5	♗e8 - e7
14 ♗h1 - h5	♘f5 - g4
15 ♗h5 - g5	♙g6 - c2+
16 ♘f2 - g3	♘g4 x f3

White resigned.



424

Lee - Lasker
London, 1899

Black to move

1 ... ♗d7 x d4!

After the end of the game, Lasker said that he had already calculated at this point the entire winning combination. Tarrasch managed to find a shorter road to the win for Black: 1... ♙g4+ 2 ♖f1 ♙g2+ 3 ♖e1 ♙g1+ 4 ♖d2 ♘g2 5 ♙e2 e3! 6 fe ♗f3!!.

2 c3 x d4
2 ♙xd4 fails to 2... ♗e2+.
2 ... ♙f5 - g4+
3 ♘g1 - f1

But not 3 ♙g3, because of the same move, 3... ♗e2+, once again.

3 ... ♙g4 - g2+
4 ♘f1 - e1 ♙g2 - g1+
5 ♘e1 - d2 c4 - c3+!

Here, Black could have won, “according to Tarrasch,”: 5... ♗g2 6 ♙e2 e3+! 7 fe ♗f3!.

6 ♙e3 x c3 ♙g1 x f2+
7 ♘d2 - d1 e4 - e3
8 ♘c2 - b3+ ♘g8 - g7
9 d4 - d5+ ♘g7 - h6
10 ♙c3 - e1 ♘b7 - c8!

White resigned.

The next combination was executed by one of the most influential players and writers in chess history, Aron Nimzowitsch.



425

Nimzowitsch - Neumann
Riga, 1899

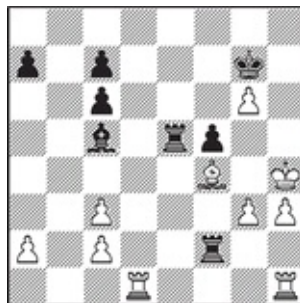
White to move

1 ♖f2 - f5+! ♘d4 x f5

Or 1... ♞e6 2 ♚xe6#.

2 e5 - e6#!

Finally, an example from the creative legacy of the eminent American master and theoretician Frank James Marshall:



426

Jackson - Marshall
USA, 1899

Black to move

1 ... ♔g7 x g6!
2 ♙f4 - g5

Or 2 ♖xe5 ♗e7+ 3 ♖f6 ♗xf6#.

2

...

♗f2 - f4+!

White resigned.

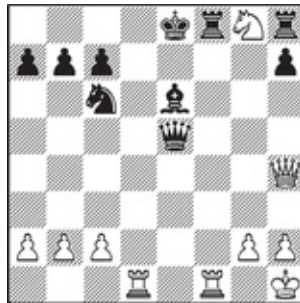
How Would You Play?



427

Steinitz - Chigorin, 1890 - 1991
2nd game of the telegraph match

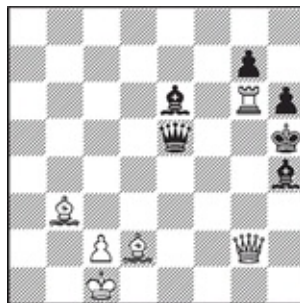
Black to move



428

Schlechter - NN
Vienna, 1891

White to move



429

Vaccaroni - Mazzoci
Rome, 1891

White to move



430

Janowski - David
Paris, 1891

White to move

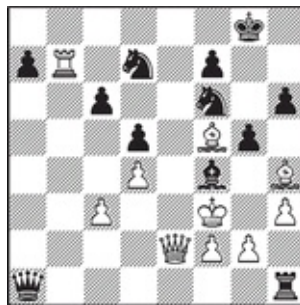
White played without the b1-knight



431

McKenzie - NN
Manchester, 1891

White to move



432

Leop - Schlechter
Vienna, 1892

Black to move



433

Tarrasch - Fiedler
Nurnberg, 1892

White to move

White played without a1-rook



434

Donisthorpe - Mundell
London, 1892

White to move



435

Chigorin - Steinitz
Havana, 1892, 7th game of the match

White to move



436

Steinitz - Chigorin
Havana, 1892, 8th game of the match

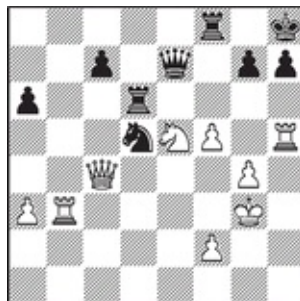
Black to move



437

Steinitz - Chigorin
Havana, 1892, 12th game of the match

Black to move

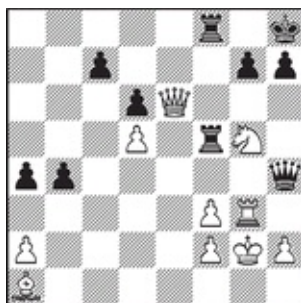


438

Chigorin - Steinitz

Havana, 1892, 15th game of the match

White to move

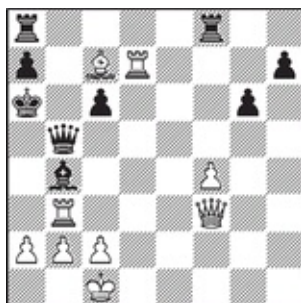


439

Chigorin - Steinitz

Havana, 1892, 17th game of the match

White to move

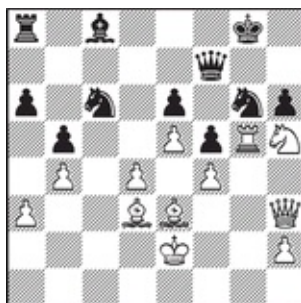


440

Chigorin - Steinitz

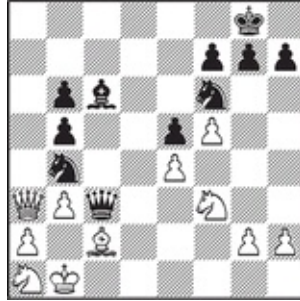
Havana, 1892, 19th game of the match

White to move



441
Chigorin - Solovtsov
Moscow, 1892

White to move



442
Steinitz - Pillsbury
Boston, 1892, simultaneous display

Black to move



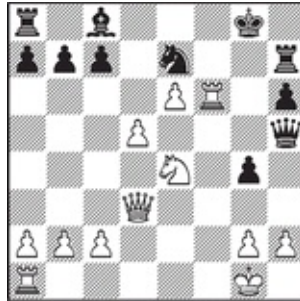
443
Tarrasch - Schroder
Nurnberg, in the period 1892-1894

White to move
White played his b1-knight



444
Pillsbury - Walbrodt
Boston, 1893

White to move



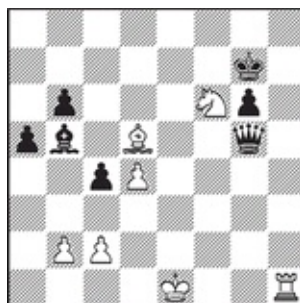
445
Steinitz - Berry
Montreal, 1893

White to move



446
Hausler - Tarrasch
Augsburg, 1893

White to move



447

**Tarrasch - Romberg
Augsburg, 1893**

White to move



448

**Tarrasch - Romberg
Nurnberg, 1893**

Black to move

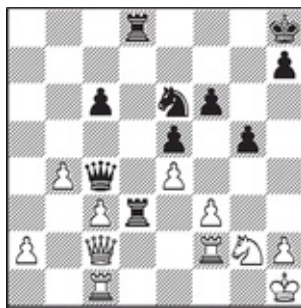
White played without his a1-rook



449

**Chigorin - Tarrasch
Saint Petersburg, 1893
6th game of the match**

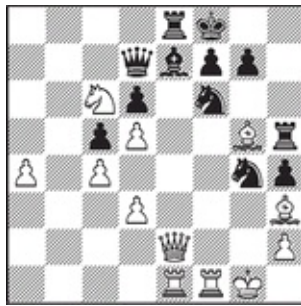
Black to move



450

Tarrasch - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1893
7th game of the match

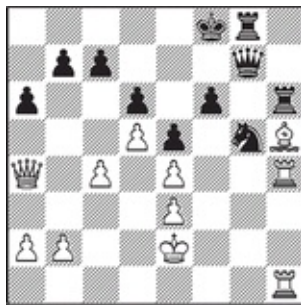
Black to move



451

Chigorin - Tarrasch
Saint Petersburg, 1893
8th game of the match

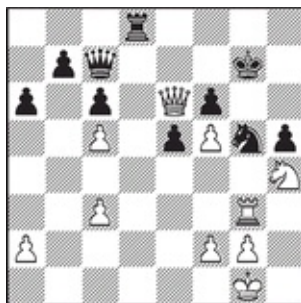
White to move



452

Tarrasch - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1893
15th game of the match

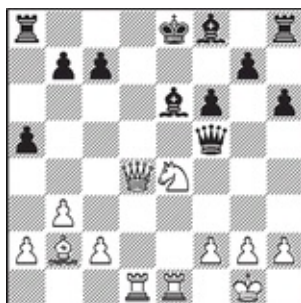
Black to move



453

Tarrasch - Chigorin
Saint Petersburg, 1893
17th game of the match

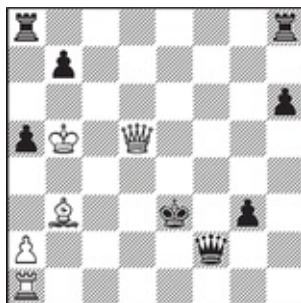
White to move



454

Pollock - Consultants
Buffalo, 1893

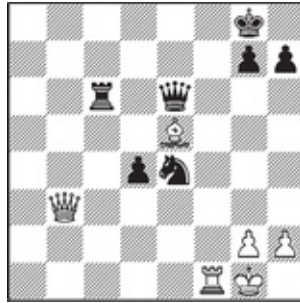
White to move



455

Schlechter - Thuring
Vienna, 1893

White to move



456

B. Lasker - Kagan
Berlin, 1894

White to move



457

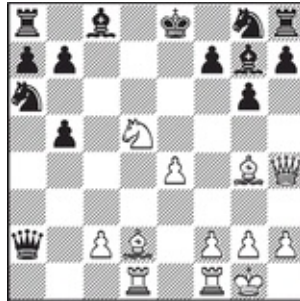
Fried - Schlechter
Vienna, 1894

Black to move



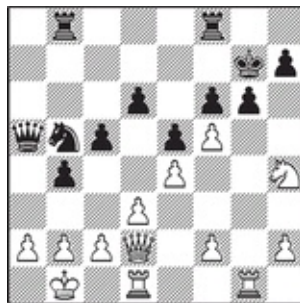
458
Schlechter - Wolf
Vienna, 1894

White to move



459
Dadiani - NN
1894

White to move



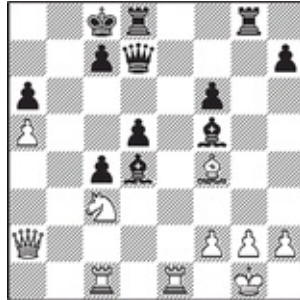
460
Walbrodt - Mieses
Berlin, 1894

White to move



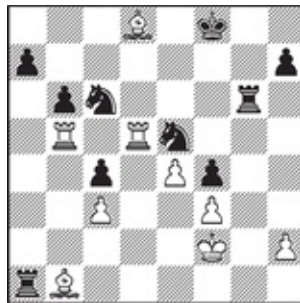
461
Chigorin - NN
Saint Petersburg 1894
simultaneous exhibition

White to move



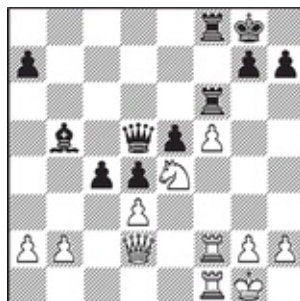
462
Chigorin - Lasker
Saint Petersburg, 1895

Black to move



463
Lasker - Chigorin
Hastings, 1895

Black to move



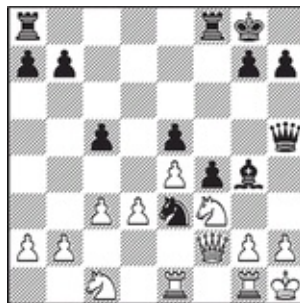
464
Tarrasch - Chigorin
Hastings, 1895

Black to move



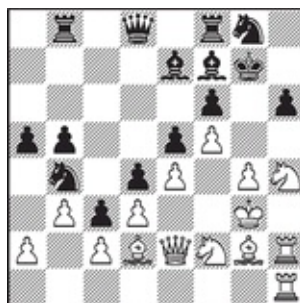
465
Chigorin - Janowski
Hastings, 1895

Black to move



466
Vergani - Chigorin
Hastings, 1895

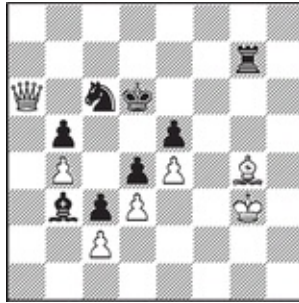
Black to move



467

Chigorin - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1895

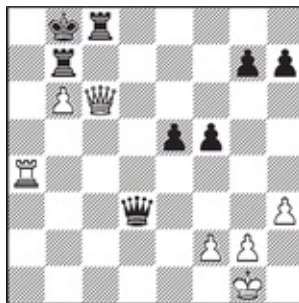
Black to move



468

Chigorin - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1895

White to move



469

Niederman - Zuks
1895

White to move



470

**Mieses - Oehquist
Nurnberg, 1895**

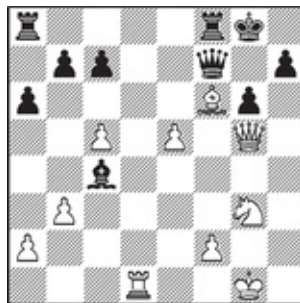
White to move



471

**Blackburne - Teichmann
Hastings, 1895**

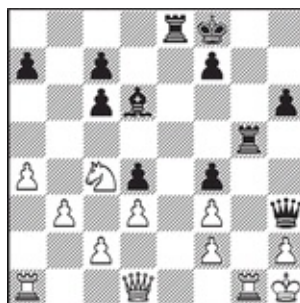
White to move



472

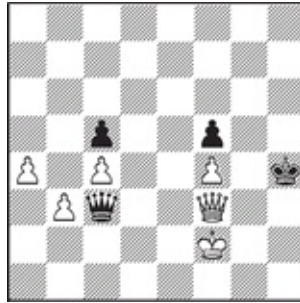
**Lasker - Steinitz
Hastings, 1895**

White to move



473
Auspitzer - Schlechter
Vienna, 1896

Black to move



474
Walbrodt - Charousek
Budapest, 1896

Black to move



475
Charousek - NN
Budapest, 1896

White to move



476

Hermann - Charousek
Budapest, 1896

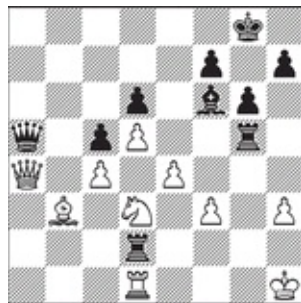
Black to move



477

Chigorin - Charousek
Nurnberg, 1896

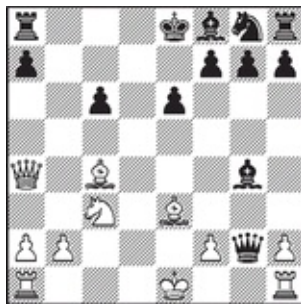
White to move



478

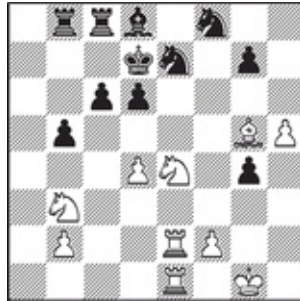
Schalopp - Chigorin
Nurnberg, 1896

Black to move



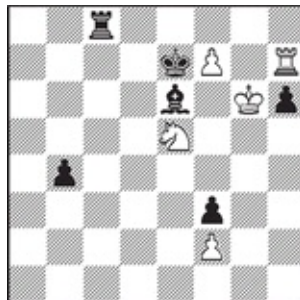
479
Janowski - Schallop
Nurnberg, 1896

White to move



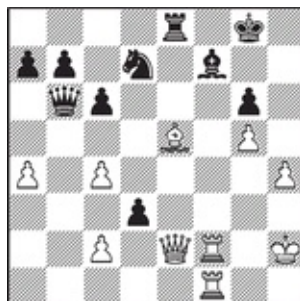
480
Lasker - Steinitz
Moscow, 1896
2nd game of the return match

White to move



481
Lasker - Schiffers
Nurnberg, 1896

White to move



482
Schiffers - Steinitz
Rostov-on-Don, 1896

White to move



483
Winawer - NN
1896

White to move



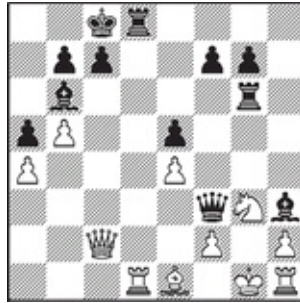
484
Janowski - Winawer
Vienna, 1896

White to move



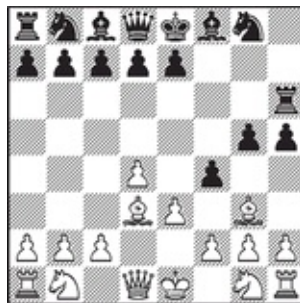
485
Tarrasch - Janowski
Budapest, 1896

Black to move



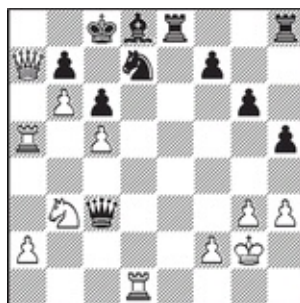
486
Troitzky - Voht
Saint Petersburg, 1896

White to move



487
Teed - Delmar
New York, 1896

White to move



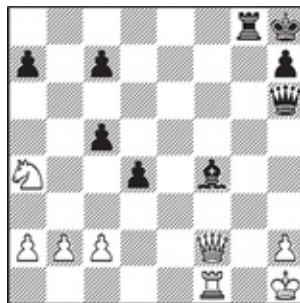
494
Chigorin - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1897

White to move



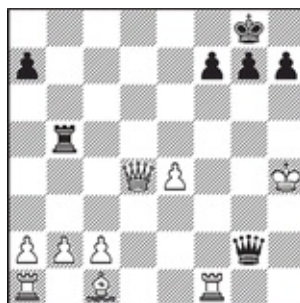
495
Schiffers - NN
Saint Petersburg, 1897

White to move



496
Schiffers - Hardin
correspondence game, 1897 - 1898

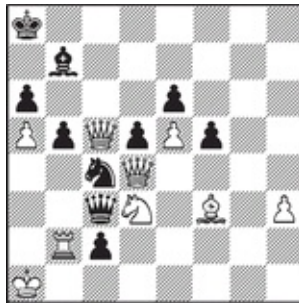
Black to move



497

Zambelly - Maróczy
Correspondence game, 1897 - 1898

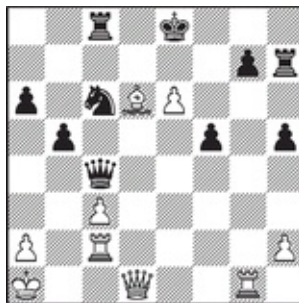
Black to move



498

Chigorin - Blackburne
Vienna, 1898

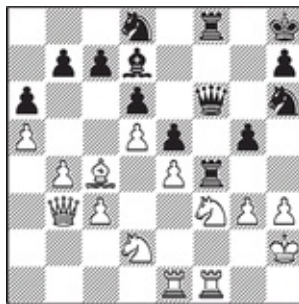
Black to move



499

Chigorin - Caro
Vienna, 1898

White to move



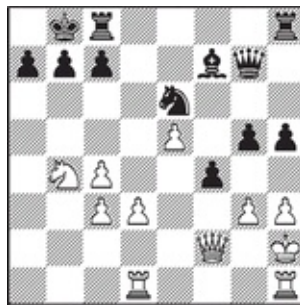
500
Albin - Chigorin
Cologne, 1898

Black to move



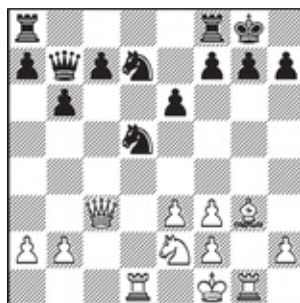
501
Wageheim - Yanzelis
1898

White to move



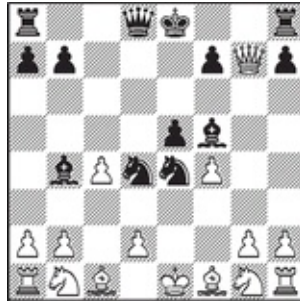
502
Marco - NN
1898, simultaneous exhibition

White to move



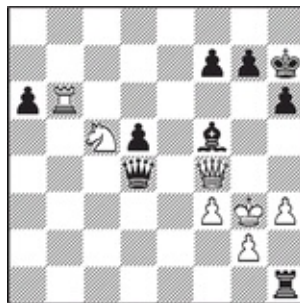
503
Wayne - Miles
Sidney, 1898

White to move



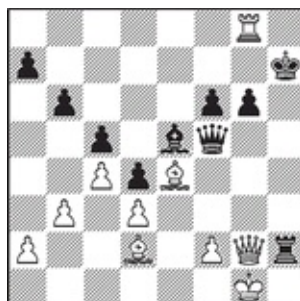
504
NN - Schallop
Wiesbaden

Black to move



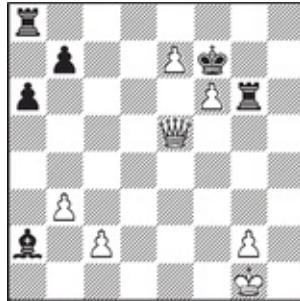
505
Burn - Schlechter
Vienna, 1898

Black to move



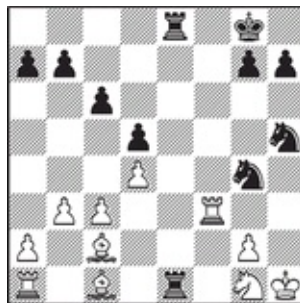
506
Tarrasch - Pillsbury
Vienna, 1898

White to move



507
Consultants - Pillsbury
Chicago, 1898, simultaneous exhibition

White to move



508
NN - Dadiani
1898

Black to move



509
Ettlinger - Janowski
New York, 1898

Black to move



510
Blackburne - Benfi
Manchester, 1898

White to move



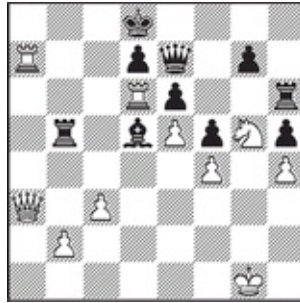
511
Imbusch - Goring
1899

White to move



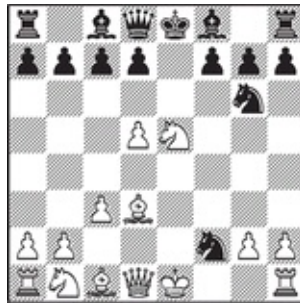
512
Hamlish - NN
Vienna, 1899

White to move



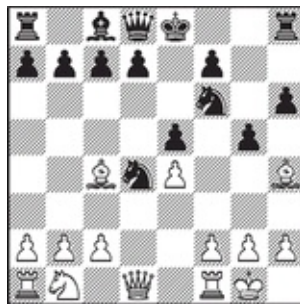
513
Chigorin - Tinsley
London, 1899

White to move



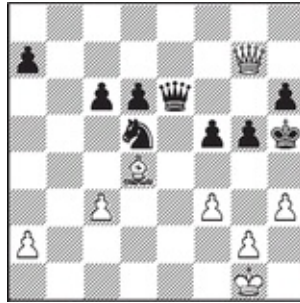
514
Bachmann - Kunstmann
Augsburg, 1899

White to move



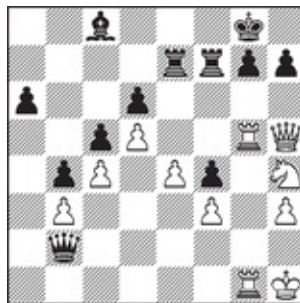
515
Rosentreter - Hoffer
Berlin, 1899

White to move



516
Schlechter - Meitner
Vienna, 1899

White to move



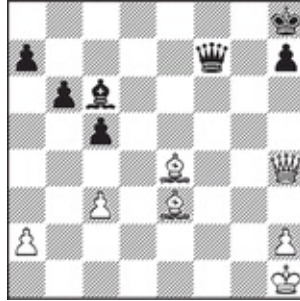
517
Janowski - Schlechter
London, 1899

White to move



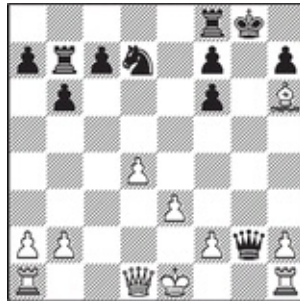
518
Lasker - Blackburne
London,1899

Black to move



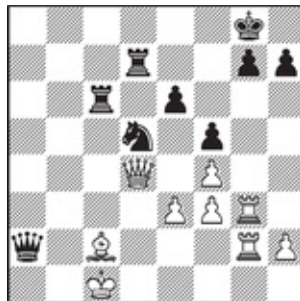
519
NN - Pillsbury
New Orleans,1899
Simultaneous exhibition, blind

Black to move



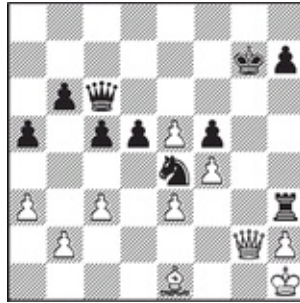
520
Pillsbury - Lee
London,1899

White to move



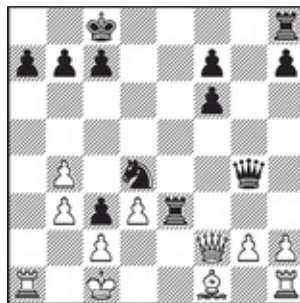
521
Pillsbury - Chigorin
London, 1899

Black to move



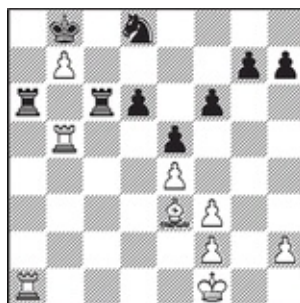
522
Lee - Chigorin
London, 1899

Black to move



523
Chigorin - Levitzky & Nenarokov
Moscow, 1899

Black to move



524

**Chigorin - Yankovic & Nenarokov
Moscow, 1899**

White to move



525

**Chigorin - Schlechter
London, 1899**

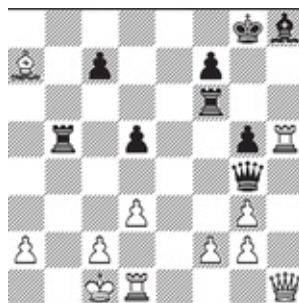
White to move



526

**NN - Kostrowitzky
Riga, 1899**

Black to move



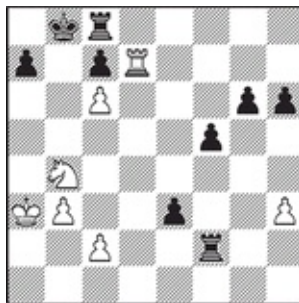
527
Wilk - Duras
Prague, 1899

Black to move



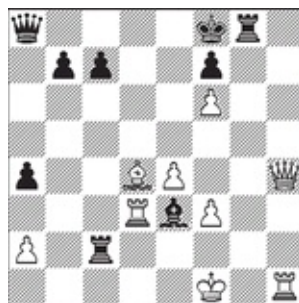
528
Janowski - Pillsbury
London, 1899

White to move



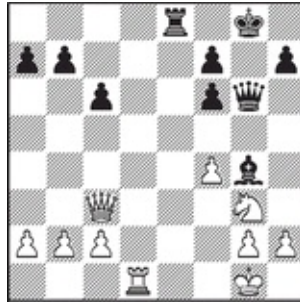
529
Janowski - NN
Paris, 1900

White to move



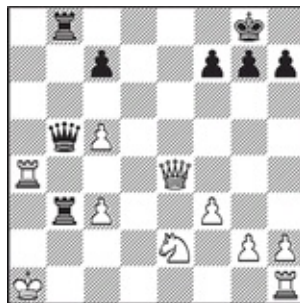
530
Janowski - Maróczy
Munich, 1900

Black to move



531
Chigorin - Janowski
Paris, 1900

White to move



532
Mason - Chigorin
Paris, 1900

Black to move



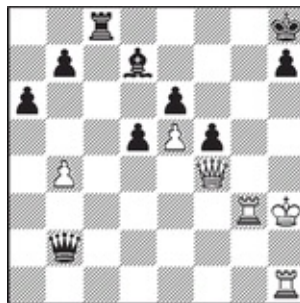
533
Chigorin - Mortimer
Paris, 1900

White to move



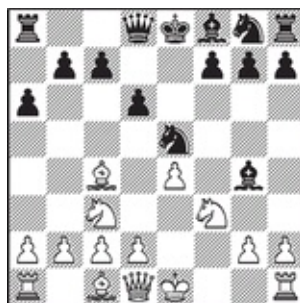
534
Lasker - Maróczy
Paris, 1900

White to move



535
Pillsbury - Maróczy
Paris, 1900

Whiteto move



539

Marco - Salter
Vienna, 1900

White to move



540

Marshall - Marco
Paris, 1900

White to move



541

Marshall - Burn
Paris, 1900

White to move



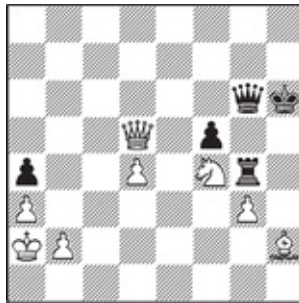
542
NN - Yankovic
Correspondence game, 1900

Black to move



543
Distl - Rozsypal
Prague, 1900

White to move



544
NN - Juchly
Zurich, 1900

Black to move



545
Mieses - NN
1900

White to move



546
Finn - Nugent
New York, 1900

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 427. 1...♖xf3+! 2 ♘xf3 ♖xf3+ 3 ♔g1 (or 3 ♔e2 ♘d4+ 4 ♔d1 ♖f1#) 3...♕d2! White resigned.

“Black was threatening to win the queen in the position after 4...♕e3+ 5 ♔g2 ♖f7+. White could have saved his queen by playing 4 ♖b6, but then after 4...♕e3+ 5 ♔g2 ♖f5+, he would get mated shortly. In case of 4 h4, Black would follow with 4...♘d4 and either wins the queen, or mates in a few moves. The only defense left was 4 ♔g3, and it would lead to an interesting finale: 4 ♔g3 ♕e3+! 5 ♔g2 ♖f5+ 6 ♔h3 ♖h5+ 7 ♔g4 (7 ♖h4 ♕f5+ 8 ♔g3 ♖xh4 9 ♔xh4 ♕f2+) 7...♘e5+ 8 ♔xh5 g5! 9 ♖xe3 ♕g6# (or 9 ♖xe5 ♕f3#, or 9 ♖xg5 hg and Black would mate next move.)” (Schiffers)

Diagram 428. 1 ♖d8+! ♘xd8 2 ♔e7#.

Diagram 429. 1 ♔g4+! ♕xg4 2 ♖xh6+! gh 3 ♕f7#!

Diagram 430. 1 ♕xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 (or 2...♔f6 3 ♔g4, mating) 3 f6+ ♔h8 4 ♖h5+ ♘h6 5 ♖xh6+ ♔g8 6 ♔g7#. (or 6 ♖h7#)

Diagram 431. 1 ♖xe5+! de (or 1...♔d7 2 ♔g4+ f5 3 ♖xf5#) 2 ♔xe5+!! ♖xe5 (or 2...♔d7 3 ♖f5+ ♔e8 4 ♕xf7+! ♖xf7 5 ♖xc8#) 3 ♕c6+! ♖xc6 4 ♖d8#.

Diagram 432. 1...♖xh3+! (Also good here is 1...♘e4.) 2 ♕xh3 (or 2 gh ♖h1#; 2 ♕g3 g4+! 3 ♔xf4 ♖c1+ 4 ♔e3 ♘h5+ 5 ♔xg4 ♖xg3+) 2...♖xc3+. White resigned. (3 ♔e3 ♕xe3)

Diagram 433. 1 ♘xc7+ ♔g6 (or 1...♘d5 2 ♕xd5+ ♔e7 3 ♕g5+) 2 ♔g4+! ♕xg4 3 ♕f7#.

Diagram 434. 1 ♔xe5+! de (or 1...fe 2 ♕g5#; 1...♕e6 2 ♖xe6#) 2 ♕c5#.

Diagram 435. Steinitz had just played ...♘f4xg2? on his last move, falling into a trap: 1 ♔xg2! ♕xf3+ 2 ♖xf3 ♖g5+ 3 ♔h1 ♖xd2 4 ♖xf7+ ♔h7 5 ♖g1! Black resigned.

Diagram 436. 1...♔h4+! 2 ♔d2 (“After 2 ♖f2 ♘c2+ 3 ♔e2 ♖xf2+ 4 ♔xf2 ♘b35 ♖d1 ♘ba16 ♕e2f5, White could have indeed prolonged the game, but Black, with an extra exchange, would still win. White cannot win the knight without losing several pawns.” - Chigorin) 2...♘ac4+ 3 ♔c1 ♖xd3! 4 ♕g2 (or 4 a3 ♖f2! 5 ♔b1 ♖d1+ 6 ♔a2 ♖xf1!) 4...♖hd8 5 a4 ♖d1+ (or 5...♖f2! and mate) 6 ♖xd1 ♖xd1+ 7 ♖xd1 ♘xd1. White resigned.

Diagram 437. 1...♖g5! 2 ♔h4 (or 2 ♖e2 ♖g1+! 3 ♔xg1 ♖xh2+ 4 ♔f1 ♖h1#) 2...♖a6+ 3 c4 dc 4 f4 c3+ 5 ♔f2 e3+! White resigned. (6 ♔f3 ♖d3)

Diagram 438. 1 ♖xd5! Black resigned. (or 1...♖xd5 2 ♘g6+ ♔g8 3 ♘xe7+ and 4 ♘xd5)

Diagram 439. 1 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2 ♚e7+ ♔g6 3 ♘e6+ ♚xg3+ 4 hg ♖8f7 5 ♚e8 b3 6 ab ab 7 g4 ♖e5 8 ♚g8+. Black resigned. "White checkmates in three moves or fewer." (Chigorin)

Diagram 440. 1 ♖xb4! Black resigned. (1... ♚xb4 2 ♚xc6+)

Diagram 441. 1 ♘f6+ ♔g7 (or 1... ♔f8 2 ♖xh6) 2 ♖h5 ♘xd4+ 3 ♔f2 ♘c6 4 ♖xh6 ♘f8 5 ♖h7+! and mate to follow. (or 5... ♘xh7 6 ♚xh7+ ♔f8 7 ♖c5+ ♘e7 8 ♚h8+ ♚g8 9 ♚xg8#)

Diagram 442. 1... ♚xa1+! White resigned. (2 ♔xa1 ♘xc2+ 3 ♔b2 ♘xa3 wins a piece)

Diagram 443. 1 ♚xh7+! ♔xh7 2 hg++ ♔xg6 3 ♖h6#.

Diagram 444. 1 ♖xd7! ♔xd7 (or 1...bc 2 ♖xc7+ and 3 ♖xc6) 2 ♚g4+ ♔e8 3 ♘xc7+ ♔f8 4 ♚f4+ (or 4 ♚f3+) 4... ♔g7 5 ♘e6+ ♔h7 6 ♖d3 Black resigned.

Diagram 445. 1 ♖f8+! (1 ♖af1 is also good) 1... ♔xf8 2 ♖f1+ ♘f5 3 ♘f6 ♚g6 4 ♘xh7+ ♚xh7 (If 4... ♔g7 5 ♖xf5, or 5 ♘f8) 5 ♖xf5+. Black resigned.

Diagram 446. 1... ♖h1+! 2 ♔xh1 ♚xh3+ 3 ♘h2 ♘g3+ White resigned.

Diagram 447. 1 ♖h7+! ♔xf6 (or 1... ♔f8 2 ♖f7#) 2 ♖f7#.

Diagram 448. 1 ♚xh6+! ♔xh6 2 ♘e6+ ("It is only a draw after 2 ♘xf7++ ♔g6 3 ♖f6+ ♔g7 4 ♖h6+ ♚g8 5 ♖g6+!! ♔xf7 6 ♖g7+ ♔e6 7 ♘f4++, 8 ♘d5+, etc." - Tarrasch) 2... ♔h5 ("After 2... ♔g6, White mates in two: 3 ♖f6+ and 4 ♖h6#." - Tarrasch) 3 ♘df4+ ♔h6 ("If 3... ♔h4, then 4 g3#." - Tarrasch) 4 ♘e2+! ♔g6 ("If Black moves his king to h5, White could have forced mate, similar to that in the game, with the help of the move 5 ♖f5+!" - Tarrasch) 5 ♖f6+! ♔xf6 6 ♖g5+ ♔g6 7 ♘2f4#.

Diagram 449. 1... ♖xg2! White resigned. (2 ♔xg2 ♚g3+ 3 ♔h1 ♚h3#)

Diagram 450. 1... ♖xc3! 2 ♚xc3 ♚xc3 "I resigned here, thinking that after 3 ♖xc3 ♖d1+ 4 ♘e1 ♖xe1+ 5 ♔g2? ♘f4+ 6 ♔g3 ♖g1+, etc. I was being checkmated. I could have avoided the mate with 5 ♖f1 ♖xf1+ 6 ♔g2, but even then my position would have remained hopeless." (Tarrasch)

Diagram 451. 1 ♖xf6! gf 2 ♚xg4! Black resigned. (2... ♖g5 3 ♚xg5!)

Diagram 452. 1... ♖xh5! 2 ♖xh5 ♘xe4 3 ♚d1 ("White was losing even without this blunder." - Tarrasch) 3... ♚g2+. White resigned. (4 ♔d3 ♘f2+)

Diagram 453. 1 ♖xg5+! fg 2 f6+ ♔h7 ("If 2... ♔h8, then 3 ♘g6+ ♔h7 4 ♘e7 ♖f8 5 ♚f5+ ♔h8 6 ♚g6." - Chigorin) 3 ♚f5+ ♔h8 ("If 3... ♔g8, then 4 f7+ ♚xf7 5 ♚xg5+ and 6 ♚xd8." -

Tarrasch) 4 f7! (“This beautiful move settles the issue quickly. No doubt both 4 ♖xg5 and 4 ♘g6+ ♕g8 5 ♖xg5 would win easily for White as well.” - Chigorin; “It is weaker for White to follow with 4 ♘g6+ ♕g8 5 ♘e7+ ♕f7 6 ♖g6+ ♕e6.” - Tarrasch) 4...gh (“If 4...♕g7, then 5 ♖g6+ ♕f8 6 ♖g8+ ♕e7 7 ♘g6+, etc., while after 4...♖f8, there follows 5 ♖f6+ ♕h7 6 ♖g6+ ♕h8 7 ♖h6#.” - Tarrasch) 5 ♖g6 ♖d1+ 6 ♕h2 e4+ 7 g3 hg+ 8 ♕g2 ♖xf7 9 ♖xf7, and White won.

Diagram 454. 1 ♖d7+! ♗xd7 2 ♘d6++ ♕d8 3 ♘f7+ ♕c8 4 ♖e8+! ♗xe8 5 ♖d8#.

Diagram 455. 1 ♖e5+ ♕f3 (or 1...♕d3 2 ♖d1+) 2 ♗d1+ ♕g2 3 ♖d5+ ♕h2 (or 3...♕h3 4 ♖h5+ ♕g2 5 ♖h1+) 4 ♖h1+!! ♕xh1 5 ♗f3++ ♕h2 6 ♖h1#.

Diagram 456. 1 ♗d6! Black resigned, because of 1...♖xb3 2 ♖f8#; 1...♖xd6 2 ♖b8+, mating; or 1...♗xd6 2 ♖xe6+ ♕h8 3 ♖f8#.

Diagram 457. 1...g f! 2 ♗xd8 f2+ 3 ♕e2 ♗g4+ 4 ♕d3 ♘b4+ 5 ♖xe4 (or 5 ♖c4 ♗xd1 and Black wins) 5...f5#.

Diagram 458. 1 ♗xh7+! ♕xh7 (or 1...♕h8 2 ♖h5 andmate follows) 2 hg+ ♕g8 3 ♖h8+! ♕f7 (or 3...♕xh8 4 ♖h5+ ♕g8 5 g6 and White wins) 4 ♖h5+ g6 5 ♖h7+ ♕e8 6 ♖xg6#.

Diagram 459. 1 ♘c7+! ♘xc7 (or 1...♕f8 2 ♖d8#) 2 ♖d8+! ♕xd8 3 ♗g5++ ♕e8 4 ♖d8#.

Diagram 460. 1 fg! ♗c3+ 2 ♖xc3! (or 2 bc?? bc+ 3 ♕a1 ♖xa2+! 4 ♕xa2 ♖b2+ and 5...♖a8#) 2...bc 3 ♗f5+ ♕g8 (or 3...♕h8?? 4 g7+ ♕g8 5 ♗h6#) 4 ♗e7+, with a perpetual check. (4...♕g8! 5 ♗f5+, but not 4...♕h8??, because of 5 g7#) Draw.

Diagram 461. 1 ♗c4+! ♖xc4 2 ♖e8+! ♗xe8 3 ♖f8#.

Diagram 462. 1...♖xg2+! 2 ♕h1 (or 2 ♕xg2 ♗h3+ 3 ♕h1 ♖g4 and Black wins) 2...♖xf2. White resigned. (3 ♗d2 ♗g4)

Diagram 463. 1...♗d3+! 2 ♗xd3 (“White must capture the knight; otherwise Black plays 2...♗cb4.” - Levenfish) 2...cd 3 ♖xd3? (No annotators mentioned the best possibility for White — 3 ♗c7!; then in order to win Chigorin had to overcome numerous technical difficulties.) 3...♖ag1! (“Now it becomes clear what the essence of White’s combination is. He is threatening mate on g2 ” - Grigory Levenfish) 4 ♖f5+ ♕e8 5 ♗g5 (“After 5 ♖xf4, Black follows with a study-like checkmate: 5...♖6g2+ 6 ♕e3 ♖e1#.” - Levenfish) 5...♖6xg5. White resigned.

Diagram 464. 1...cd! (“After 1...♖6f7 2 f6 g6 3 ♖e1 cd 4 ♖h6 White is clearly better.” - Levenfish) 2 ♗xf6 ♖xf6 3 ♖c1 h6 4 ♖c8+ ♕h7 5 ♖b4 (“White is threatening 6 ♖c5, while if the bishop retreats, there follows ♖b8 with back-rank mating threats.” - Levenfish) 5...♗c6! 6 ♖b8 ♖xf5 7 ♖h8+ ♕g6 8 ♖f8 ♖g5! 9 ♖8f3 d2! White resigned.

Diagram 465. 1...♙xb2+! 2 ♖xb2 ♚a2+ 3 ♖c1 ♘d4. White resigned. (4 ♘a3 ♚xa3+)

Diagram 466. 1...♘g2! 2 ♘xe5 (or 2 ♖xg2? ♚h3+ 3 ♖h1 ♙xf3+; 2 ♖(♚)xg2? ♙xf3) 2...♙h3! 3 ♖xg2 ♙xg2+ 4 ♚xg2 ♚xe5 5 ♚f3 ♖ae8 and Black won.

Diagram 467. 1 ♙xh6+! ♘xh6 2 ♘g6! (“This is the point of the combination. Black can play neither 2...♘g8, because of 3 ♖h7#, nor 2...♙xg6 3 ♖xh6 ♙f7 4 ♖h7+, or 3...♖g8 4 ♖xg6+ ♙f8 5 g5! and White wins; for example, 5...fg 6 ♚h5 ♙f6 7 ♚h6+, etc.” - Panov) 2...♖h8 3 ♘xh8 ♚xh8 4 g5 fg 5 ♖xh6 (“After 5 ♘g4 ♘xg4! 6 ♖xh8 ♖xh8 7 ♖xh8 ♘e3 and 8...♘bxc2, Black would have serious practical counterplay, thanks to his powerful c3-pawn, despite the considerable material imbalance.” - Panov) 5...♚xh6 6 ♖xh6, and White won.

Diagram 468. 1 ♚xb5! ♙e6 2 ♚c5+ ♖c7 (or 2...♖d7? 3 ♚d5+) 3 b5 ♖xg4+ 4 ♙f2 ♖f4+ 5 ♙e1 ♙h3 6 ♚xc6+ ♖d8 7 b6. Black resigned.

Diagram 469. 1 ♖a8+! ♖xa8 2 ♚xc8+ ♖b8 3 ♚c6+ ♖b7 4 ♚a4+ ♖b8 5 ♚e8+ and White checkmates on the next move: 5...♚d8 6 ♚xd8#.

Diagram 470. 1 ♘xe5! Black resigned. (if 1...♙xd1 2 ♙b5+ c6 3 dc a6 4 c7+ ab 5 cd ♚+ ♖xd8 6 ♘xd1)

Diagram 471. 1 ♖e8! and Black can play neither 1...♘xc4, because of 2 ♚xf8#, nor 1...♖xe8, due to 2 ♚xd5+ and mate in two, nor 1...♚xe8, because of 2 ♙xd5+ ♖xd5 3 ♚xd5+ ♚f7 4 ♚xa5, and White has an extra knight.

Diagram 472. 1 ♘f5! Black resigned. (1...♙e6 2 ♘h6#)

Diagram 473. 1...♖e1! White resigned. (or 2 ♖xe1 ♚g2#; 2 ♚xe1 ♚xf3+ 3 ♖g2 ♚xg2#; 2 ♘e3 ♖gxg1#)

Diagram 474. 1...♚e1+! 2 ♖g2 (or 2 ♖xe1 stalemate) 2...♚g1+! 3 ♖xg1, stalemate — draw.

Diagram 475. 1 ♚e8+! ♖xe8 (or 1...♙xe8) 2 fe ♚+ ♙xe8 3 ♙xd6#.

Diagram 476. 1...♙h2+! 2 ♖h1! (2 ♖xh2 ♙f1+ and 3...♙xe2) 2...♙f1! (It is also possible for Black to continue with 2...♙f4+ 3 ♚g1 ♙xg5 up an exchange.) 3 ♚d1? (or 3 ♚xf1? ♙g3+ and Black mates; 3 ♖g4! ♚xg4!, or 3...♚h5 4 ♖g5 ♙xe2 5 ♖xh5 ♙xf3+ and Black wins the exchange) 3...♙e2!. White resigned, because he loses his queen.

Diagram 477. 1 ♘g7!! (“This is even stronger than 1 ♘xe7+ ♙xe7 2 ♘f6+ ♚xf6 3 ♚xa8+” -

Grekov; White also wins the exchange after 1 ♖e3.) 1... ♗xg7 2 hg ♖d5 (“Black is utterly helpless.” - Tarrasch; if 2... ♖dd8, then 3 ♖f6+ ♗xg7 4 ♖h7+ ♗f8 5 ♖d7+! and White wins.) 3 ♖xh7! ♗xh7 4 ♖g5+ ♗xg7 5 ♖xe6+ fe 6 0-0-0 and Black soon resigned.

Diagram 478. 1... ♗e5! White resigned. (2 ♖xa5 ♖h2#; 2 ♖xe5 ♖xd1+ 3 ♗xd1 ♖e1+ 4 ♖h2 ♖g1#)

Diagram 479. 1 ♗d5! ed 2 ♖xc6+ ♖d8 (or 2... ♖e7 3 ♖xd5+ ♖d8 4 ♖xa8+ ♗c8 5 0-0-0 with a win for White) 3 ♖xa8+ ♖d7 (or 3... ♗c8 4 0-0-0, crushing) 4 ♖b7+ ♖e6 5 ♖c6+ ♗d6 6 ♗f4! and Black resigned, because of 6... ♖xh1+ 7 ♖d2 ♖xa1 8 ♖xd6+ (or 8 ♖c8+ and mate in two) 8... ♖f5 9 ♖e5+ and 10 ♖g5#.

Diagram 480. 1 ♖ec5+! dc 2 ♖xc5+ ♖d6 (or 2... ♖c7 3 ♗xe7 ♗xe7 4 ♖xe7+ ♖b6 5 b4!; 4... ♖d6 5 ♖1e4!; 3... ♖d7 4 ♖a6+) 3 ♗f4+ ♖d5 4 ♖e5+ ♖c4 (or 4... ♖xd4 5 ♖1e4#) 5 ♖c1+ ♖xd4 (or 5... ♖b4 6 ♗d2#) 6 ♖b3+ ♖d3 7 ♖e3#. (or 7 ♖c3#)

Diagram 481. 1 f8 ♖++! ♖xf8 2 ♖f6 ♗g8 3 ♖e7! ♗h7 (or 3... ♖d5 4 ♖g6+ and 5 ♖g7#) 4 ♖xh7 ♖g8 5 ♖g7+ ♖f8 6 ♖b7 ♖a8 7 ♖f7+ ♖e8. Black resigned, because of 8 ♖e7+ ♖d8 9 ♖f7+ ♖c8 10 ♖d6+.

Diagram 482. 1 ♖xf7! Black resigned. “In case of 1... de, it is mate in six; while after 1... ♖xe5, White plays 2 ♖xe5, and if 1... ♖xe5, then 2 ♖f8+ ♖xf8 3 ♖xe5 dc 4 ♖d6! and White wins.” (Schiffers)

We will clarify: 1... de 2 ♖g7+ ♖h8 3 ♖xd7+! ♖g8 (or 3... ♖xe5 4 ♖f8#) 4 ♖g7+ ♖h8 5 ♖e7+ ♖g8 6 ♖xe8+ ♖h7 7 ♖f7#, or 7 ♖h8#. After 1... ♖xe5, the most precise reaction for White is 2 ♖xd3!.

Diagram 483. 1 ♖g5+! (It is also good for White to play 1 ♖e8+! ♖xe8 2 ♖g5#, and if 1... ♗f8, 2 ♖g5+! ♖xg5 3 ♖xf8#) 1... ♖xg5 2 ♖e8+ ♗f8 3 ♖xf8#.

Diagram 484. 1 ♖xe7! Black resigned. “This is an exquisite finish; in case of 1... ♗xe8, White would follow with 2 ♖f6+ ♖h8 3 ♗g7#!” (Carl Schlechter), while if 1... ♖xe7, then 2 ♖xf8#.

Diagram 485. 1... ♗h3! 2 ♖e3 (After 2 ♖e3, White remains a piece down, while 2 ♗xh3 loses to 2... ♖xh3+ 3 ♖g1 ♖e2+! 4 ♖(♖)xe2 ♖xg3+ 5 ♖f1 ♖h1#) 2... ♗xg2+ 3 ♖xg2 ♖h1+! 4 ♖xh1 ♖xh1#.

Diagram 486. 1 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 2 ♖d1+! ♖xd1, stalemate — a draw.

Diagram 487.1 ♖xh5+! ♖xh5 (If 1... ♖g6 2 ♖xg6#, or 2 ♗xg6#) 2 ♗g6#.

Diagram 488. 1 ♖a8+ ♖b8 2 ♖xd8+! ♖xd8 (or 2... ♖xd8 3 ♖xb8+ ♖e7 4 ♖d6#, or 3... ♖d7 4

♔d6+ and mate next move) 3 ♖xb7+!! ♖xb7 4 ♖a7+ ♖c8 5 ♖c7#!

Diagram 489. 1 ♘xf7! ♗xf7 (or 1...♔xf7 2 ♖xe6+ and White wins) 2 ♗xc7!. Black resigned. (if 2...♖xc7 3 ♖xe7#)

Diagram 490. 1 ♖f5! (or 1 ♖h6?? ♖xh3+) 1...♔h8 (or 1...g7 2 ♖g5+ ♔h8 3 ♖g7#) 2 ♖h6 ♖g8 3 ♘g5. Black resigned.

Diagram 491. 1...♗g4! (It is also good for Black to continue with 1...♖d8+ 2 ♗d3 ♗g4!, or 2 ♖d3 ♗f5) 2 ♖xg4 ♖d5+! White resigned. (3 ♗d3 ♖xd3+, mating)

Diagram 492. 1 f6+! ♗xf6 2 ♗xh6+! ♖xh6 (or 2...♖g6 3 ♘xc5+) 3 ♘xf6, and because of the threat 4 ♖h7+, followed by mate, Black resigned.

Diagram 493. 1 ♗f5! (“If Black captures the bishop, White follows with 2 d6.” - Tarrasch) 1...♔g7 2 g4! ♖d6 3 ♗e6! ♖f6 4 ♖b1! ♖xb6 5 ♖f5+ ♔g7 6 ♖xe5+ ♖h7 7 ab ♖d7. (“If Black’s rook abandons the seventh rank, White wins the queen.” - Tarrasch) 8 ♖f1! (“If White plays 8 ♖f5+ immediately, followed by ♗xd7, Black draws by perpetual check.” -Tarrasch) Black resigned.

Diagram 494. 1 g6! ♘e8 (“After 1...hg, White would play 2 ♖h3+ ♔g8 3 ♗d5+ and 4 fg.” - Tarrasch) 2 ♖h3 h6 3 ♗xh6! ♘f6 (“In case of 3...gh, White would follow with 4 ♖xh6+, and then ♗d5+.” - Tarrasch) 4 ♗g5+ ♔g8 5 ♗xf6 ♖xf6 6 ♖h7+. Black resigned.

Diagram 495. 1 ♖xh6! (This is beautiful indeed, but White could win at least a piece with 1 ♖g5!, since Black cannot play 1...g6, due to: 2 ♖xg6+! hg 3 ♖xg6+ ♗g7 4 ♖xg7#, or 2...♗g7 3 ♖h6 and 4 ♖xg7#.) 1...gh (If 1...♖xe3, White can answer with the simple 2 ♖xe3, but it is much more energetic for him to play 2 ♖g5!, with a crushing attack.) 2 ♖g3+ ♗g7 3 ♖xg7+ ♖f8 4 ♖xf7+! ♖xf7 (or 4...♖g8 5 ♖d3! ♖e1+ 6 ♖h2 ♖e6 7 ♖f4!) 5 ♖d7++ ♖g6 6 ♗d3+ ♖e4 (or 6...♖h5 7 ♖d5+ with mate in a few moves) 7 ♗xe4+ ♖g5 8 ♖d5+ ♖f4 9 ♗f3! ♖e6 10 ♗c1+ ♖e3 11 ♗xe3#.

Diagram 496. 1...♖g3! White resigned. (if 2 ♖xf4 ♖c6+)

Diagram 497. 1...♖h5+! 2 ♖xh5 ♖h3+ 3 ♖g5 h6+ 4 ♖f4 g5+ 5 ♖e5 ♖e6#.

Diagram 498. 1...♖xa5+ 2 ♖a2 ♖e1+! 3 ♘xe1 c1♖#.

Diagram 499. 1 ♖xg7! Black resigned: 1...♖xg7 2 ♖xh5+ ♔d8 3 ♖h8+ ♖g8 4 ♖xg8#; 1...♖h8 2 ♖xh5+! ♖xh5 3 ♖g8#.

Diagram 500. 1...♗xh3! 2 ♖xh3 (“Or 2 gf ♗xf1 3 ♖xf1 ef, threatening g5 - g4, or 3...♖xf4+.” - Chigorin) 2...g4+ 3 ♖h2 gf! 4 ♘xf3 ♖xf3 5 ♖xf3 ♖xf3 6 ♖h3 ♘df7 7 ♖d1 ♘g5+ 8 ♖h4 ♖f4+! 9 gf ♖xf4+ White resigned. (10 ♖h5 ♘gf7 11 ♖g1 ♖h2#)

Diagram 501. 1 ♖h7+! (1 ♔e7?? ♕g2#) 1...♔xh7 2 ♔e7++ ♕h8 3 ♖h7#.

Diagram 502. 1 ♘c6+! bc (or 1...♔a8 2 ♕xa7#) 2 ♕xa7+! ♔xa7 3 ♖a1+ ♕b6 (or 3...♔b7 4 ♖hb1#) 4 ♖hb1+ ♕c5 5 ♖a5#.

Diagram 503. 1 ♕xg7+ ♔xg7 2 ♙e5++ ♕h6 3 ♙g7+ ♕h5 4 ♖xd5+! f5 (or 4...ed 5 ♘f4+ and 6 ♖g4#) 5 ♘f4+ ♕h4 6 ♖g4+! fg 7 ♖h5#.

Diagram 504. 1...♘c2+ 2 ♔e2 (or 2 ♔d1 ♘f2+ 3 ♔e2 ♕d3+! 4 ♔xf2 ♙c5#) 2...♕d3+! 3 ♔xd3 (or 3 ♔d1 ♘f2#) 3...♘g3#. (or 3...♘c3#)

Diagram 505. 1...♖xh3+! 2 gh ♕g1+ 3 ♕h4 g5+ White resigned. (4 ♕xg5 ♕xg5#; 4 ♕h5 ♙g6+ 5 ♖xg6 fg#)

Diagram 506. 1 ♖xg6! (“This is quite an original finish, particularly in relation to the following move.” - Tarrasch. The move in the game is the best, but the other reasonable possibilities for White would not have missed the win; for example, 1 ♕xg6+ ♕xg6+ 2 ♖xg6, or 1 ♙xf5 ♖xg2+ 2 ♔xg2 ♕xg8 3 ♙xg6.) 1...♖xg2+ 2 ♖xg2. “Black resigned. He must part with the queen, which he just won.” (Tarrasch)

Diagram 507. 1 ♕d5+ ♔xf6 (or 1...♔e8 2 ♕e6 ♖xf6 3 ♕xf6) 2 ♕d8! ♖g8 3 e8 ♘+++! (but not 3 e8 ♕+?? ♖xd8) and White wins. (if 3...♔f7 4 ♕xa8)

Diagram 508. 1...♘g3+! 2 ♖xg3 ♖xg1+! 3 ♕xg1 ♖e1#.

Diagram 509. 1...♘f3+! 2 ♔e2 (or 2 gf ef+ 3 ♘e2 f2#, or 3 ♙e2 f2+ 4 ♔f1 ♙h3#) 2...♙g4. White resigned, no doubt seeing 3 h3 ♘d5! 4 ♘xd5? ♘g1++ 5 ♔e1 ♕h4+ 6 g3 ♕xg3#; 3 gf? ef++! 4 ♔d3 ♕d6+ 5 ♔c4 ♕d4+ and 6...♕b4#; 3 b4 ♘d4++ 4 ♔e1 ♙xd1 5 ♕xd1 ♘g4 and Black wins.)

Diagram 510.1 ♕h4! ♕xh4 (This move leads to mate in three, but Black cannot avoid the worst.) 2 ♖h6+ ♕g8 3 ♖xd7+ ♕f8 4 ♖h8#.

Diagram 511. 1 ♘g5 Black resigned. (If 1...♕xg5 2 ♕d5#; 1...d5 2 ♕f7#; 1...♕f6 2 ♕d5+ ♕e6 3 ♘xe6.)

Diagram 512. 1 ♙xf7+! ♔xf7? (It is better for Black to play 1...♔f8, but even then after 2 ♘g5, White has a winning position.) 2 ♘g5+ ♔f6 (or 2...♔e8 3 ♘e6) 3 ♕f3#.

Diagram 513. 1 ♖dxd7+ ♕xd7 2 ♕f8+! ♕e8 3 ♕d6+ and mate on the following move.

Diagram 514. 1 ♖xg6! ♜xd1 (Or 1... ♖f6 2 ♜e2 ♜xh13 ♜g5! ♖xg54 ♜xf7+ ♜e7! 5 ♜xd7+!!, or 2...fg 3 ♜xg6+ ♜d8 4 ♜xh8 ♜xh1 5 ♜g5! and White wins.) 2 ♜xf7+ ♜e7 3 ♜g5+ ♜d6 4 ♜c4+ ♜c5 5 ♜ba3 (or 5 ♜xd8 immediately) 5... ♜xb2?? (After 5... ♜xc3 6 ♜xd8 White is a piece up.) 6 ♜e3#.

Diagram 515. 1 f4!! gf? (Or 1... ef? 2 ♜xd4 gh 3 ♜xf4 d5 4 ed; 1...d6 2 ♜xf7+!; 1...gh 2 fe; 1... ♜xe4 2 fe ♜e6 3 ♜f3; 1... ♜e6 2 ♜xe6 de 3 ♜xd8+ ♜xd8 4 fg ♜xe4 5 g6+ — the last variation was played in the game Minakov-Volovich, USSR, 1974, and White was better in all variations.) 2 ♜xf4! ef 3 ♜xd4 0-0 4 ♜xf6 ♜e8 5 ♜h8 and mate in two.

Diagram 516. 1 g4+ fg (It is more or less the same after 1... ♜h4.) 2 hg+ (or 2 fg+) 2... ♜h4 3 ♜xh6+!! ♜xh6 4 ♜h2! followed by mate. (4... ♜e3 5 ♜xe3 and 6 ♜f2#)

Diagram 517. 1 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 (or 1... ♜f8 2 ♜h8#) 2 ♜h5+ ♜g8 3 ♜g6 ♜f6 4 ♜h8+ ♜f7 5 ♜f8#.

Diagram 518. 1... ♜h1+! 2 ♜xh1 ♜xg3 3 ♜xg3 (or 3 fg ♜h4+ 4 ♜g1 ♜f2#) 3... ♜f2+ 4 ♜g1 ♜xd1 5 ♜f5 ♜xf5 6 ef ♜d2 and Black won.

Diagram 519. 1... ♜f1+ 2 ♜g1 ♜f3+! 3 ♜xf3 ♜xf3#.

Diagram 520. 1 ♜f3! ♜xf3 (or 1... ♜g6 2 ♜xf8 ♜b8 3 ♜a3) 2 ♜g1+ ♜h8 3 ♜g7+ ♜g8 4 ♜xf6+ and mate in one.

Diagram 521. 1... ♜a3+! 2 ♜d2 ♜xc2+! 3 ♜xc2 ♜xe3+ 4 ♜b1 ♜xd4 5 ♜xg7+ ♜f8 6 ♜g8+ ♜e7. White resigned.

Diagram 522. 1... ♜g3+! (“Now Black has the exchange, and that settles the issue.” - Vassily Smyslov) 2 ♜xg3 ♜h6 3 ♜h4+ ♜g6 4 ♜f6+ ♜f7 5 ♜f3 ♜e6 6 c4 b5! 7 b3 bc 8 bc ♜b7 9 h4 ♜b1+. White resigned.

Diagram 523. 1... ♜f4! White resigned. (2 ♜xf4 ♜e1#)

Diagram 524. 1 ♜a7+! ♜xa7 (or 1... ♜xa7 2 b8 ♜#) 2 ♜xa7. Black resigned. (2... ♜xb7 3 ♜bxb7+; 2... ♜xa7 3 b8 ♜+)

Diagram 525. 1 ♜e7+! ♜xe7 2 ♜xf7+ ♜xf7 3 ♜xf7. Black resigned. (3... ♜xf7 4 ♜h5+ and 5 ♜xa5)

Diagram 526. 1... ♜xf6! 2 ♜c1 (or 2 ♜xf6? ♜e1+ 3 ♜f1 ♜xf1+! 4 ♜xf1 f2#, or 3 ♜f1 f2+ 4 ♜e4 ♜xe4#) 2... ♜b2!! 3 ♜f1? (It looks better for White to play 3 ♜xd6+ ♜b8 4 ♜xb2! f2+ 5 ♜e4,

but after 5...♖xe4! 6 ♖g2! ♗e1+ 7 ♖xf2 ♗xc1, Black has a couple of extra pawns.) 3...♔xf2! 4 ♖xf2 ♗e1+! 5 ♖xe1 f2+, mating.

Diagram 527. 1...♖b1+! 2 ♖xb1 (or 2 ♖d2 ♗xf2+! 3 ♖xf2 ♖c3+! 4 ♖xc3 ♗b4#, or 4 ♖e3 d4#) 2...♗b6+! 3 ♖c1 (or 3 ♖xb6 ♗b4+ 4 ♖c1 ♖b2+ 5 ♖b1 ♖c3+ 6 ♖c1 ♗b2#) 3...♖b2+ 4 ♖b1 ♖c3+! (or 4...♖a3+! and mate) 5 ♖c1 ♗b1+! White resigned. (If 6 ♖xb1 ♗b4+ 7 ♖c1 ♗b2#.)

Diagram 528. 1 ♖f6! (“This is a brilliant maneuver, based on the vulnerability of a whole complex of squares: 1...♖xf6? 2 ♖h5#; 1...♗xg5 2 fg+ ♖g6 3 h5+ ♖h7 4 ♖xf5+, or 2...♖h7 3 ♖xf5+ ♗g6 4 h5, and the game is practically over.” - Tartakower) 1...♗g7 2 ♖d5! (“This is another deadly strike; the rest is easy.” - Tartakower) 2...♖e8 3 ♖g2 ♖f7 4 ♖xg7+ ♗xg7 5 ♗xg7 ♖xg7 6 ♖g5+ ♖h7 7 ♖xf5+ ♖h8 8 ♖h5+ ♖g8 9 ♖g5. Black resigned

Diagram 529. 1 ♖a6+ ♖a8 2 ♖xc7+ ♖b8 (or 2...♗xc7 3 ♗d8+ ♗c8 4 ♗xc8#) 3 ♖a6+ ♖a8 4 ♗b7! Black resigned. (If 4...♗xc6 5 ♗b8#; 4...♗xc2 5 ♗b8+!! ♗xb8 6 ♖c7#)

Diagram 530. 1...♖a6! White resigned. (2 ♖xe3 ♖xd3+ 3 ♖e1 ♖e2#; 2 ♖c5+ ♖d8!)

Diagram 531. 1 ♗d6! ♗e6 (“If 1...♖g7, then 2 h3 ♖c8 3 ♗xf6! and Black loses his queen.” - Chigorin; 2...♖e6 3 f5 ♖xf5 4 ♗xf6! ♖xf6 5 ♖h5+) 2 ♗d8+ ♖g7 3 f5! ♖xf5 4 ♖c5! Black resigned. (4...♗e5 5 ♖f8#)

Diagram 532. 1...♗a3+! 2 ♗xa3 ♖b2#.

Diagram 533. 1 ♖d7+ ♖c7 2 ♖xf4+! ♖xf4 3 ♖d5+ ♖xd7 4 ♖xf4 ♖xh1 5 dc ♖a5 6 b4 ♖c7 7 ♗d1+ ♖e8 8 ♖c6+. Black resigned.

Diagram 534. 1 ♖xb4 ♖xb4 2 ♖xf7! ♗xf7 3 ♖e6 (Also interesting is 3 ♖d6 ♖d5 4 ♖xd5 ♖xd4+ 5 ♖h1 ♖xd5 6 ♖e6!, or 3...♖f8 4 ♖xf7 ♖xd4+ 5 ♖h1 ♖c6 6 ♖d5 ♖xd6 7 ♖xc6 ♖xc6 8 ♖f3+ and White wins.) 3...♖h8 (“Lasker’s combination was far from evident. It looked like Black’s pieces could cover White’s powerful forces along the a2 - g8 diagonal, but unfortunately for him the d5-square proved to be too vulnerable: 3...♖d5 4 ♖d6 ♖e7(d7) 5 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 6 ♖xf7 ♖xf7 7 ♗c7+, or 3...♖d5 4 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 5 ♗c8+ ♖d8 6 ♖e7+.” - Veinstein) 4 ♖xf7 ♖xd4+ 5 ♖h1 ♖d3 6 ♗f1 ♖xg2+ 7 ♖xg2 ♖g5+ 8 ♖h3. Black resigned.

Diagram 535. 1 ♖h6! ♖xe5 (or 1...♗g8 2 ♖f6+ ♗g7 3 ♖xg7#) 2 ♖xh7+! ♖xh7 3 ♖g2#!

Diagram 536. 1 ♖xe5 ♖xd1 (or 1...♖h4+ 2 g3 ♖xd1 3 gh; 1...de 2 ♖xg4, and in both cases White keeps an extra piece.) 2 ♖xf7+ ♖e7 3 ♖d5#.

Diagram 537. 1 ♖h6! ♖e7! (but 1...gh? 2 ♗g3+ ♖f8 3 ♖xe5 ♗g8? 4 ♖f6+ ♖f7 5 ♖d8+ ♖e8

6 ♖f3+! and White mates) 2 ♜xg7! ♜xg7 3 ♖g3+ ♜f8 4 ♖f3+, with a perpetual check and a draw.

Diagram 538. 1 ♜xg6! fg (or 1... ♖xf6 2 ♜h7#) 2 ♖xf8+ ♜xf8 3 ♖xf8+! ♜xf8 (or 3... ♜g7 4 ♜h8# or 4 ♜h6#) 4 ♜h8+ ♜f7 5 ♜h7+. Black resigned. (5... ♜e6 6 ♜xg6#; 5... ♜e8 6 ♜g8#)

Diagram 539. 1 ♜b5! (1 ♜f6+? is bad due to 1...gf 2 ♜d3 ♖fe8, but it is stronger for him to follow with 1 ♖h1!, since Black cannot play 1...h6?, in view of 2 ♜f6+!, so he is obliged to answer with 1...f6 and there might follow 2 ♜xh7+ ♜f7 3 f5 ♖g8 4 ♜c4 ♜g5 5 ♜b6+ d5 6 ♜g6+ ♜f8 7 ♜xd7+, winning for White.) 1... ♜xb5?? (It was necessary for Black to continue with 1... ♜xf4 2 gf ♜e6, but even then his position was not to be envied. It was bad for him to play 1... ♜c8?? 2 ♜e7+ and later as in the game.) 2 ♜e7+ ♜h8 3 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 4 ♖h1#.

Diagram 540. 1 f5! ♜e5 2 f6+! ♜xf6 (2... ♜g8 3 ♖h8+! ♜xh8 4 ♜h6+ ♜g8 5 ♜g7#) 3 ♜h6+ ♜g8 4 ♜h7#.

Diagram 541. 1 ♜xg6 fg 2 ♜xg6 ♜d7? (Black had no defense against the threat 3 ♜g5. Relatively best was 2... ♜f8.) 3 ♜g5 ♜f6 4 ♖h8+! Black resigned; if 4... ♜xh8 5 ♜h7#.

Diagram 542. 1... ♜xf1+ 2 ♜xf1 ♜f3#

Diagram 543. 1 ♜d8+! ♜xd8 2 ♜a5++ ♜e8 3 ♖d8#.

Diagram 544. 1... ♖xf4! 2 gf ♜f7! 3 ♜xf7. Stalemate — a draw.

Diagram 545. 1 ♜g6! (threatening 2 ♜xf6+ and 3 ♜h7#) 1...fg (or 1... ♜h8! 2 ♜xe7 ♜xe7 3 ♜xf7+ winning the exchange) 2 ♜xe7++ ♜h8 3 ♜xg6#.

Diagram 546. 1 ♖e7! ♜xe7? (If 1... ♜xe7?, or 1... ♜xe7?, then 2 ♜f7#, while after 1... ♜e5 2 ♖xd7 ♜xf3+ 3 ♜xf3, White wins a piece.) 2 ♜d5+ ♜e6 3 ♜xe6#.

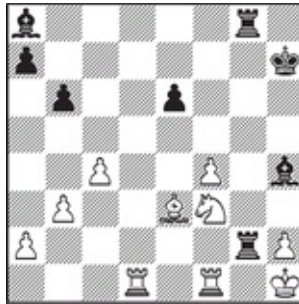
X

Matches of the Second World Champion (1901 - 1920)

If the student forces himself to examine all moves that smite, however absurd they may look at first glance, he is on the way to becoming a master of tactics.

C. J. S. Purdy

At the beginning of the twentieth century, the Cuban genius José Raúl Capablanca y Graupera gradually became one of the strongest players in the world. At the age of 13 he was champion of Cuba. The following combination was found by Capablanca in a game against the former champion of the island.



547

**Corzo - Capablanca
Havana, 1902**

Black to move

1 ... ♖h4 - f2!

This is the tactical road to the win. It was also possible for Black to play 1...♖e2 2 ♜c1 (or 2 ♜g1 ♜f2!) 2...♜gg2 3 ♜d7+ ♜h8 4 ♜d2 ♜xh2+ 5 ♜g1 ♜hg2+ 6 ♜h1 ♜xd2 and he wins.

2 ♜d1 - d7+?

It was more tenacious for White to defend with 2 ♜xf2!, but even then after 2...♜xf2 3 ♜d7+ ♜h6 4 f5+ ♜h6 5 ♜h7+ ♜g4 6 ♜xf2 ♜xf3 7 ♜g3 ♜d8, Black should win.

2 ... ♜h7 - h6
3 ♜d7 - d5

This is desperation, but White can no longer play 3 ♖xf2, because of 3...♖g1#. The rest is simple.

3	...	♙f2 x e3
4	♘f3 - g5	♞g2 x g5
5	♜f4 x g5+	♞g8 x g5
6	♞f1 - f6+	♙h6 - h5
7	♞f6 x e6?	♙a8 x d5+

White mates on the next move.

Akiba Rubinstein is probably best known for his mastery of the endgame and opening ideas.

However, as you can see from the next two examples, he was also a skillful combinative player. First we shall present his “immortal” combination:



548

Rotlevy - Rubinstein, Lodz, 1907

Black to move

1 ... ♞c8 x c3!!

“This is one of the best combinations ever.” - Petr Romanovsky

2 ♗g3 x h4

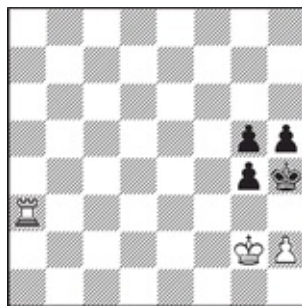
It is bad for White to play 2 ♙xc3 ♙xe4+ 3 ♚xe4 ♚xh2#. He could have prolonged his agony with 2 ♙xb7 ♖xg3 3 ♖ac1 ♖h3 4 ♖c2 ♙e3 5 ♙c1 ♙xc1 6 ♖fxc1 ♖xh2+ 7 ♚xh2 ♘xh2 8 ♖xh2 ♚xf4.

2 ... ♞d8 - d2!!
3 ♞e2 x d2

Neither 3 ♙xc3 ♙xe4+ 4 ♖f3 ♙xf3+ 5 ♚xf3 ♖xh2#, nor 3 ♙xb7 ♖xe2 4 ♙g2 ♖h3! saves the game.

3 ... ♙b7 x e4+
4 ♞d2 - g2 ♞c3 - h3!!

White resigned; if 5 ♔xe4 ♖xh2#; 5 ♖f3 ♗xf3 6 ♗d4 ♗xd4 and 7...♖xh2#.



549

Rubinstein - NN

White to move

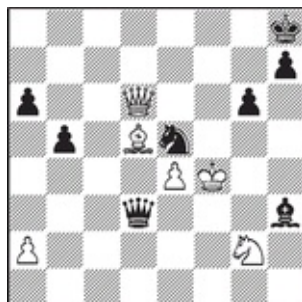
You might ask the question here, why show a position like this? It looks like White wins easily. Still, can you do it in only four moves?! The solution is fantastic.

1 ♖a3 - h3+!! g4 x h3
2 ♔g2 - f3!

Where is that king going? Stay tuned!

2 ... g5 - g4+
3 ♔f3 - f4 g4 - g3
4 h2 x g3#!

Let us go back to the world champion. During these two decades (1901- 1920) Lasker played five matches for the world championship; he won four of them and drew one. In 1907 he simply destroyed Frank Marshall by 8-0 with seven draws. Then in 1908, Lasker beat Tarrasch by 8-3 with five draws.



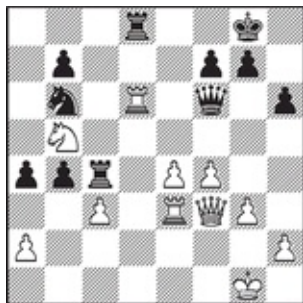
550

Lasker - Tarrasch
Düsseldorf, 1908
3rd game of the match

Black to move

1 ... g6 - g5+!

The outcome of the game becomes clear. (2 ♔xe5 ♚c3#; 2 ♔xg5 ♞f7+! 3 ♜xf7 ♚xd6) These variations are amusing, but it is also possible for Black to play 1... ♚f3+! 2 ♔xe5 (or 2 ♔g5 h6+ and Black checkmates on the next move) 2... ♚g3+! and White must give up his queen, since after 3 ♞f4, Black checkmates with 3... ♚c3#.



551

**Tarrasch - Lasker
Düsseldorf, 1908
4th game of the match**

Black to move

White had just captured Black's d6-pawn and he thought that his opponent had fallen into a trap, but:

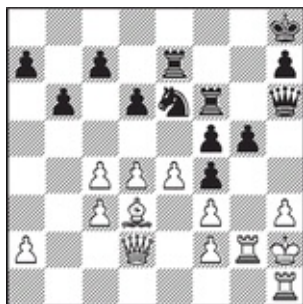
1 ... ♜d8 x d6!
2 e4 - e5 ♜c4 x f4!

That is, in fact, a counter-combination.

3 g3 x f4 ♞f6 - g6+
4 ♔g1 - h1 ♞g6 - b1+

Black soon won.

In 1909, the world champion beat Janowski convincingly in a match: 7-1 with two draws.



552

Janowski - Lasker
Paris, 1909, 2nd game of the match

Black to move

1 ... g5 - g4!
 2 ♖d3 - e2

Otherwise Black follows with the decisive 2... ♞g5! Still:

2 ... ♜e6 - g5!

It also seems very good for Black to play 2...gf 3 ♜xf3 ♞xh3+! 4 ♖g1 (or 4 ♖xh3 ♜h6+ 5 ♜h5 ♜xh5#) 4... ♞xf3.

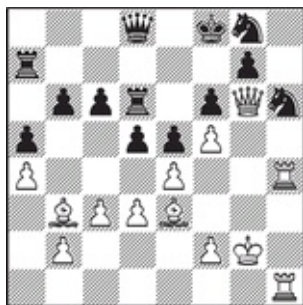
3 f3 x g4 f4 - f3
 4 ♞g2 - g3

Or 4 h4 ♞xh4+ 5 ♖g1 fe! and Black wins.

4 ... f3 x e2

White resigned.

Meanwhile, Capablanca also won a match against Marshall with eight wins, one loss and 14 draws.



553

**Capablanca - Marshall
Morristown, 1909
6th game of the match**

Black to move

1 ♖h4 x h6! ♗g7 x h6

After 1... ♗xh6 2 ♕xh6, White's position is winning.

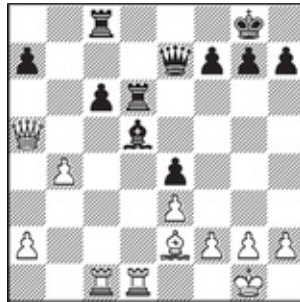
2 ♕e3 x h6+ ♔f8 - e7

In case of 2... ♗xh6, Black loses his queen: 3 ♖xh6 ♖f7 (or 3... ♖g7 4 ♖h8+) 4 ♖h8+.

3 ♖g6 - g7+ ♔e7 - e8
4 ♖g7 x g8+ ♔e8 - d7
5 ♖g8 - h7+! ♖d8 - e7
6 ♕h6 - f8! ♖e7 x h7
7 ♖h1 x h7+ ♔d7 - e8
8 ♖h7 x a7

Black resigned.

In 1910, Lasker surprisingly drew a match against Schlechter, each player winning one game and drawing eight. In the same year, though, the world champion played Janowski again and he beat him a second time; in fact, of the 11 games, Janowski did not win a single one, and he drew only three.



554

**Lasker - Janowski
Berlin, 1910**

White to move

1 ♖d1 x d5! ♖d6 x d5
2 ♖a5 x d5! ♖e7 x b4

Or 2...cd 3 ♖xc8+ ♔f8 4 ♖xf8+ and White has an extra bishop.

3 ♖c1xc6

Black resigned.



555

**Edward Lasker - Thomas
London, 1911**

White to move

In this example, a player with the same last name as the world champion charmed the world with a memorable combination:

1 ♖h5 x h7+!! ♔g8 x h7
2 ♘e4 x f6++ ♔h7 - h6

Black cannot play 2... ♖h8 because of 3 ♘g6#.

3 ♘e5 - g4+ ♔h6 - g5
4 h2 - h4+

Later, it was established that White would win more quickly after 4 f4+ ♖h4 5 g3+ ♖h3 6 ♘f1+ ♘g2 7 ♘f2#, or 4... ♖xf4 5 g3+ ♖f3 (or 5... ♖g5 6 h4#) 6 0-0#.

4 ... ♔h5 - f4
5 g2 - g3+

David Bronstein suggested here the move 5 ♘e5, forcing mate. There might follow 5... ♖b4+ 6 c3 ♖xc3+ 7 bc ♘e4 8 ♘h4+ ♖f5 9 g4#.

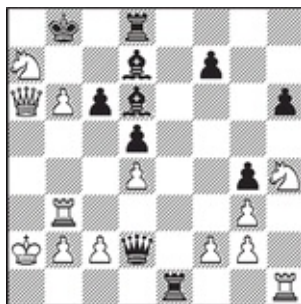
5 ... ♔f4 - f3
6 ♘d3 - e2+

After 6 0-0, or 6 ♖f1, White would mate next move.

6 ... ♖f3 - g2
 7 ♜h1 - h2+ ♙g2 - g1
 8 ♙e1 - d2#
 Or 8 0-0-0 #!

The organizers of the International Tournament in Saint Petersburg in 1914 managed to bring together the strongest in the field. Everybody was wondering whether the Cuban genius was a true rival of the player who had already been world champion for so many years.

Here is a fragment of an encounter from the last round in which Lasker ended the game with an exquisite combination. He won first prize, though Capablanca took second.



556
Lasker - Marshall
Saint Petersburg, 1914

White to move

1 ♘a7 - b5! c6 x b5
 2 ♙a6 - a7+

Black resigned. (2... ♙c8 3 ♙a8+ ♗b8 4 ♙a6#)

The third prize was won by the rising star of Russian chess - Alexander Alekhine. Just like Chigorin, Alekhine appreciated the limitless creative possibilities which the ancient game offered. He said numerous times, "For me chess is not a game, it is art."

Alekhine was a versatile grandmaster. His combinational skill was striking. The following brilliant combination is from a game that he played in a blindfold simultaneous exhibition.



557
Alekhine - Feldt

Tarnopol, 1916

White to move

1 ♖e5 - f7!! ♔g8 x f7?

Black should defend with 1... ♔c8! 2 ♔xe6 ♖e5! 3 ♖h6++ ♔h8 4 ♔xe5 ♖xf3 5 ♖xf5 ♔a6 6 ♖f7+ ♔g8 7 ♔e6 ♖h5 8 ♖d6+; White is an exchange up.

2 ♔e2 x e6+!!

This is a striking move. It is a pity that it is not White's only move leading to victory. It is also possible for him to play 2 ♖g5+ ♔g6 (The move 2... ♔g8 leads to a smothered checkmate after 3 ♔xe6+ ♔h8 4 ♖f7+ ♔g8 5 ♖h6++ ♔h8 6 ♔g8+ and 7 ♖f7#, while even after Black's relatively best defense, 2... ♔f8 3 ♔xe6, Black has a lost position, which we analyze in our notes to Black's next move.) 3 ♔xe6 and White checkmates in a few moves.

2 ... ♔f7 - g6

Here are some other beautiful variations: 2... ♔xe6 3 ♖g5#!, or 2... ♔f8! 3 ♖g5 ♖e5 4 ♖xe5 ♖d5 5 cd ♔xd5 6 ♖xh7+! and White wins.

3 ♖g2 - g4!

White achieves victory only one move slower after 3 ♖xf5+ ♔h5 4 ♖g4+ ♖xg4 5 ♖xg4#.

3 ... ♖b7 - e4
Or 3... ♖xf3 4 ♖xf5#.
4 ♖f3 - h4#



558

Alekhine - Hofmeister
Saint Petersburg, 1917

White to move

In this complicated example the wizard of combinations makes four pawn moves in a row thus forcing his opponent to capitulate.

1 b5 - b6!! ♖e5 x d6

It was necessary for Black to continue with 1...ab 2 cb ♔xg2+! (This move was discovered in Germany.) “Still, even here, after correct play, White maintains his advantage: 3 ♖xg2 ♞xd6 4 b7+ ♞xb7 5 ab+ ♖xb7 6 ♖a2+ ♞b8 7 ♙a7+ ♔a8 (or 7...♞c7 8 ♖c2+ ♙d6 9 ♖xc8 ♞xb3 10 ♖xd8+) 8 ♖ba3! and Black can hardly parry his opponent’s threats.” (Alexander Kotov)

2 c5 x d6! ♞e7 - c7

Besides this move, Alekhine analyzed:

I. 2...♖xc2 3 b7+ ♖xb7 4 ab+ ♞b8 4 ♙xa7+ and mate in three;

II. 2...♖b8 3 b7+ with mate in three;

III. 2...ab 3 ♖xc8+ ♙a7 4 de and White wins; for example, 4...♙xe7 5 ♙xb6+ ♙xa6 6 ♖a8+ ♙b7 7 ♙e3+.

IV. 2...♙c7! 3 b7+ ♙b8 4 dc+ ♖exc7 (4...♖cxc7 5 ♙xa7+ and 6 b8 ♙+) 5 ♖xc7 ♙e5+ (or 5...♖xc7 6 ♙xa7+; 5...♙xc7 6 ♖c3+) 6 ♙h1 and if 6...♙(♙)xc7, then 7 ♙h2 with a winning endgame for White.

3 b6 - b7+ ♔a8 - b8
4 d6 - d7!! ♙g5 - g3+
5 ♙h2 - h1

Black is completely helpless.

The next game is from the match between two young talents: the outstanding Dutch grandmaster and future world champion, Max Euwe, and the Czechoslovakian grandmaster and one of the main proponents of the hypermodern school of chess, Richard Reti. At the beginning of the twentieth century, they began to call the winners of strong international tournaments “grandmasters.”



Black to move

1 ... ♖c8 - h3!

It is also good for Black to play first 1...♖c5+ 2 ♔h1 ♖h3! winning.

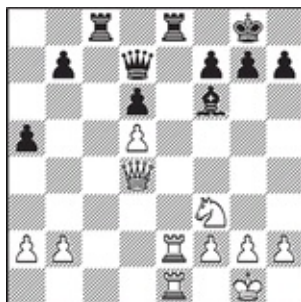
2 ♗h8 x a8

Now White gets checkmated, but he was understandably reluctant to play 2 ♖xd6 ♖xh8.

2 ... ♖d6 - c5+
3 ♔g1 - h1

If one of White's rooks goes to d4, Black follows with 3...♖xd4+ 4 ♖xd4 ♔e1#.

3 ... ♖h3 x g2+!
4 ♔h1 x g2 ♗h4 - g4+
5 ♔g2 - f1
Or 5 ♔h1 ♗f3#.
5 ... ♗g4 - f3+
6 ♔f1 - e1 ♗f3 - f2#



560

Adams - Torre, New Orleans, 1920

White to move

Our final example of this chapter shows an impressive “queen dance.”

1 ♗d4 - g4!! ♗d7 - b5!

Naturally, not: 1...♔xg4?, because of 2 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 3 ♖xe8#; nor 1...♖xe2, due to 2 ♗xd7 ♖xe1+ 3 ♗xe1.

2 ♗g4 - c4!! ♗b5 - d7!

Either way of capturing the queen 2...♗(♖)xc4 loses to 3 ♖xe8+ and 4 ♖xe8#.

3 ♖c4 - c7!! ♗d7 - b5

White's queen is again untouchable, because of 4 ♖xe8+ and 5 ♖xe8#. If 3... ♔a4, then 4 ♖b3! ♗b5 5 ♖a4!, or 4 ♖e4! ♗6 (or 4... ♗b5 5 ♗xb7!) 5 ♗xc8! ♗xe4 6 ♗xe8+!

4 ♖a2 - a4! ♗b5 x a4
5 ♗e1 - e4! ♗a4 - b5

In case of 5...b6 6 ♗xc8! Black loses his rook, and now he loses his queen.

6 ♗c7 x b7!

After 6... ♗xb7, White would follow with 7 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 8 ♖xe8#; after 6... ♗a4, 7 ♖xa4; and after 6... ♖xe4 7 ♗xc8+, mating.

Black resigned.

How Would You Play?



561

Chigorin - Lebedev
Moscow, 1900 - 1901

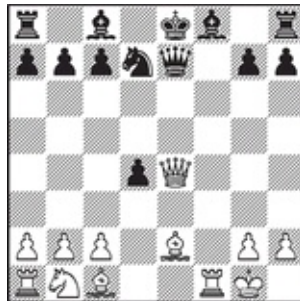
White to move



562

Corzo - Capablanca
Havana, 1901

Black to move



563

Schiffers - NN
Moscow, 1901, simultaneous display

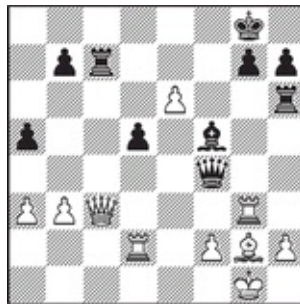
White to move



564

Schlechter - Gunsberg
Monte Carlo, 1901

White to move



565

Blackburne & Friderger - Janowski & Vomersly
Hastings, 1901

White to move



566

Consultants - Blackburne
Bradford, 1901

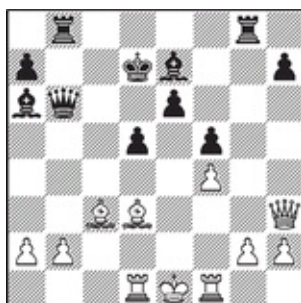
Black to move



567

Carls - Bernstein
Bremen, 1901

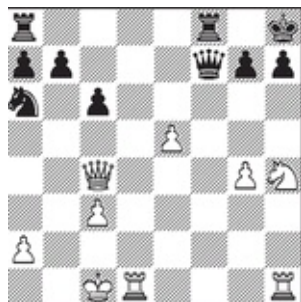
Black to move



568

Reggio - Mises
Monte-Carlo, 1903

Black to move



569

Gottshall - NN

1901

White to move

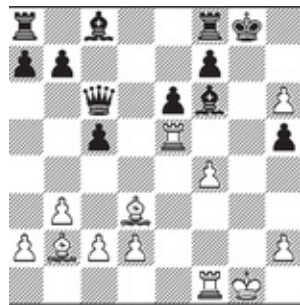


570

Word - Brown

1901

White to move

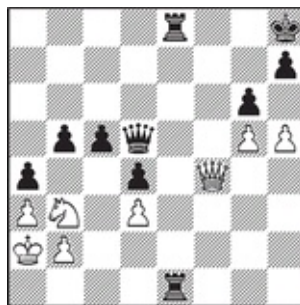


571

Tzemsh - NN

Kiev, 1902

White to move



572

Bartolich - Atkin
Saint Petersburg, 1902

White to move



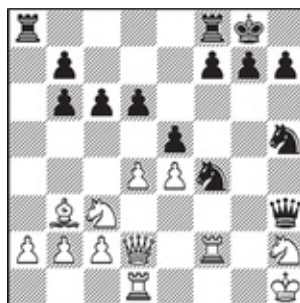
573
Varain - Salminger
1902

Black to move



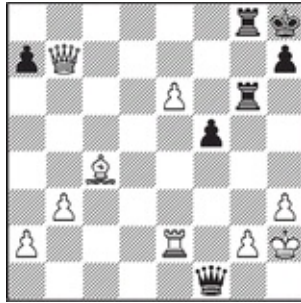
574
Chigorin - Gunsberg
1902 Monte-Carlo, 1902

White to move



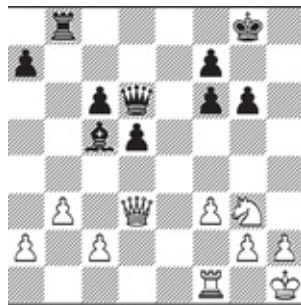
575
NN - Blackburne
1902

Black to move



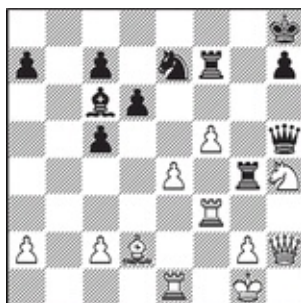
576
Bardeleben - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1902

Black to move



577
Alapin - Schiffers
Saint Petersburg, 1902

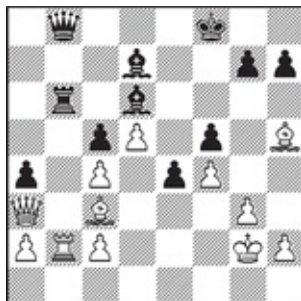
Black to move



578

Chigorin - Tarrasch
Monte Carlo, 1902

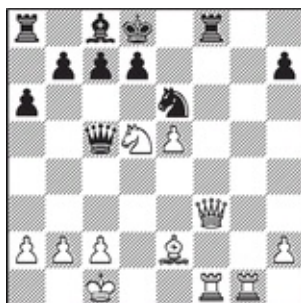
White to move



579

Chigorin - Pillsbury
Moscow, 1902

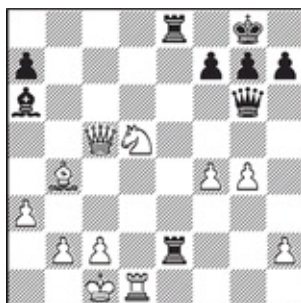
White to move



580

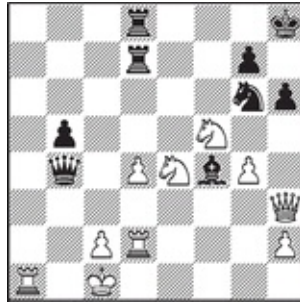
Schlechter - Teichmann
Vienna, 1903

White to move



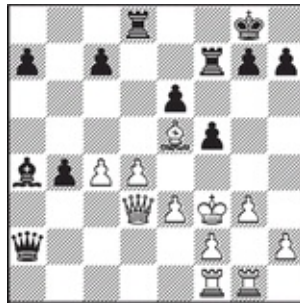
581
Chigorin - Znosko-Borovsky
Kiev, 1903

White to move



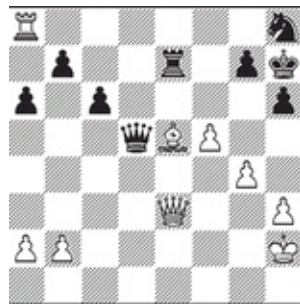
582
Chigorin - Janowski
Cambridge Springs, 1904

Black to move



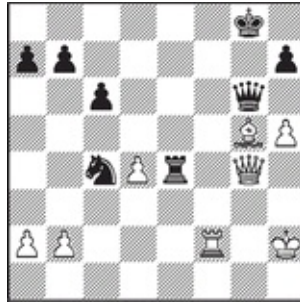
583
Teichmann - Chigorin
Cambridge Springs, 1904

Black to move



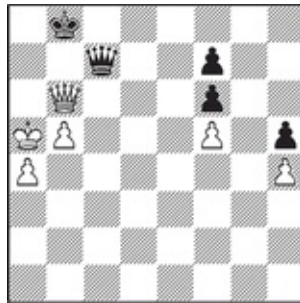
584
Neumann - Przepiorka
I Vienna, 1904

White to move



585
Marshall - Scheve
Monte Carlo, 1904

White to move



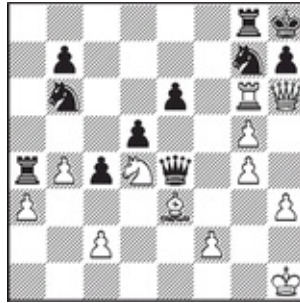
586
Chigorin - Schlechter
Ostende, 1905

Black to move



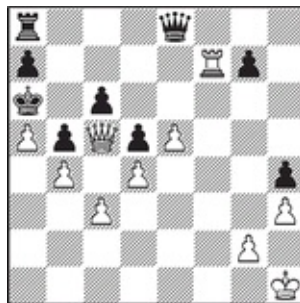
590
Leussen - Duras
1905

White to move



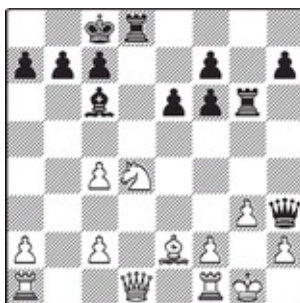
591
Nimzowitsch - NN
Vienna, 1905

White to move



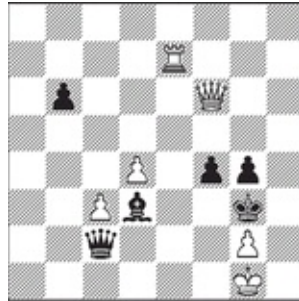
592
Nimzowitsch - Albin
Vienna, 1905

White to move



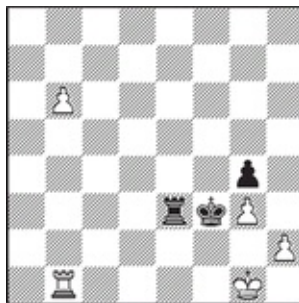
593
Nimzowitsch - Fluss
Zurich, 1906

White to move



594
Janowski - Forgács
Ostende, 1906

White to move



595
Schlechter - Wolf
Nurnberg, 1906

Black to move



596

Schlechter - Przepiorka
Nurnberg, 1906

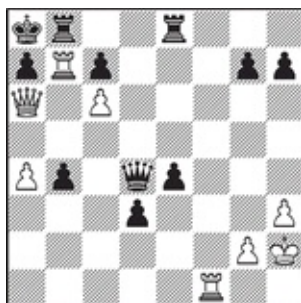
White to move



597

Raubitschek - Capablanca
New York, 1906

Black to move



598

Capablanca - Raubitschek
New York, 1906

White to move



599

Vjahirev - Alekhine
Correspondence game, 1906 -1907

Black to move



600

Alekhine - Gaidukevich
1906-1907

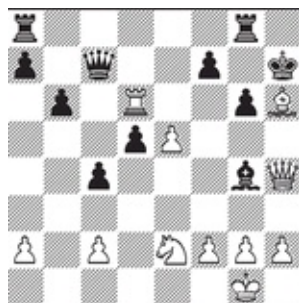
White to move



601

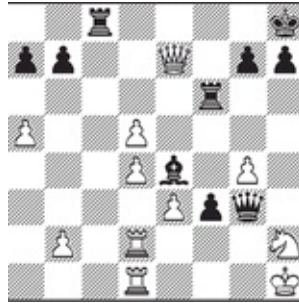
Perlasea - Grassi
Como, 1907

White to move



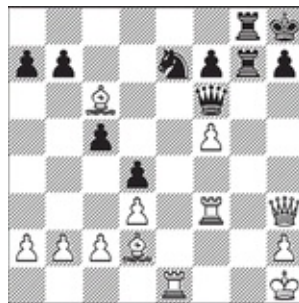
602
Duras - Olland
1907

White to move



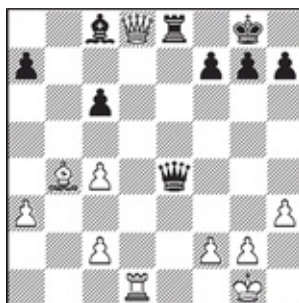
603
Salwe - Rubinstein
Lodz, 1907

Black to move



604
Chigorin - Tarrasch
Ostende, 1907

Black to move



605

**Tartakower - Billecard
Ostende, 1907**

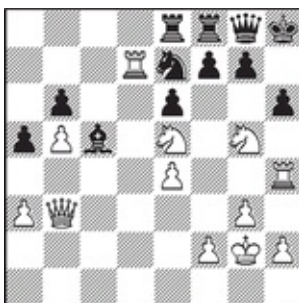
White to move



606

**Tarrasch - Consultants
Cologne, 1907**

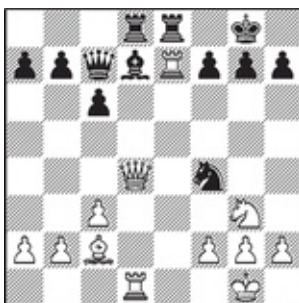
White to move



607

**Janowski - Berger
Carlsbad, 1907**

White to move



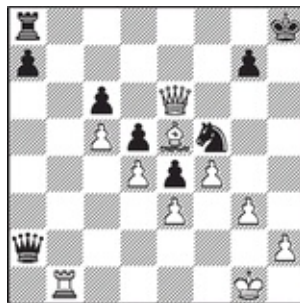
608
Janowski - Burn
Ostende, 1907

White to move



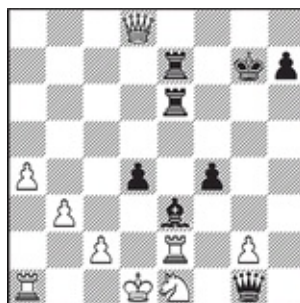
609
P. Romanovsky - A. Romanovsky
Saint Petersburg, 1907

White to move



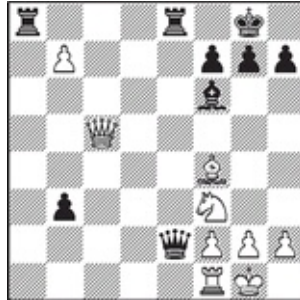
610
Janowski - Marshall
Suren, 1908

White to move



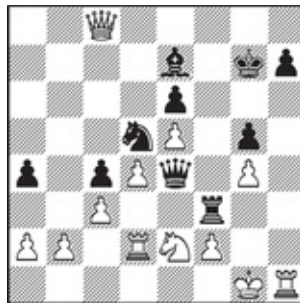
611
Tarrasch - Lasker
Düsseldorf, 1908
2nd game of the match

Black to move



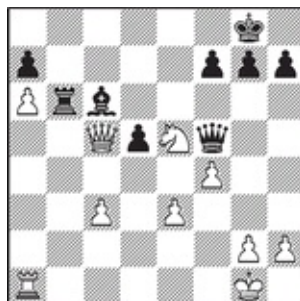
612
Bardeleben - Alekhine
Düsseldorf, 1908

Black to move



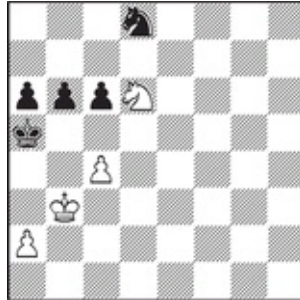
613
Marshall - Rubinstein
Lodz, 1908

Black to move



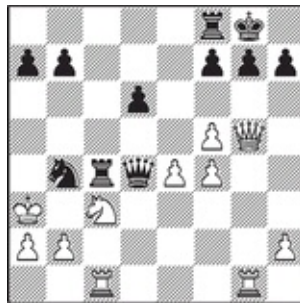
614
Marshall - Capablanca
Seranton, 1909
7th game of the match

White to move



615
Bernstein - NN
1909

White to move



616
Lasker - Romanovsky
Saint Petersburg, 1909
Simultaneous exhibition

Black to move



617

**A. Lasker - Ed. Lasker
Breslau, 1909**

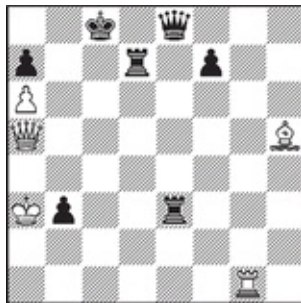
Black to move



618

**Znosko-Borovsky - Duras
Saint Petersburg, 1909**

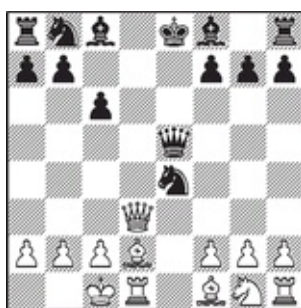
Black to move



619

**Duras - NN
Prague, 1910**

White to move



620

Reti - Tartakower
Vienna, 1910

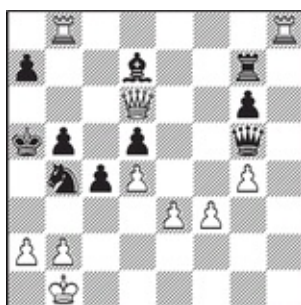
White to move



621

Duz-Hotimirsky - Trublensky
Tula, 1910, simultaneous display

White to move



622

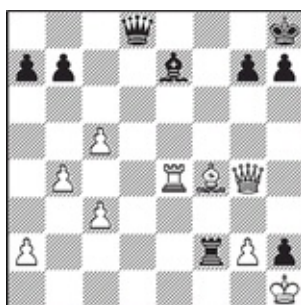
Duz-Hotimirsky - Forgács
Hamburg, 1910

White to move



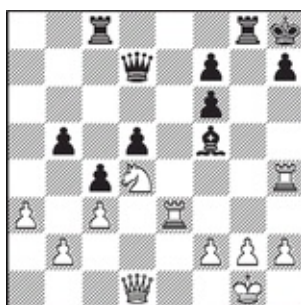
623
Capablanca - Jaffe
New York, 1910

White to move



624
Capablanca - Spielmann
San Sebastian, 1911

White to move



625
Capablanca - Morris
New York, 1911

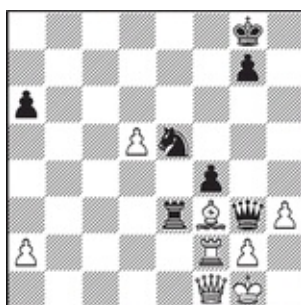
White to move



626

**Alekhine - Tenner
Cologne, 1911**

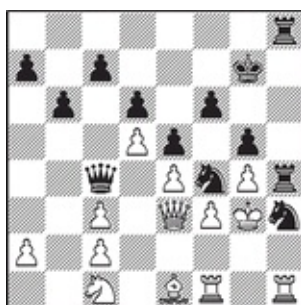
White to move



627

**Perlis - Duz-Hotimirsky
Carlsbad, 1911**

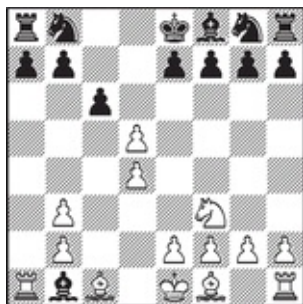
Black to move



628

**Consultants - Duz-Hotimirsky
Paris, 1911**

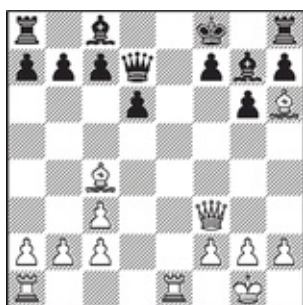
Black to move



629

**Schlechter - Perlis
Carlsbad, 1911**

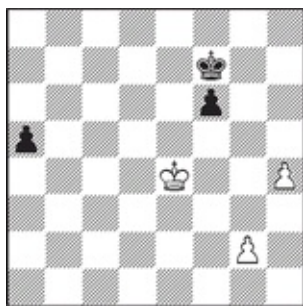
White to move



630

**Nimzowitsch - Tartakower
Carlsbad, 1911**

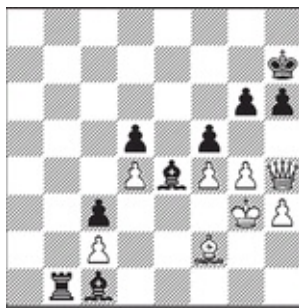
White to move



631

**Nimzowitsch - Tarrasch
San Sebastian, 1911**

Black to move



632

Spielmann - Tarrasch
San Sebastian, 1911

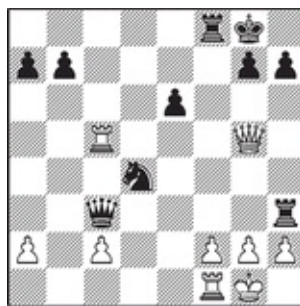
Black to move



633

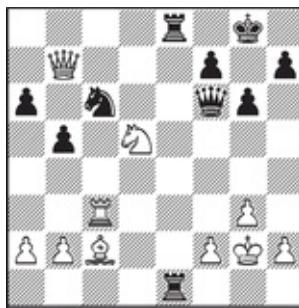
Potemkin - Alekhine
Saint Petersburg, 1912

Black to move



634 Levitzky - Marshall
Breslau, 1912

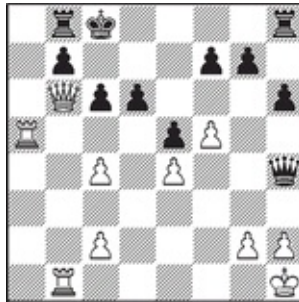
Black to move



635

Kugenek - Romanovsky
Saint Petersburg, 1912

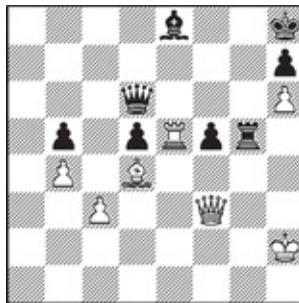
Black to move



636

Spielmann - Schrossel
Passau, 1912

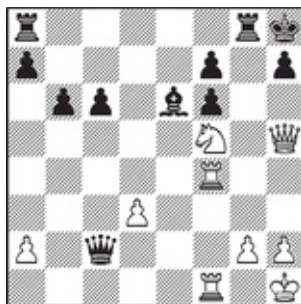
White to move



637

Duras - Spielmann
Pistyan, 1912

White to move



638

**Spielmann - Consultants
Agram, 1913**

White to move



639

**Alekhine - Prat
Paris, 1913
Simultaneous exhibition - blindfold**

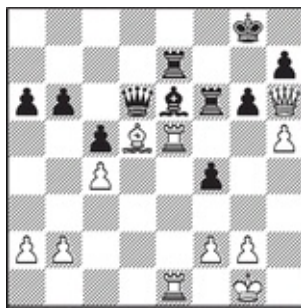
White to move



640

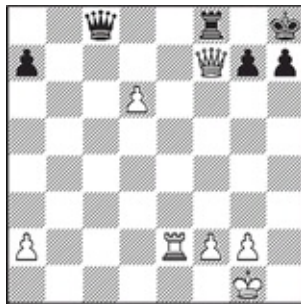
**Rodzynski - Alekhine
Paris, 1913**

Black to move



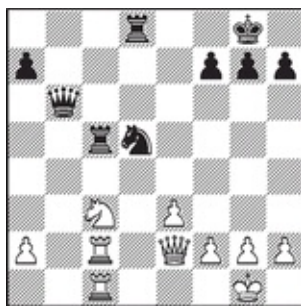
641
Capablanca - Blanco
Havana, 1913

White to move



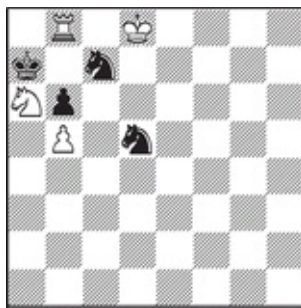
642
Capablanca - Grommer
New York, 1913

White to move



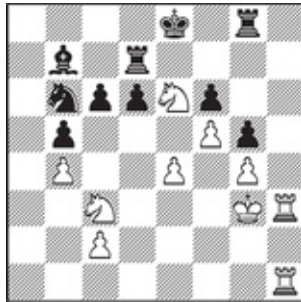
643
Bernstein - Capablanca
Moscow, 1914

Black to move



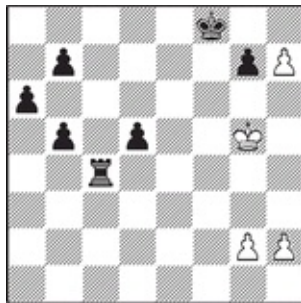
644
Capablanca - Lasker
Saint Petersburg, 1914

White to move



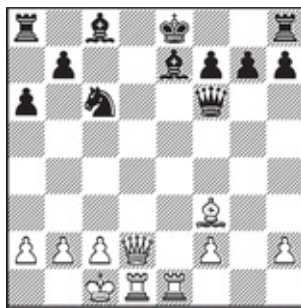
645
Lasker - Capablanca
Saint Petersburg, 1914

White to move



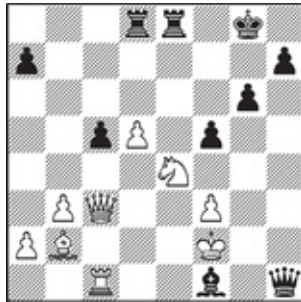
646
Lasker - Loman
London, 1914, simultaneous display

Black to move



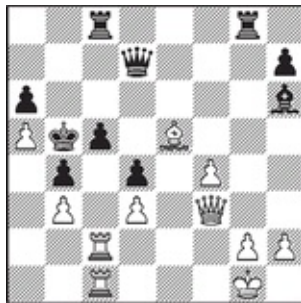
647
Nimzowitsch - Alapin
Saint Petersburg, 1914

White to move



648
Nimzowitsch - Tarrasch
Saint Petersburg, 1914

Black to move



649
Tarrasch - Consultants
Naples, 1914

White to move



650

**Schuster - Carls
Bremen, 1914**

Black to move



651

**Tarrasch - Satzinger
Munich, 1915**

White to move



652

**Alekhine - NN
I Moscow, 1915**

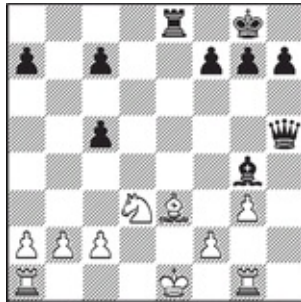
White to move



653

Alekhine - Zubarev
Moscow, 1915-1916

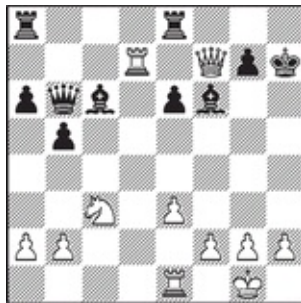
White to move



654

Tarrasch - Lasker
Berlin, 1916

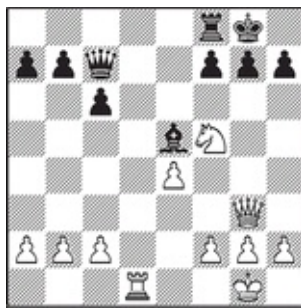
Black to move



655

Janowski - Chajes
New York, 1916

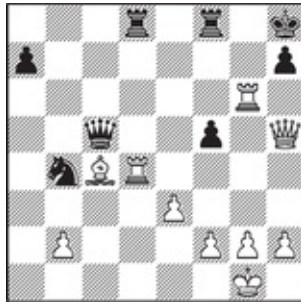
White to move



656

**Capablanca - Fonaroff
New York, 1918**

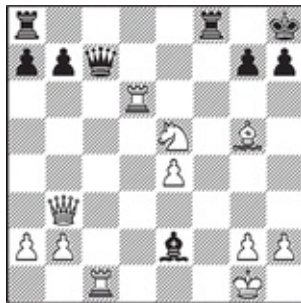
White to move



657

**Capablanca - Janowski
New York, 1918**

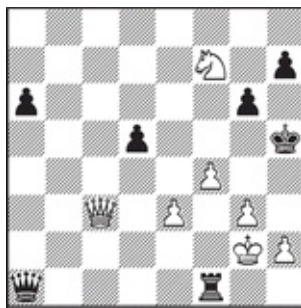
White to move



658

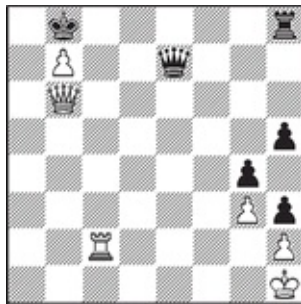
**Alekhine - Verlinsky
Odessa, 1918**

White to move



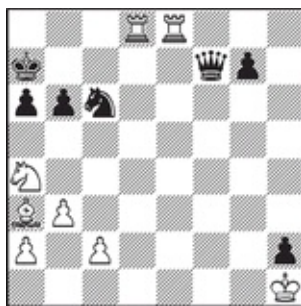
659
Alekhine - Kaufmann
Odessa, 1919

White to move



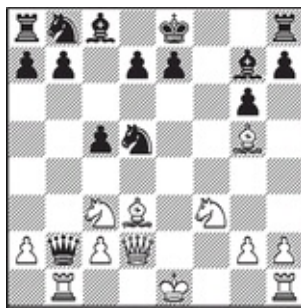
660
Lasker - NN
1920, simultaneous exhibition

White to move



661
Euwe - Reti
Amsterdam, 1920

White to move



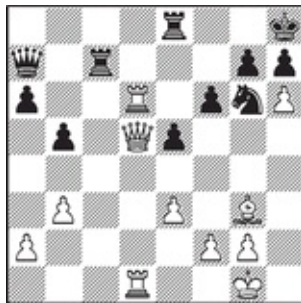
662
Reti - Euwe
Rotterdam, 1920

White to move



663
Oskam - Euwe
Amsterdam, 1920

Black to move



664
Rubinstein - Maróczy
Gothenburg, 1920

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 561. 1 ♖g3+ ♔h8 2 ♕e7! h5 (“If Black protects his f6-pawn with ♘d7, he loses a piece: 3 ♕xe6 ♖xe7 4 ♕xd7 ♗ad8 5 ♖gd3 etc.” - Chigorin) 3 ♕xf6+. Black resigned. (3... ♔h7 4 ♕d3+ ♕f5 5 ♕xf5+ ♖h6 6 ♕g7#)

Diagram 562. 1... ♘xh5! 2 ♕xh8 f3! 3 gf ♘f4 4 ♕e5 (Black was threatening 4... ♕h3.) 4... ♖g2+ 5 ♔f1 ♖f2+ 6 ♔e1 (or 6 ♖g1 ♘e2#) 6... ♘d3+. (or 6... ♖e2+ and 7... ♖xe5) White resigned. (7 ♔d1 ♘xe5)

Diagram 563. 1 ♕h5+ ♔d8 (Or 1...g6 2 ♕xg6+! ♔d8 3 ♕g5! ♖xg5? 4 ♖e8#; 2...hg3 ♖xg6+ ♔d84 ♕g5; White wins his opponent’s queen for two minor pieces.) 2 ♕g5! ♘f6 (or 2... ♖xg5 3 ♖e8#) 3 ♖xf6! gf (or 3... ♖xe4 4 ♗d6#) 4 ♕xf6! ♖xf6 4 ♖e8#.

Diagram 564. 1 ♘xd5! ♖xd5 (or 1... ♕xh5 2 ♘xf6++ ♖h8 3 ♖xh5+ ♕h6 4 ♖xh6+ ♔g7 5 ♘e8++ ♖xh6 6 ♗h3#, or 4... ♖h7 5 ♘xh7+ ♗d4 6 ♖xd4!; 1... ♕f7 2 ♘xf6+ ♕xf6 3 ♖h8+! and 4 ♖xh8#, or 2... ♖xf6 3 ♕xf7+ ♖xf7 4 ♖h8+!) 2 ♖xd5 ♕f7? (It is slightly better for Black to play 2... ♖xd5 3 ♕xd5+ ♖xd5 4 ♖xe8) 3 ♖xd7 (Here Chigorin found the move 3 ♖xf7+!!, after which Black would be forced to resign.) The game continued 3... ♖xd7 4 ♗d3! ♕xb3 5 ♖xd7 ♘xd7 6 ♖e8+ ♘f8 7 ♖c6 ♘h7 8 a4, and Gunsberg admitted defeat.

Diagram 565. 1 ♖xg7+! Black resigned. (1... ♖xg7 2 ♖c8#; 1... ♔f8 2 ♖xc7 ♖xh2+ 3 ♔f1)

Diagram 566. 1... ♖a6! 2g4? (Or 2 ♕xa6? ♘xa2#. In fact, White had to play 2 cb ♖xc4+ 3 ♕c3 ♖xa2 4 ♕d2, but even then after, for example, 4... ♖fe8, White’s position would not be one to envy.) 2... ♖xa2! (It is not worse for Black at all to follow with 2... ♖a4! 3 ♕d3 ♕xd3.) 3 ♕e3 (or 3 ♖xa2 ♘xa2#; 3 ♕e1 ♖b1+ 4 ♔d2 ♖xb2+) 3... ♕xc3. White resigned.

Diagram 567. 1... ♖d1+ 2 ♔g2 (or 2 ♔f2 fg++) 2...f3+ 3 ♔f2 ♖g1+! 4 ♖xg1 f2+ 5 ♔f1 ♕h3+ 6 ♖e2 f1 ♖+ 7 ♖e3 ♖f3+ 8 ♔d2 ♖f2+ 9 ♖e3 ♖e2#.

Diagram 568. 1... ♖g3! 2 ♖xg3 (or 2 hg ♖e3+ 3 ♕e2 ♖xe2#) 2... ♕h4! White resigned. (3 ♖xh4 ♖e3+; 3 ♕xa6 ♕xg3+ 4 hg ♖xa6)

Diagram 569. 1 ♖df1! ♖xc4 (or 1... ♖e8 2 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 3 ♘g6#; 1... ♖xf1+ 2 ♖xf1) 2 ♘g6+ ♔g8 3 ♘e7+ ♔h8 4 ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 5 ♖h1#.

Diagram 570. 1 ♖xf6+! gf (or 1... ♖f7 2 ♖xf7#) 2 ♕h6+ ♖g7 3 ♖xf6#.

Diagram 571. 1 ♖g5+! ♕xg5 (or 1... ♕g7 2 h7+ ♖h8 3 ♕xg7#) 2 h7#.

Diagram 572. 1 ♖f6+ ♔g8 2 ♖g7+!! ♖xg7 3 h6+ and White is stalemated.

Diagram 573. 1... ♘xe4! White resigned. (If 2 gh? ♘f2++ 3 ♔g1 ♘xh3#; 2 ♕xe4 ♕xe4; 2 ♖f3

♔h4, with an extra piece for Black.)

Diagram 574.1 ♖d8 ♖g7 2 ♘g5+! 2...hg 3 ♖xc8 ♙xc8 4 ♙xg5. White's position is winning. After 4...♙b7 5 h4 ♘f6 6 ♚e5 ♘e4 7 ♚xe6 ♘xg5 8 ♚xf5+ ♔h6 9 ♚f6+ ♔h7 10 hg ♙e4 11 ♚h6+. Black resigned.

Diagram 575. 1...♘g3+ 2 ♚g1 ♚g2+!! 3 ♖xg2 ♘h3#.

Diagram 576. 1...♖g3! White resigned. He has no satisfactory defense against the threat 2...♖xh3+! 3 gh ♚g1#, or 3 ♖xh3 ♚h1#; if 2 ♚f3, then simply 2...♖xf3, mating.

Diagram 577. "1...♚xg3! and Black wins. If 2 hg, then ♔g7 and ♖h8#. White can only give up both his queen and rook." (Schiffers)

Diagram 578. 1 ♖h3! ("Black relied only on the line 1 ♘g6+? hg 2 ♖h3 ♖h7 3 ♖xh5 ♖xh5" - Chigorin) 1...♖fg7 2 ♘g6+! hg 3 fg! Black resigned.

Diagram 579. 1 ♙xg7+! ♔e7 ("If 1...♔xg7, then 2 ♚c3+ ♔g8 3 ♚f6 and Black must give up his bishop in order to avoid being mated in four. Naturally, White must win, having a couple of extra pawns." - Chigorin. In case of 2...♙e5, it is good for White to play 3 fe!) 2 ♚c3 ♔d8 3 ♚a5. Black resigned. (3...♙c7 4 ♚xc5!; 3...♔c7 4 ♙f6!, threatening 5 ♖xb6 and 6 ♙d8+!)

Diagram 580. 1 ♖g8! (Schlechter would have won, too, after 1 ♚xf8+ ♘xf8 2 ♖g8, but probably not so quickly.) Black resigned, because of 1...♖xg8 2 ♚f6+ ♔e8 3 ♚f7+ ♔d8 4 ♚xg8+ and mate follows.

Diagram 581. 1 ♘e7+! ♖8xe7? (It was correct for Black to play 1...♖2xe7 2 ♚xe7! ♚e6, but even then White's position would be winning.) 2 ♖d8+ (or 2 ♚xe7?? ♚xc2#) 2...♖e8 3 ♚f8+! ♖xf8 4 ♖xf8#.

Diagram 582. 1...♖xd4! 2 c3 (or 2 ♘xd4 ♚xd4 3 ♔b1 ♙xd2) 2...♖xe4! White resigned. (3 cb ♖xd2 4 ♘e3 ♖xe3 5 ♚xe3 ♙xe3 and Black is up two pieces.)

Diagram 583. 1...♙c2! White resigned. "White loses his queen, or he gets mated in a few moves: 2 ♚d2 ♙e4+ 3 ♔e2 ♙f3+, etc." - Chigorin, while after 2 ♖a1 ♚xa1! 3 ♖xa1 ♙xd3, Black wins a rook.

Diagram 584. 1 ♚xh6+! ♔xh6 (or 1...gh 2 ♖xh8#) 2 ♖xh8+ ♔g5 3 ♖h5#.

Diagram 585. 1 ♙h6! and Black cannot capture the queen, because of 2 ♖f8#.

Diagram 586. 1...♔a8! and White cannot avoid the draw - the move 2 ♖xc7 leads to a stalemate, while after 2 ♖a6, Black would play 2... ♖c8+ 3 ♖a5 ♖c3+ 4 ♖a6 ♖c8+ with a perpetual check, or 3... ♖c7!.

Diagram 587. 1 ♖xe5!! (“This is an excellent combination, forcing an immediate win.” - Fedor Bogatirchuk. It is also possible for White to play 1 ♖xe5! fe 2 ♖f7+ ♖h8! 3 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 4 ♖f5.) 1...fe 2 ♖xe5+ ♖f6 3 ♖g4! ♖f4 (or 3... ♖g8 4 ♖xf6! ♖xf6 5 ♖xf6+; 3... ♖h8 4 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 5 ♖xf6+ ♖g8 and Black is almost in a zugzwang.) 4 ♖a7+ (or 4 ♖xf6 ♖xe5 5 ♖a7+! ♖xf6 and then 6 ♖xh7 is crushing.) 4... ♖h8 5 ♖xf6+. Black resigned. (5... ♖xf6 6 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 7 ♖xf6+ and 8 ♖xe8)

Diagram 588. 1 ♖xh6+! gh 2 ♖xf7! (“This additional sacrifice eliminates the only defender of Black’s king. The security forces will be soon dead as well.” - Tartakower) 2... ♖xf7 3 ♖xh6 ♖g8 (or 3... ♖f8 4 ♖h7+ ♖g7 5 ♖h5+ ♖f8 6 ♖d6+ ♖e7 7 ♖xe7#; 3... ♖e7 4 ♖h5+ ♖g8 5 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 6 ♖g6 and mate) 4 ♖g6+ ♖h8 5 ♖xf6+ ♖g8 6 ♖g6+ ♖h8 (or 6... ♖f8 7 ♖f4) 7 ♖e5! Black resigned. (or 7... ♖xe5 8 ♖xe5#)

Diagram 589. 1 ♖e8+! (White would not checkmate as quickly after 1 c7+ ♖xf3 2 ♖e8+! ♖xe8 3 ♖xe8+ ♖b7 4 c8 ♖+.) 1... ♖xe8 (or 1... ♖xe8 2 c7+ ♖xf3 3 c8 ♖#) 2 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 3 c7+ ♖xf3 4 c8 ♖#.

Diagram 590. 1 ♖7e6++ ♖e8 (or 1... ♖g8 2 ♖g7#) 2 ♖f8+! ♖xf8 3 ♖g7#.

Diagram 591. 1 ♖f3!! ♖xg6 (“In case Black had captured the knight and not the rook by 1... ♖xf3+ White would have followed with 2 ♖h2 ♖f5 3 gf ♖xf5 4 ♖xe6, winning.” - Nimzowitsch) 2 ♖e5! ♖e4+ (or 2... ♖f5 3 ♖xg6+ ♖xg6 4 ♖f8+ ♖g8 5 ♖f6+, and White wins) 3 f3 ♖xe5 4 g6. Black resigned.

Diagram 592. 1 ♖xa7+! ♖xa7 2 ♖b6#.

Diagram 593. 1 ♖xc6! ♖xd1 (It is better for Black to defend with 1... bc 2 c5! ♖d5!, but after: 3 ♖a6+ ♖d8 4 ♖f3, or 4 ♖e2 ♖h5 5 ♖d2+ ♖e7 6 f4, White keeps his extra piece.) 2 ♖fxd1 bc (or 2...b6 3 ♖e7+) 3 c5!! ♖g8 4 ♖ab1, and mate is unavoidable.

Diagram 594. 1 ♖e3+!! f3 (or 1... fe 2 ♖d6+! ♖h4 3 ♖h6+ ♖g3 4 ♖h2#!) 2 ♖d6+. (White could have won sooner with 2 ♖xf3+! gf 3 ♖g5#.) Black resigned. (2... ♖h4 3 ♖h6+ ♖g3 4 ♖h2#)

Diagram 595. 1... ♖e1+!, and after 2 ♖xe1, Black is stalemated - draw.

Diagram 596. 1 ♖xg6! Black resigned. If 1...hg, then 2 ♖h8#, while after 1...fg, there would follow 2 ♖h6 ♖f7 3 ♖xh7+ ♖e6 4 ♖xg6+ ♖f6 5 ♖xf6 ♖xc7 (or 5... ♖xf6 6 ♖c6+) 6 ♖e5+! ♖xe5 7 f4#, or 5 ♖c6+ ♖d7 6 ♖d6+ ♖c7 7 ♖f7+ ♖e7 8 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 9 ♖xf6.

Diagram 597. 1. ♖xg2+ 2 ♔f1 (or 2 ♖h1 ♖g1+ 3 ♖h2 ♔xf6 4 ♖xf6 ♖8g2#; 2 ♖xg2 ♖xg2+ and 3... ♔xf6) 2... ♕c4+! 3 ♖xc4 ♖g1#.

Diagram 598. 1 ♖f5! e3. There is no salvation. "White checkmates in three moves." - Capablanca. (2 ♖xa7+!! ♔xa7 3 ♖a5! ♔xa6 4 ♖xa6#; if 3... ♖b7, then 4 ♖xb7#)

Diagram 599. 1... ♖g2+! 2 ♖xg2 fg#.

Diagram 600. 1 ♖xg7+! Black resigned. (1... ♖xg7 2 ♖h8+ ♖g8 3 ♕h6#; 1... ♖xg7 2 ♕h6+ ♖h8 3 ♕f8+ ♖h5 4 ♖xh5#)

Diagram 601. 1 ♖xe8+! ♔xe8 2 ♖d4+ ♔f8 (or 2... ♖e5 3 ♖g8+ ♔e7 4 ♖f5#) 3 ♖e8+! ♔xe8 4 ♖g8+ ♔e7 5 ♖f5#.

Diagram 602. 1 ♕f8+ ♕h5 2 ♖xh5+! gh 3 ♖h6#.

Diagram 603. 1... ♖e1+! 2 ♖xe1 f2+! 3 ♖xe4 fe♔+ 4 ♔g2 ♖xd2+. White resigned.

Diagram 604. 1... ♖xc6! 2 ♖f1 (or 2 f6 ♖g3!) 2... ♖g4 3 ♕e1 ♖xf5. White resigned. His pieces are completely paralyzed: 4 ♖h5 ♖xf3+! 5 ♖xf3 ♖g1#; 4 ♕d2 ♖h4; 4 ♕f2 ♖f4 5 ♕e1 ♖e3 6 ♖f2 ♖fg4.

Diagram 605. 1 ♕e7! Black resigned. (1... ♖xe7 2 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 3 ♖d8+; 1... ♕d7 2 ♖xd7!)

Diagram 606. 1 ♕a4! (It was also good for White to continue with Neishtadt's move, 1 ♖xf7; for example, 1... ♖xe2 2 ♖c7+ ♔e8 3 ♖g8#, or 1... ♖e6 2 ♖a1.) Black resigned. (1... ♖xg8 2 ♖xg8#)

Diagram 607. 1 ♖c3! (or 1 ♖b2! with the same idea) 1... f6 (White was threatening 2 ♖xh6+ gh 3 ♖xf7# and 2 ♖g6+! fg 3 ♖xh6+! mating.) 2 ♖xe7. Black resigned. (If 2... ♖xe7 3 ♖g6#; 2... fe 3 ♖xh6+! gh 4 ♖xe5+ and mate in two; 2... fg 3 ♖xh6+ ♖h7 4 ♖g6+.)

Diagram 608. 1 ♖xd7!! ("...Burn probably relied on the line 1 ♖xd7? ♖xd7 2 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 3 ♖xd7 ♖e1+ 4 ♖f1 ♖e2+ 5 ♖h1 ♖xf1#" - Janowski) Black resigned. (1... ♖xd7 2 ♖xe8#, 1... ♖xd7 2 ♖dxd7!)

Diagram 609. 1 ♖g1! and mate after 2 ♖g8+! ♖xg8 3 ♖f7#; Black can delay it for one move with 1... ♖d5.

Diagram 610. 1 ♕xg7+! Black resigned. (1... ♖xg7 2 ♖h6+ ♖g8 3 ♖b7; 1... ♖h7 2 ♖xf5+)

Diagram 611. 1... f3! 2 gf ♕g5! White resigned. (3 ♖xe6 ♖xe6 4 ♖d7+ ♖e7)

Diagram 612. 1... ♖xf1+! 2 ♜xf1 ♖a1+ 3 ♜c1 b2. White resigned.

Diagram 613. 1... ♘e3! (This is the best move. It is much weaker for Black to play 1... ♖xg4+ 2 ♘g3, but it is possible for him to try 1... ♘f4 2 ♘xf4 ♖xf4 3 ♖xe6 ♖xg4+ 4 ♖xg4 ♖xg4+ with a material advantage for Black.) 2 ♘g3 (or 2 ♜fe ♖xe3+ and 3... ♖f2#) 2... ♖xg3+! 3 ♜fg ♖b1+ 4 ♖f2 (or 4 ♖h2 ♘xg4+ 5 ♖h3 ♖xh1+, or 5 ♖g2 ♖e4+ 6 ♖g1 ♖e1+ 7 ♖g2 ♖xd2+ 8 ♖h3 ♘e3 — both cases leading to mate) 4... ♘xg4+ 5 ♖e2 ♖e4+. White resigned. (6 ♖f1 ♖xh1+ 7 ♖e2 ♖g2+ 8 ♖e1 ♖g1+ 9 ♖e2 ♖f2+ 10 ♖d1 ♖f1+ 11 ♖c2 ♘e3#)

Diagram 614. 1 ♖xb6! (“The variation 1 ♘xc6 ♖b1+ would only lead to a draw.” - Capablanca) Black resigned. (1...ab 2 ♘xc6)

Diagram 615. 1 c5!! (or 1 a3? c5!) 1... ♘e6 (or 1...bc 2 ♘c4+ ♖b5 3 a4#; 1...b5 2 a3! b4 3 ab#, or 2... ♘e6 3 ♘b7#) 2 ♘b7+ ♖b5 3 a4#.

Diagram 616. 1... ♘c2+! 2 ♖b3 (or 2 ♖xc2 ♖c5+ 3 ♖b3 ♖b4#) 2... ♖b4+! 3 ♖xc2 ♖f2+ 4 ♘e2 (or White gets checkmated) 4... ♖xe2+ 5 ♖c3 ♖c4+ 6 ♖d2 ♖xb2+ 7 ♖e3 ♖e2+ 8 ♖d4 ♖d2+ 9 ♖c4 ♖b4# (or 9... ♖c8#)

Diagram 617. 1... ♖xg5! 2 ♖xh8+ ♖d7 3 ♖xa8 (or 3 ♖xh7 ♖c1+ 4 ♖e2 ♖xc2+, winning) 3... ♖c1+ 4 ♖e2 ♖xc2+ 5 ♖e3 (or 5 ♘d2 ♖xd2+ 6 ♖f3 ♖xf2+! 7 ♖xe4 ♖f5+ 8 ♖d5 ♖d4#) 5... ♖xf2+! 6 ♖d3 (or 6 ♖xe4 ♖f5+ 7 ♖d5 ♖d4#) 6...c4+! 7 ♖xe4 f5#.

Diagram 618. 1... ♖e2! White resigned. (2 ♖xe2 ♖xf1#)

Diagram 619. 1 ♖c1+ ♖b8 2 ♖b4+ ♖a8 3 ♜f3+! ♖xf3 4 ♖e4+! Black resigned. (4... ♖xe4 5 ♖c8#; 4... ♖b8 5 ♖xe8+)

Diagram 620. 1 ♖d8+! ♖xd8 2 ♜g5++ ♖c7 (or 2... ♖e8 3 ♖d8#) 3 ♜d8#.

Diagram 621. 1 ♘b6+! ab (or 1... ♖b8 2 ♖d8#; 1... ♜xb6 2 ♖xc6+! ♘c7! 3 ♖d7+ ♖b8 4 ♖d8+! followed by mate) 2 ♖d8+! ♜xd8 3 ♖xc6+! ♘c7 (3...bc 4 ♜a6#; 3... ♜c7 4 ♖d7+ ♖b8 5 ♖d8+ ♖a7 6 ♖a1#) 4 ♖xd8+! ♖xd8 5 ♖xc7+ ♖e8 6 ♜b5+, and mate in one.

Diagram 622. 1 ♖c7+ ♖a6 (or 1... ♖a4 2 ♖xa7+ and mate) 2 ♖b6+! ab (or 2... ♖a5 3 ♖xa7+) 3 ♖a8#.

Diagram 623. 1 ♜xh6+! ♖xh6 (If 1... ♖g8!, White can play 2 ♘xf7! ♜xh2+ 3 ♖xh2 ♖c7+ 4 ♘d6 ♖h7 5 ♖h3 and he wins.) 2 ♘xf7+! Black resigned. (2... ♖xf7 3 ♖xg6#; 2... ♖h5 3 ♖h3#)

Diagram 624. 1 ♖xe7! ♖f8 (or 1... ♖xe7 2 ♖c8+ and mate to follow) 2 ♖xg7+! (It is also possible for White to play 2 ♖c7 ♖f1+ 3 ♖xh2 ♖xf4 4 ♖c8!) Black resigned. (2... ♖xg7 3 ♖e8+ ♖

f8! 4 ♖xf8+ ♔g7 5 ♕h6+!

Diagram 625. 1 ♖e7! ♔xe7 2 ♘xf5. Black resigned. White is threatening 3 ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 4 ♔h5#.

Diagram 626. 1 ♘xe5! ♕xd1 2 ♕xf7+ ♔e7 (or 2... ♔f8 3 ♕xc5+ ♖d6 4 ♕xd6+ cd 5 ♖xd1 ♘f6 6 ♘c4) 3 ♕xc5+ ♔f6 (or 3... ♖d6 4 ♕xd6+ cd 5 ♔xd1 ♘f6 6 ♘c4, leaving White up a piece) 4 0-0+ ♔xe5 (or 4... ♔g5 5 ♕e3+ ♔h4 6 g3+ with mate) 5 ♖f5#.

Diagram 627. 1... ♖e1! 2 ♔xe1 ♘xf3+ 3 ♖xf3 ♔xe1+, and Black wins.

Diagram 628. 1... ♔xf1! (This is the best for Black, but he has a good alternative, 1... ♘f2!; for example, 2 ♔xf2 ♖h2+ 3 ♖xh2 ♖xh2+ 4 ♔g1 ♖g2+, mating.) 2 ♖xf1 ♘f2! 3 ♔xf4 (or 3 ♔xf2 ♖h3#; 3 ♔xf2 ♖h2+ and 4... ♖g2#) 3... ♖h2! White resigned because of the unavoidable checkmate.

Diagram 629. 1 dc!! ♘xc6! (Or 1... ♕e4? 2 ♖xa7!! ♖xa7 3 c7 - this is an amazing combination!) 2 ♖xb1. White has won a pawn.

Diagram 630. 1 ♔f6! ♖g8 (or 1... ♕xh6 2 ♔xh8#) 2 ♕xg7+ (Here White could have mated in three: 2 ♕xf7! ♔xf7 3 ♖d8+ ♔e8 4 ♔xe8#.) 2... ♖xg7 3 ♕xf7! Black resigned, due to 3... ♖xf7 4 ♔h8#; 3... ♔xf7 4 ♖d8+ ♔e8 5 ♔xe8#; and 3... ♔e6 4 ♕xe6+ ♔e8 5 ♕xc8+ ♖e7 6 ♔xe7#.

Diagram 631. 1... f5+! White resigned. (2 ♔xf5 a4; 2 ♔d4 f4! 3 ♔c4 ♔g6)

Diagram 632. 1... ♕xf4+! (Or 1... g5! 2 fg ♕xg5! 3 ♔h5 f4+ 4 ♔h2 ♖h1#) White resigned. (2 ♔xf4 g5+)

Diagram 633. 1... ♘xd4! 2 gf? ("If 2 ♘xd4, then 2... ♔e5+ is an easy win for Black." - Alekhine; but the move 2 gf? allows Black to mate in three.) 2... ♘xf5+, and now it's all over. (3 ♔h3 ♘f2#; 3 ♔g4 h5+ 4 ♔h3 ♘f2#)

Diagram 634. 1... ♔g3!! ("Black could have won, but not so spectacularly, with the move 1... ♔e3." - Neistadt) White resigned. (2 hg ♘e2#; 2 fg ♘e2+ 3 ♔h1 ♖xf1#; 2 ♔xg3 ♘e2+ 3 ♔h1 ♘xg3+ 4 ♔g1 ♘e2+ 5 ♔h1 ♖c3 and Black has an extra piece.)

Diagram 635. 1... ♔xf2+! 2 ♔xf2 ♖e2+ 3 ♔f3 ♘e5+ 4 ♔f4 ♖f1+ 5 ♔g5 h6+ 6 ♔xh6 (or 6 ♔h4 ♖xh2#) 6... ♖xh2+ 7 ♔g5 ♖h5#.

Diagram 636. 1 ♖a8! ♔e7 (or 1... ♖xa8 2 ♔xb7+ ♔d8 3 ♔xa8+; 1... ♔d7 2 ♔xb7+! ♖xb7 3 ♖xb7#) 2 ♔xc6+! ♔c7 (or 2... bc 3 ♖axb8+ and 4 ♖1b7#) 3 ♖xb7! Black resigned. (3... ♔xc6 4 ♖axb8#)

Diagram 637. 1 ♔g3! ♔xh6+ (or 1... ♖xg3? 2 ♖xe8#) 2 ♔h3 ♔d6 (or 2... ♔xh3+ 3 ♔xh3 ♖h5+

4 ♖g2 ♖g5+ 5 ♖f2 ♖g7 6 ♖xe8+) 3 ♖h1! ♖g8 4 ♖xe8+ ♖f7 5 ♖h8. Black resigned. (5... ♖g6 6 ♖xh7+)

Diagram 638. 1 ♖xh7+! ♖xh7 2 ♖h4+ ♖g6 3 ♖h6+ ♖g5 4 h4+ ♖g4 5 ♖e3+ ♖g3 6 ♖f3#.

Diagram 639. 1 ♖h5+! ♖xh5 2 fe++ ♖g6 3 ♖c2+ ♖g5 4 ♖f5+ ♖g6 5 ♖f6++ ♖g5 6 ♖g6+ ♖h4 7 ♖e4+ ♖f4 8 ♖xf4+ ♖h5 9 g3 (or 9 ♖g3, and depending on Black's move, either 10 ♖g6# or 10 ♖d1#) and 10 ♖h4#.

Diagram 640. 1... ♖xd3 2 cd (or 2 ♖f2? ♖xf3+ mating on e2) 2... ♖e7! ("Now White must choose only between losing his queen and being checkmated. He chose the latter, though." - Alekhine) 3 ♖xh8 ♖h4#.

Diagram 641. 1 hg (or 1 ♖xe6! immediately, winning) 1...hg (or 1...♖xg6 2 ♖xe6!) 2 ♖xe6! Black resigned. (1...♖7xe6 2 ♖xe6 ♖xe6 3 ♖xg6+)

Diagram 642. 1 ♖xf8+! (or 1 d7? ♖c1+) Black resigned. (1... ♖xf8 2 d7 ♖g8 3 ♖e8)

Diagram 643. 1... ♖xc3 2 ♖xc3 ♖xc3 3 ♖xc3 ♖b2! White resigned, because of 4 ♖e1 ♖xc3!; 4 ♖c2 ♖b1+ 5 ♖f1 ♖xc2; or 4 ♖c8 ♖b1+ 5 ♖f1 ♖xf1+.

Diagram 644. 1 ♖xc7! ♖xc7! 2 ♖a8+!! (or 2 ♖xc7 stalemate) 2... ♖xa8 (or 2... ♖b73 ♖a7+!; 2... ♖xa8 3 ♖xc7) 3 ♖c8. Black resigned, because the king-and-pawn endgame after 3... ♖c7 4 ♖xc7 is lost.

Diagram 645. 1 e5! de (or 1...fe 2 ♖e4 ♖d5 3 ♖h7 ♖c8 4 ♖h8) 2 ♖e4 ♖d5 3 ♖6c5 (or 3 ♖h8 ♖xh8 4 ♖xh8+ ♖e7 5 ♖6c5) 3... ♖c8 4 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 5 ♖h7 ♖f8 6 ♖a1 ♖d8 7 ♖a8+ ♖c8 8 ♖c5. Black resigned.

Diagram 646. 1... ♖h4!! 2 ♖xh4 g5+! 3 ♖xg5 ♖g7, and Black wins.

Diagram 647. 1 ♖xc6+ ♖f8 (or 1...bc 2 ♖d8#; 1... ♖xc6 2 ♖d8#; 1... ♖d7 2 ♖xd7+ ♖f8 3 ♖d8+! ♖xd8 4 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 5 ♖e8#) 2 ♖d8+! ♖xd8 3 ♖e8#.

Diagram 648. 1... ♖g2+ 2 ♖e3 (or 2 ♖e1 ♖e2#) 2... ♖xe4+! 3 fe f4+ (Here, Black could have mated in three: 3... ♖g3+! 4 ♖d2 ♖f2+ 5 ♖d1 ♖e2#) 4 ♖xf4 ♖f8+ 5 ♖e5 ♖h2+ 6 ♖e6 ♖e8+ 7 ♖d7 (or 7 ♖f6 ♖f4#) 7... ♖b5#.

Diagram 649. 1 ♖c7! and Black resigned. (1... ♖xc7 2 ♖xc5+! ♖xc5 3 ♖b7+ ♖xa5 4 ♖a1#; or 1... ♖xc7 2 ♖b7+! ♖xb7 3 ♖xc5#.)

Diagram 650. 1...♖xh2!! 2 ♖xh2 ♕e5+ 3 c3 (3 ♕d2 gf+) 3...♕xe5+!! 4 de gh. White resigned. (5 ♖f3 h1 ♕)

Diagram 651. 1 ♕xh7+! (White would have won more quickly with 1 ♖h6+ ♕h8 2 ♖xg7+ ♕xg7 3 ♖f7+ ♖xf7 4 ♖xf7+ ♕h8 5 ♕e5+! ♖xe5 6 ♖xh7#.) 1...♕xh7 2 ♖h3+ ♕g8 (or 2...♖h5 3 ♖xh5+ ♕g8 4 ♖h8+! ♖xh8 5 ♖h6#) 3 ♖h6+ ♕h8 (The game would have continued for two more moves after 3...♕h7 4 ♖f7+ ♕h4 5 ♖xh4+ ♖h5 6 ♖xh5+ and mate.) 4 ♖f7++ ♕g8 5 ♖h8+! ♖xh8 6 ♖h6#.

Diagram 652. “In this mind-numbing situation White can win with the quiet move 1 ♖h6!! (threatening 2 ♕d8#). The position in this game is probably matchless in the history of chess.” - Alekhine. 1...♕xf1? (It is bad for Black to play either 1...♖xe3 2 ♕d8+ ♕c5 3 ♕fd6+ ♕d4 4 ♕8f6+ ♖e5 5 ♕fxe5#, or 1... a6 2 ♖xc6+! bc 3 ♕d8+ ♕a7 4 ♕de7+. It was preferable for him to defend with 1...♖g4+! 2 ♕gxc4 ♖xe3 3 ♕xe3+ ♕c5 4 ♕xc5+ ♕xc5 5 ♕c4+ ♕b6 6 ♖xd5 ♖f8+ 7 ♕g2) 2 ♕b4+ ♕b5 3 ♕d8+ ♕a6 4 ♕ea3+ and mate to follow. (4... ♕ca4 5 ♕axa4+ ♕xa4 6 ♕xa4#)

Diagram 653. 1 ♖xf7+! ♖xf7 2 ♖xg6+! ♕xg6 3 ♕d3+ ♕g5 4 ♖c1+. Black resigned. (“If 4...♖f4, then 5 ♕f5#, while if 4...♕f6, then 5 ♕f5+.” - Alekhine. We can also add the variation 4...♖e3 5 ♖xe3+ ♕f4 5 ♖f1.

Diagram 654. 1...♖xe3+! White resigned. (2 fe ♕h2)

Diagram 655. 1 ♖e4! (We have found another road to victory for White: 1 ♖d5! ♖xd5 2 ♕xf6 ♖g8 3 ♕h4+ ♕g6 4 f4 ♖f3 5 ♕h3+!; 1...cd! 2 ♕xf6 ♖g8?! 3 ♕f5+ ♕h6 4 g4!, Black could have defended better with 2...♖xd7 3 ♕xb6) 1...♖xb2? (Or 1...♖xd7? 2 ♖f6+ and 3 ♕h5#; it is slightly better for Black to play 1...♖xe4 2 ♕xf6 ♖g8 3 ♕h4+ ♕g6, and now White should not settle for a material advantage, but should continue the attack with 4 ♕xe4+ ♕h6 5 ♕f4+ ♕h7 6 ♕e5!, winning.) 2 ♖g5+ ♕h6 (or 2...♕h8 3 ♕h5+ ♕g8 4 ♕h7+ ♕f8 5 ♕h8#) 3 g4! g6 (or 3...♕xg5 4 ♕h5+ ♕f6 5 ♖f7#) 4 h4 (or 4 f4) 4...♖h8 5 ♕h7+! Black resigned. (5...♖xh7 6 ♖xh7#)

Diagram 656. 1 ♖h6+ ♕h8 2 ♕xe5! ♕xe5 3 ♖xf7+! Black resigned. (3...♖xf7 4 ♖d8+ mating; 3...♕h8 4 ♖xe5)

Diagram 657. After 1 ♖g7! Black resigned in view of 1...♕xg7 2 ♕g5+ ♕h8 3 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 4 ♕f6#, or 3...♖d5 4 ♖d7 ♖g8 5 ♕h6. It was also possible for White to play 1 ♕h4 ♖d5 (1...♖xd4? gets mated by 2 ♕f6+!; 1...♖c6? 2 ♖g8+) 2 ♕h6 ♖f7 3 ♖c6 ♕a5 4 g3, winning a piece.

Diagram 658. 1 ♕d1! ♕a5 (or 1...♖xd1 2 ♖xc7) 2 ♕xe2 ♕xe5 3 ♖d5. Black resigned.

Diagram 659. 1 ♕h3!! g5 (or 1...♕xc3 2 g4#!; 1...♖xf4 2 g4+! ♖xg4 3 ♕xa1) 2 g4+ ♕g6 3 ♖e5+, with a checkmate coming shortly. (3...♕h6 4 ♕c6+ ♕g7 5 ♕d7+ ♕h8 6 ♕e8+ ♕g7 7 ♕f7+

♖h6 8 ♕f6#, or 7...♖h8 8 ♕f8#)

Diagram 660. 1 ♖c8+! ♖xc8 2 ♕a7+! ♖xa7 3 bc♖+ ♖b7 4 ♖xe7, and White wins.

Diagram 661. 1 ♖e7+! ♖xe7 (or 1...♕xe7 2 ♖xe7 ♖xd8 3 ♖xd8) 2 ♖d7+ ♖a8 (or 2...♖b8 3 ♖d6+ and 4 ♖xb6#) 3 ♖xb6+ ♖b8 4 ♖d6#.

Diagram 662. 1 ♖xd5! ♖xb1+ 2 ♖f2 ♖xh1 3 ♖xe7 d6 4 ♖xd6 ♖c6 5 ♖b5 ♖d7? 6 ♖xc6 bc7 ♖e2+. Black resigned. (7...♖f7 8 ♖g5+ ♖g8 9 ♖e7+ ♖f8 10 ♖xc6+ ♖g8 11 ♖c4+ ♖e6 12 ♖xe6# or 7...♖d8 8 ♖c7+ ♖c8 9 ♖a6#)

Diagram 663. 1...♖g3+! 2 hg? (Instead White had to play 2 ♖g1, but even then, after 2...♖xe2+ Black would maintain the advantage.) 2...♖h5+ 3 ♖g1 fg 4 ♖xe3 (or 4 ♖xe3 ♖h2+ followed by mate) 4...♖h2+ 5 ♖f1 ♖h1+ 6 ♖e2 ♖xg2+ 7 ♖d1 ♖c2+ 8 ♖e1 g2 9 ♖g4 ♖d3+! 10 ♖xd3 ♖f2#.

Diagram 664. 1 ♖e6! (Another way for White to keep his initiative is 1 ♖d8 ♖f8 2 ♖e6 ♖c5 3 ♖1d6 ♖xd8 4 hg+ ♖xg7 5 ♖xf6+ ♖h6 6 ♖xd8.) 1...♖f8 (or 1...♖xe6?? 2 ♖d8+ followed by mate) 2 ♖d7 gh 3 ♖h4! and Black resigned. If 3...♖xh4? 4 ♖e7!; or if 3...♖xd7 4 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 5 ♖xd7 ♖xh4 6 ♖d6, with a winning position for White.

XI

Capablanca, Alekhine, Euwe (1921 - 1940)

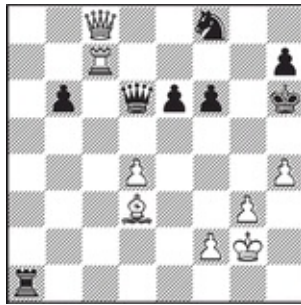
Chess is a fighting game which is purely intellectual and includes chance.

Richard Reti

In chess, as it is played by masters, chance is practically eliminated.

Emanuel Lasker

The great Emanuel Lasker's reign as world champion finally ended in 1921 after 27 years. His match against Capablanca lasted only 14 games, of which Lasker did not win a single one, while drawing 10.



665

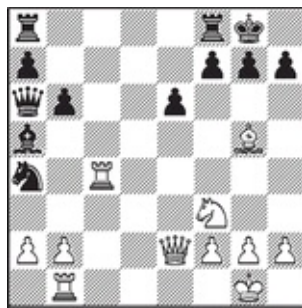
Capablanca - Lasker
Havana, 1921
11th game of the match

White to move

1 ♔c8 x f8+!

Black resigned. (1... ♔xf8 2 ♖xh7#)

Meanwhile, the new challenger for the title of world champion, Alekhine, was accumulating strength and experience. He continued to amaze the chess world with remarkable combinations, of which we show two:



666

**Alekhine - Sterk
Budapest, 1921**

White to move

“If 1 b4, then 1...♞c3!” (Alekhine)

1 ♗g5 - f6!!

“This is the beginning of a beautiful and quite surprising mating attack, which swiftly ends the game. White is threatening 2 ♖g4 ♕xe2 3 ♖xg7+, followed by mate. If 1...h5, then 2 ♖g4! ♕xe2 3 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 4 ♞g5!, and Black is helpless against 5 ♖h7++ and 6 ♖h8#. If 1...h6, then 2 ♞e5! with the winning threat 3 ♕g4.” (Alekhine)

Of course, the bishop on f6 cannot be taken: 1 ... g7xf6 2 ♖g4+ and Black loses the queen. The best defence for Black, 1...♞c5, was recommended by Koretzky: (*Chess in the USSR*, 1987, N1, p. 19)

1	...	♜f8 - c8
2	♕e2 - e5!	♜c8 - c5

“The following variations are also insufficient for Black:

- I. 2...♕xc4 3 ♕g5 ♔f8 4 ♕xg7+ ♔e8 5 ♕g8+ ♔d7 6 ♞e5+ ♔c7 7 ♕xf7+ and then 8 ♞xc4;
- II. 2...♖xc4 3 ♕g5 ♖g4 4 ♕xg4 g6 5 ♕xa4;
- III. 2...gf 3 ♖g4+ with mate in two.

The move in the game relies on the line 3 ♖xc5 gf, but White has a much stronger resource.” (Alekhine)

3 ♕e5 - g3!	g7 - g6
4 ♜c4 x a4	♕a6 - d3
5 ♜b1 - f1	♕d3 - f5
6 ♕g3 - f4	♕f5 - c2
7 ♕f4 - h6	

Black resigned.



667

**Bogoljubow - Alekhine
Hastings, 1922**

Black to move

1 ... b5 - b4!
2 ♖a5 x a8! b4 x c3!

Alekhine considered this to be the best move, but half a century later, in 1971 in the magazine 64 Sergey Rozenberg pointed out a shorter road to victory for Black: 2... ♖xa8 3 ♖b3 (3 ♖c2 ♗e1) 3... ♖a1 4 ♖b1 ♖xb1, and Black's rook enters the action decisively via f8 -a8-a1.

3 ♖a8 x e8 c3 - c2!!

“This is the essence of Black’s combination. White cannot prevent the promotion of the pawn.” (Alekhine)

4 ♖e8 x f8+ ♔h8 - h7
5 ♗d1 - f2 c2 - c1♖+
6 ♗d2 - f1 ♗d3 - e1!

“Now White must suddenly parry a mating threat.” (Alekhine)

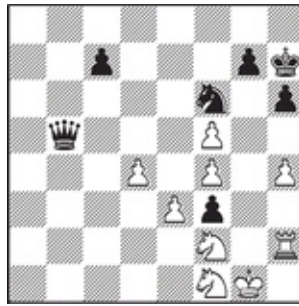
7 ♖g2 - h2 ♖c1 x c4

Here, a new mating threat arises after 8... ♗b5, which forces White to sacrifice the exchange.” (Alekhine)

8 ♖f8 - b8 ♗d7 - b5
9 ♖b8 x b5 ♖c4 x b5
10 g3 - g4

“This was the only possibility for White to prolong his resistance, but Black had prepared a surprise.” (Alekhine)

10 ... ♖e1 - f3+!
 11 ♙h1 x f3 e4 x f3
 12 ♜g4 x f5



668

Position after White's move twelve

12 ... ♙b5 - e2!

“This move creates a study-like position. Every move by a white piece leads to an immediate loss; for example, 13 ♘h3 ♘g4! or 13 ♖h3(h1) ♘g4 So, after a couple of indifferent moves, White will be forced to play e3 - e4, which leads to an endgame that is winning for Black.” (Alekhine)

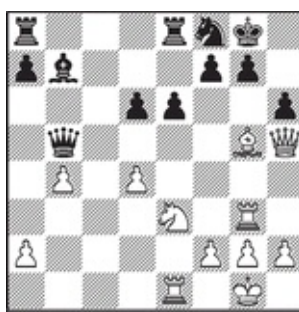
13 d4 - d5	♙h7 - g8!
14 h4 - h5	♙g8 - h7
15 e3 - e4	♘f6 x e4
16 ♘f2 x e4	♙e2 x e4
17 d5 - d6	c7 x d6
18 f5 - f6	g7 x f6
19 ♙h2 - d2	♙e4 - e2!

“This is a delightful finish, worthy of this exquisite game.” (Alekhine)

20 ♙d2 x e2	f3 x e2
21 ♙g1 - f2	e2 x f1 ♙+
22 ♙f2 x f1	♙h7 - g7
23 ♙f1 - f2	♙g7 - f7
24 ♙f2 - e3	♙f7 - e6
25 ♙e3 - e4	d6 - d5+

White resigned.

A great international tournament took place in 1925 in Moscow. The young Mexican, Carlos Torre Repetto won his game against the ex-world champion with the help of a combination which later became world famous.



669

**Torre - Lasker
Moscow, 1925**

White to move

1 ♖g5 - f6!! ♚b5 x h5

Black has no choice and now the “mill” begins grinding.

2 ♜g3 x g7+	♔g8 - h8
3 ♜g7 x f7+	♔h8 - g8
4 ♜f7 - g7+	♔g8 - h8
5 ♜g7 x b7+	♔h8 - g8
6 ♜b7 - g7+	♔g8 - h8
7 ♜g7 - g5+	♔h8 - h7
8 ♜g5 x h5	♔h7 - g6
9 ♜h5 - h3	♔g6 x f6
10 ♜h3 x h6+	

White pressed his material advantage home.

Unlike Lasker, Capablanca failed to keep his world title for long. In 1927, after a tense fight, Alekhine wrested from him the title of the best chess player. Alekhine won 6 games, Capablanca won 3 games and there were 25 draws.

Alekhine dealt an effective tactical blow right at the start of the match, which got him a winning position.



670

**Capablanca - Alekhine
Buenos Aires, 1927**

1st game of the match

Black to move

1 ... ♖b4 x c2!
2 ♜c1 x c2 ♜f5 x f4!

“Capablanca had overlooked this possibility...He had evidently relied only on 2...♜xf4, after which he could have restored the material balance with 3 ♜c5.” (Alekhine)

3 g2 - g3 ♜f4 - f5

Black realized his material advantage convincingly.

Two years later, there was a match between Alekhine and Bogoljubow for the world title. Bogoljubow had several impressive successes during the 1920s, winning numerous prizes in strong tournaments. It is especially worth mentioning his outstanding success at the first international tournament in Moscow in 1925, since he finished ahead of both Lasker and Capablanca.

The title match was played in different cities of Germany and Holland, and it ended successfully for the acting world champion. Alekhine won 11 games; Bogoljubow won five games, and 9 games ended in draws.



671

Bogoljubow - Alekhine
Germany - Holland, 1929
8th game of the match

Black to move

Bogoljubow had just moved his king to the corner of the board.

“White overlooked a mating combination. His position was hopeless anyway...” (Alekhine)

1 ... ♜h5 - g3+!

Even after 1...♜f6, White cannot untangle the knot of his pieces; for example, 2 ♜e2 ♜g3+ 3 hg ♜xf2. Still, Alekhine’s move is the best.

Or 2 ♖g1 ♗g4 and Black wins.

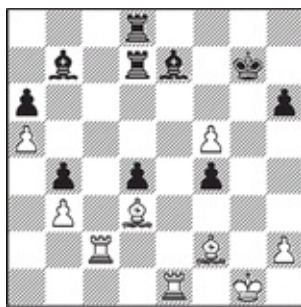
2 ... h4 x g3+
3 ♗f2 - h3

If 3 ♖g1, then 3...gf+ 4 ♖xf2 ♖h3 and Black wins.

3 ... ♖c8 x h3
4 g2 x h3 ♗h8 x h3+
5 ♗h1 - g2 ♗h3 - h2#

During the 1920s and 1930s, Alekhine performed well in many different competitions. After his win in the match against Bogoljubow, Alekhine took the first prizes in the tournaments in San Remo (1930), Bled (1931), London, Bern, Pasadena (1932), Paris (1933) and Zurich (1934). Sometimes he beat even the best grandmasters right in the opening. “He is dealing with us as if we are amateurs,” - Nimzowitsch complained.

Five years after their first match, Alekhine and Bogoljubow met in a rematch, held in different cities of Germany. The world champion won convincingly once again, winning eight games, losing three and drawing 15.



672

Alekhine - Bogoljubow
Germany, 1934
4th game of the match

White to move

1 ♖e1 x e7+!

“Alekhine never overlooks possibilities like this.” (Em. Lasker)

“The essence of this surprising and seemingly harmless exchange is that White’s f-pawn promotes unavoidably. Black’s following moves are all forced.” (Alekhine)

1 ... ♖d7 x e7
 2 ♙f2 - h4 ♙g7 - f7

“Otherwise White plays 3 f6+.” (Alekhine)

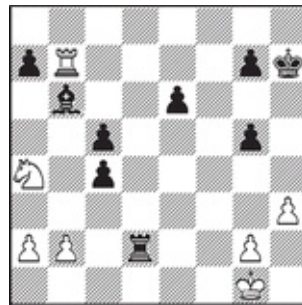
3 ♙h4 x e7 ♙f7 x e7
 4 ♖c2 - c7+ ♖d8 - d7
 5 f5 - f6+ ♙e7 - e8
 6 ♙d3 - g6+

“This check is more precise than 6 f7+ ♖xf7 7 ♙g6 ♙d5.” (Alekhine)

6 ... ♙e8 - d8
 7 f6 - f7 ♙d8 x c7
 8 f7 - f8 ♖f4 - f3
 9 ♖f8 x b4 ♖d7 - d6
 10 ♙g6 - d3

Black resigned.

Now you are going to see arguably the most striking combination in the history of chess.



673
Oruerta - Sanz
Madrid, 1934

Black to move

This is the exact starting position, according to *Chess in Russia*, 1995, N5, p. 42-43 and *Chess Review*, 1987, N20, p. 23.

1 ... ♖d2 x b2!!

This is a brilliant endgame...” (Capablanca)

2 ♙a4 x b2 c4 - c3
 3 ♖b7 x b6!

White also loses after 3 ♖d3 c4+ 4 ♖xb6 cd.

3 ... c5 - c4!!

Which is stronger here: a rook and a knight, or two connected passed pawns?

4 ♖b6 - b4

White can save the game neither with 4 ♖xc4, due to 4...c2, nor with 4 ♖c6 or 4 ♖xe6, because of 4...cb, and Black promotes his pawn.

4 ... a7 - a5!!

“This small combination is tremendously attractive at the end.” (Capablanca)

5 ♖b2 x c4 c3 - c2

“White played three or four more moves before resigning, but they are not worth publishing. This endgame is just an amazing miniature.” (Capablanca)

“This combination, when I saw it for the first time, excited me so much that in fact it became the main reason that my destiny became entwined with chess forever.” (Petrosian)

Over his entire career Capablanca only lost 36 games. To defeat the Cuban one had to create over the board something truly spectacular.

The next combination, which Andre Lilienthal played against the ex-world champion, was published all over the world.



674

**Lilienthal - Capablanca
Hastings, 1934-1935**

White to move

1 e5 x f6!! ♖e4 x c2

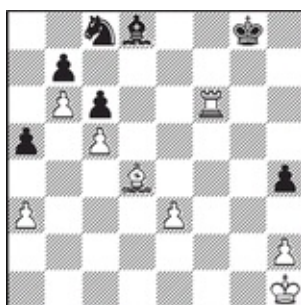
If 1... ♖xh4 2 fg ♖g8 3 f6 ♘xf6, then 4 ♔f5 and White wins.

2 f6 x g7 ♖h8 - g8
3 ♘e2 - d4! ♖c2 - e4

Other moves would not save Black either: 3... ♔xc3 4 ♖ae1+ ♘e5 5 ♖xe5+ ♔d7 6 ♖e7+ ♔d6 7 ♘b5+ and 8 ♘xc3; 3... ♔d2 4 ♖ae1+ ♘e5 5 ♖xe5+ ♔d7 6 ♖d5+ ♔e8 7 ♖e1+ ♔xe1 8 ♔xe1.

4 ♖a1 - e1 ♘d7 - c5
5 ♖e1 x e4+ ♘c5 x e4
6 ♖f1 - e1 ♖g8 x g7
7 ♖e1 x e4+ ♔e8 - d7

Black resigned without waiting for his opponent's reply.



675

Euwe - Alekhine

Holland, 1935, 10th game of the match

White to move

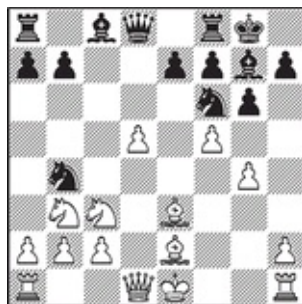
Surprisingly, in 1935, Alekhine lost his world chess crown to Max Euwe. The match was held in 13 cities of Holland and Euwe won 9 games, Alekhine won 8, and 13 games were drawn.

In the diagram position Euwe followed with:

1 ♖f6 x c6!

Black resigned.

In the second Moscow International Tournament (1935), first place was shared by Salo Flohr and the leading Soviet player, Mikhail Botvinnik. Lasker and Capablanca played there as well; they took third and fourth places. Later, when Botvinnik shared first place with Capablanca at the tournament in Nottingham, 1936, he proved that his success in Moscow was deserved. The first encounter over the board between Botvinnik and Alekhine happened at the tournament in Nottingham; there the ex-world champion demonstrated a sharp combinational line based on home preparation:



676

Alekhine - Botvinnik
Nottingham, 1936

White to move

1 d5 - d6!

“This was no doubt the best move.” (Alekhine)

“After twenty minutes of thinking I saw that I could force a perpetual, and I decided without any hesitation to go for that line.” (Botvinnik)

1	...	♙d8 x d6!
2	♙e3 - c5!	♙d6 - f4!
3	♞h1 - f1	♙f4 x h2
4	♙c5 x b4	♞f6 x g4!

“This second sacrifice forces a perpetual check.” (Alekhine)

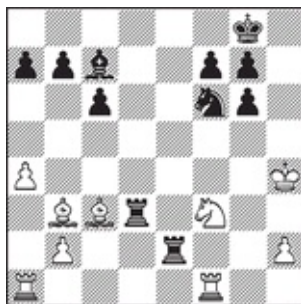
5	♙e2 x g4	♙h2 - g3+
6	♞f1 - f2	♙g3 - g1+
7	♞f2 - f1	♙g1 - g3+
8	♞f1 - f2	

“Here, I tried to be tricky, which I later regretted. After the moves 2... ♙f4 and 4... ♞xg4, Alekhine became obviously excited. He had overlooked this counterplay and probably he had started wondering whether he had overlooked something else as well; maybe he was even worried that I might make up my mind to play for a win. So, I decided to give myself the pleasure of thinking for about five minutes, so that my opponent could understand what was going through my mind when he played 1 d6!” (Botvinnik)

8	...	♙g3 - g1+
---	-----	-----------

Draw.

In 1937, Alekhine regained the crown as the best chess player in the world by demolishing his opponent. Euwe won only 4 games, while Alekhine won ten, with 11 draws.



677

**Euwe - Alekhine
Holland, 1937, 7th game of the match**

Black to move

1	...	♖d3 x f3!
2	♗f1 x f3	♗e2 x h2+
3	♗f3 - h3	

If 3 ♖g5, then 3...♖h5#.

3	...	g7 - g5+!
4	♖h4 x g5	♗h2 x h3

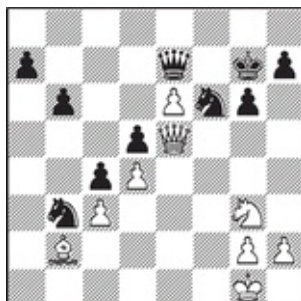
Black is threatening 5...♖h5#.

5	♗b3 - d1	♗f6 - e4+
---	----------	-----------

White's king is in a mating net now, and he must lose plenty of material. For example, 6 ♖f5 ♖h4! 7 ♗g4 ♗f2, or 6 ♖g4 ♗f2+ 7 ♖g5 ♖g3+ 8 ♖f5 (if 8 ♖h4 ♗f4) 8...g6+ 9 ♖f6 ♗d6; Black wins easily in both cases.

White resigned.

We finish this chapter with a brilliant combination by Botvinnik in his game against the ex-world champion.



678

Botvinnik - Capablanca Amsterdam, 1938

White to move

1 ♖b2 - a3!! ♜e7 x a3

“Naturally, the line 1... ♜e8 2 ♜c7+ ♜g8 3 ♜e7 ♜g4 4 ♜d7 is not any better for Black.”
(Botvinnik)

2 ♜g3 - h5+! ♜6 x h5

“It is also bad for Black to play 2... ♜h6 3 ♜xf6 ♜c1+ 4 ♜f2 ♜d2+ 5 ♜g3 ♜xc3+ 6 ♜h4 ♜xd4+ 7 ♜g4+!” (Botvinnik)

3 ♜e5 - g5+ ♜g7 - f8
4 ♜g5 x f6+ ♜f8 - g8

5 e6 - e7

Later it was discovered that White could also win with the line 5 ♜f7+ ♜h8 6 g3; White's king avoids the checks on h3.

5 ... ♜a3 - c1+
6 ♜g1 - f2 ♜c1 - c2+
7 ♜f2 - g3 ♜c2 - d3+
8 ♜g3 - h4 ♜d3 - e4+
9 ♜h4 x h5 ♜e4 - e2+

“I did not understand for many years after this game why the Cuban kept his queen on c2, d3 and e4 while he was checking White's king. In fact, the cunning competitor hoped that in the time pressure White would avoid the exchange of queens and thus I would agree to a draw.” (Botvinnik)

10 ♜h5 - h4 ♜e2 - e4+
11 g2 - g4 ♜e4 - e1+
10 ♜h4 - h5

Black resigned.

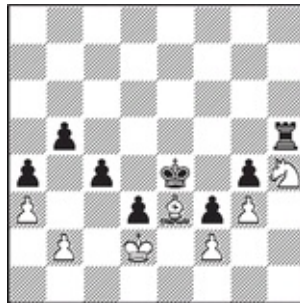
How Would You Play?



679

**Nietzsche - Factor
Chicago, 1921**

Black to move



680

**Lund - Nimzowitsch
Christiania, 1921**

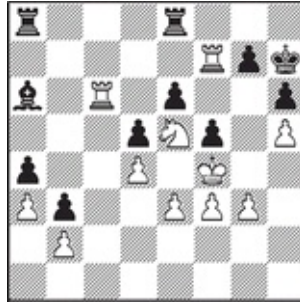
Black to move



681

**Alekhine - Bogoljubow
Triberg, 1921**

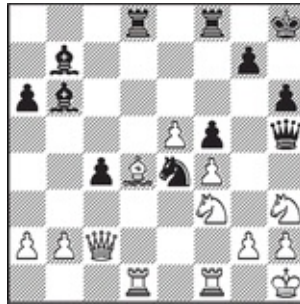
White to move



682

**Alekhine - Yates
London, 1922**

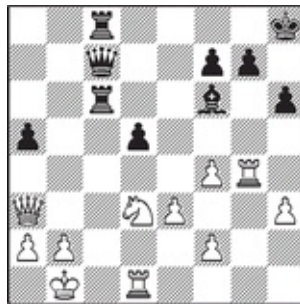
White to move



683

**Torres - Alekhine
Seville, 1922**

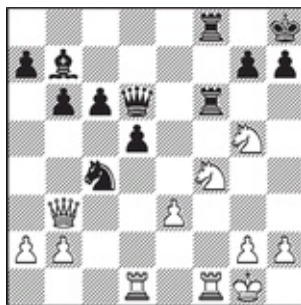
Black to move



684

**Johner - Rubinstein
Teplitz-Schenau, 1922**

Black to move



685

**Steiner - Balogh
Pishtjan, 1922**

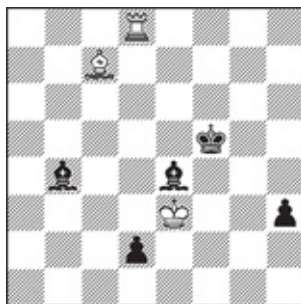
White to move



686

**Nimzowitsch - Hakansson
Christiania, 1922**

White to move



687

**Nenarokov - Grigoriev
Moscow, 1923**

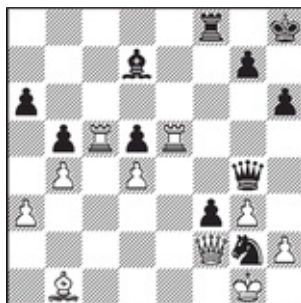
Black to move



688

Blake - Hooke
London, 1923

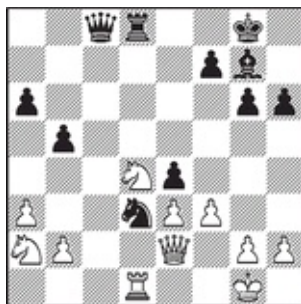
White to move



689

Wolf - Spielmann
Moravska Ostrava, 1923

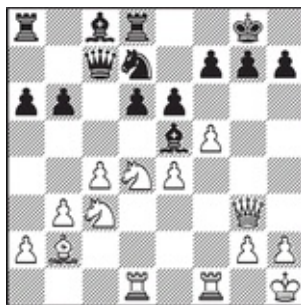
White to move



690

Gruenfeld - Alekhine
Carlsbad, 1923

Black to move



691

Alekhine - Sämisch
Berlin, 1923

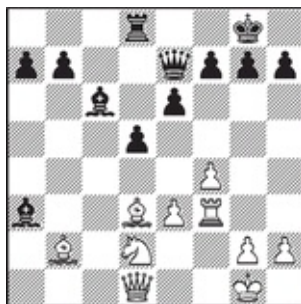
White to move



692

Alekhine - Forrester
Glasgow, 1923

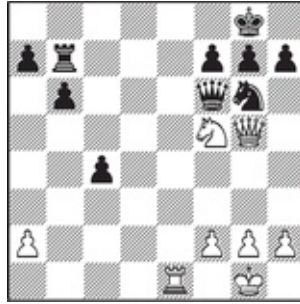
White to move



693

Alekhine - Druitt
Portsmouth, 1923

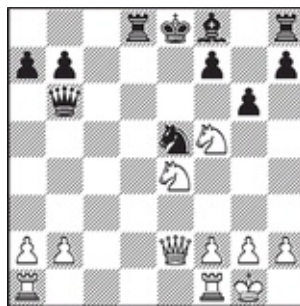
White to move



694

Alekhine - Freeman
New York, 1924
Simultaneous display - blindfolded

White to move



695

Alekhine - Kussman
New York, 1924

White to move

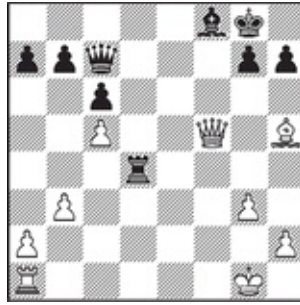


696

Alekhine - Supiko
1924, simultaneous exhibition

blindfolded

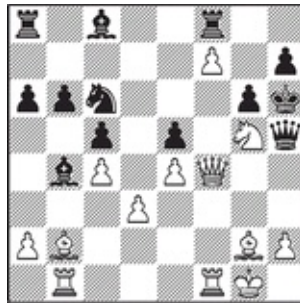
White to move



697

Reti - Bogoljubow
New York, 1924

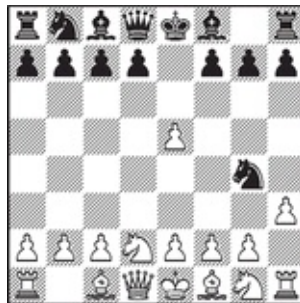
White to move



698

Nimzowitsch - Olsson
Copenhagen, 1924

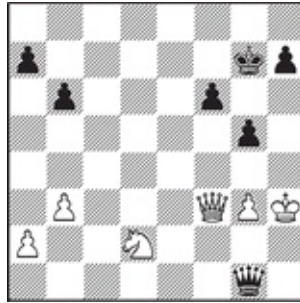
White to move



699

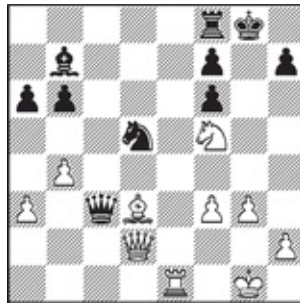
Gibaud - Lazard
Paris, 1924

Black to move



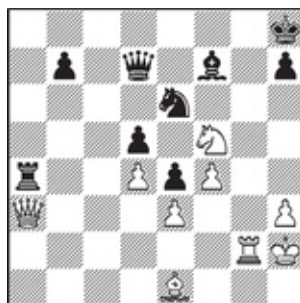
700
Liutov - Botvinnik
Leningrad, 1925

Black to move



701
Spielmann - Tartakower
Marienbad, 1925

White to move



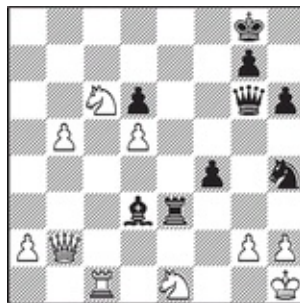
702
Gruenfeld - Tarrasch
Baden-Baden, 1925

White to move



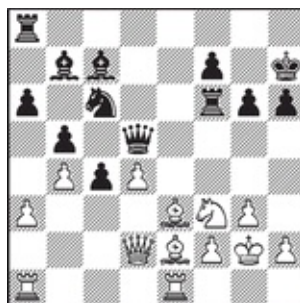
703
Janowski - Sämisch
Marienbad, 1925

White to move



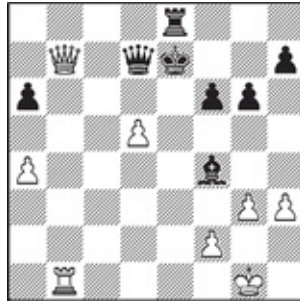
704
Ilyin-Zhenevsky- A. Kubbel
Leningrad, 1925

Black to move



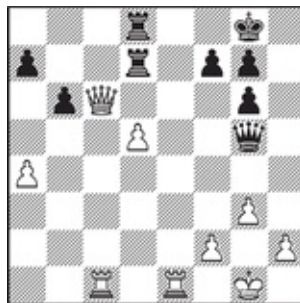
705
Popov - Riumun
Moscow, 1925

Black to move



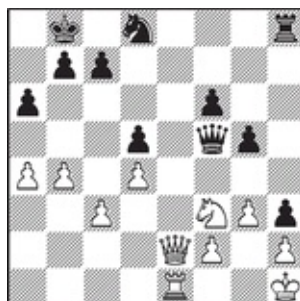
706
Capablanca - Zubarev
Moscow, 1925

White to move



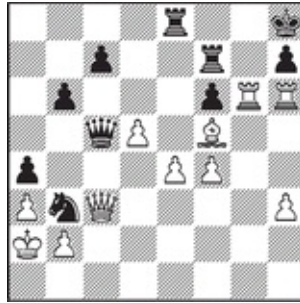
707
Alekhine - Colle
Paris, 1925

White to move



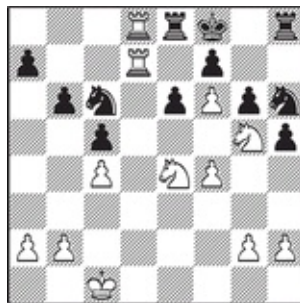
708
Opočenský - Alekhine
Paris, 1925

Black to move



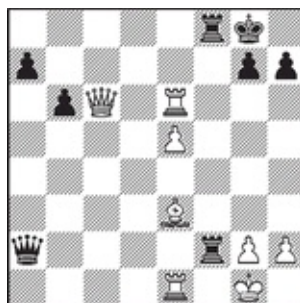
709
Alekhine - Yates
Semmering, 1926

White to move



710
Nimzowitsch - Duhm
Hanover, 1926

White to move



711
Kahn - Bernstein
Paris, 1926

Black to move



712
Janowski - Michel
Semmering, 1926

White to move



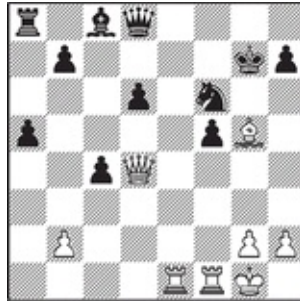
713
Rossolimo - Leizermann
I Moscow, 1927

White to move



714
Rubinstein - Hirszbajn
Lodz, 1927

White to move



715
Nimzowitsch - Marshall
New York, 1927

White to move



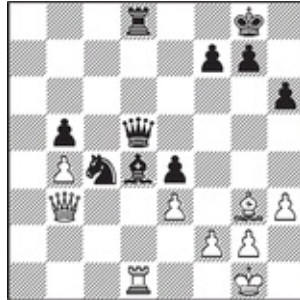
716
Nimzowitsch - Capablanca
New York, 1927

Black to move



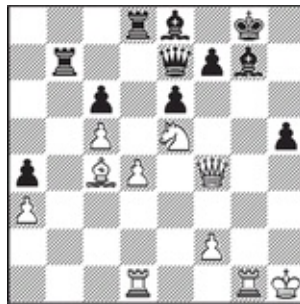
717
Capablanca - Alekhine
Buenos Aires, 1927
3rd game of the match

White to move



718
Capablanca - Alekhine
Buenos Aires, 1927
21st game of the match

Black to move



719
Alekhine - Asztalos
Kechkemet, 1927

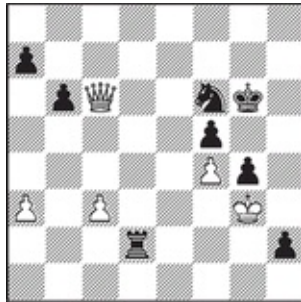
White to move



720

Kmoch - Alekhine
Kechkemet, 1927

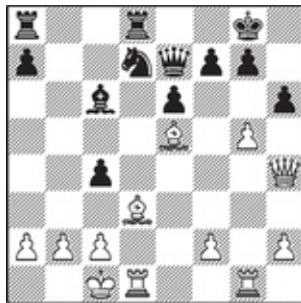
Black to move



721

Yates - Alekhine
Kechkemet, 1927

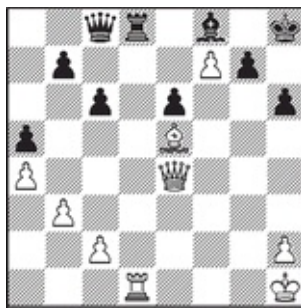
Black to move



722

Spielmann - L'Hermet
Magdeburg, 1927

White to move



723

Nimzowitsch - Rubinstein
Berlin, 1928

White to move



724

Spielmann - Walter
Trencianske Teplice, 1928

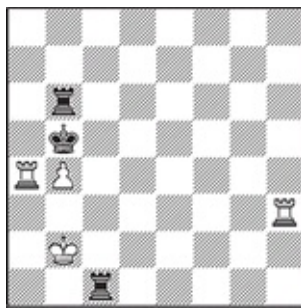
White to move



725

Richter - Ahues
Berlin, 1928

White to move



726

Prokesh - Balogh
The Hague, 1928

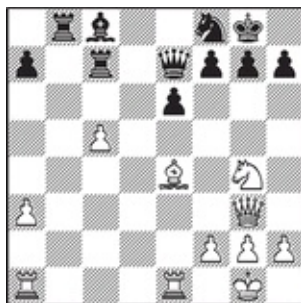
White to move



727

Alekhine - Fletcher
London, 1928
Simultaneous exhibition

White to move



728

Botvinnik - Sharov
Leningrad, 1928 - 1929

White to move



729

Spielmann - Hoenlinger
Vienna, 1929

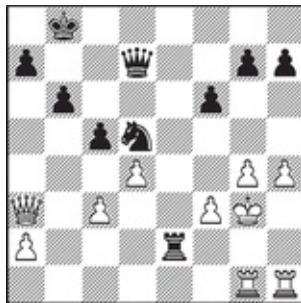
White to move



730

Ekstrom - NN
I Sweden, 1929

White to move



731

NN - Richter
Berlin, 1929

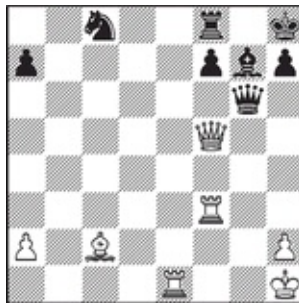
Black to move



732

Alekhine - Bogoljubow
Germany - Holland, 1929
1st game of the match

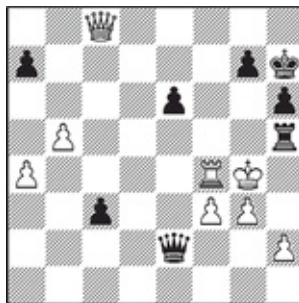
Black to move



733

Alekhine - Bogoljubow
Germany - Holland, 1929
7th game of the match

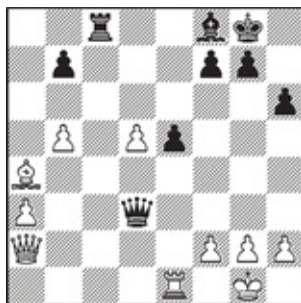
White to move



734

Bogoljubow - Alekhine
Germany - Holland, 1929
10th game of the match

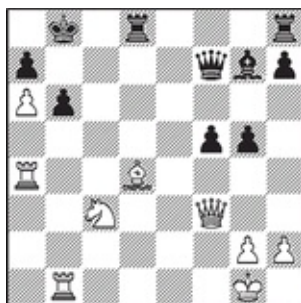
Black to move



735

Alekhine - Bogoljubow
Germany - Holland, 1929
13th game of the match

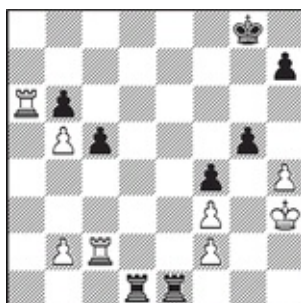
Black to move



736

Alekhine - Bogoljubow
Germany - Holland, 1929
17th game of the match

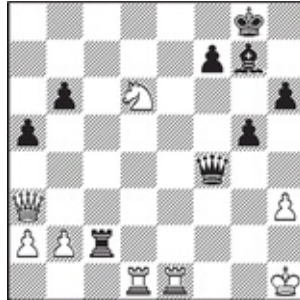
White to move



737

Bogoljubow - Alekhine
Germany - Holland, 1929
22nd game of the match

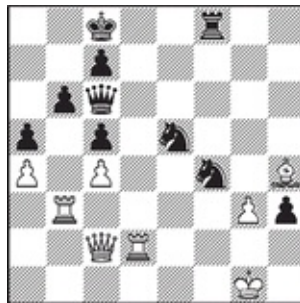
Black to move



738

Vidmar - Euwe
Carlsbad, 1929

White to move



739

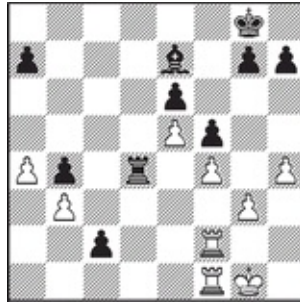
Bogoljubow - Montichelli
San Remo, 1930

Black to move



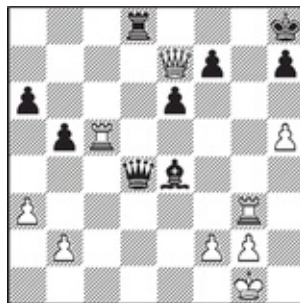
740
Stahlberg - Alekhine
Hamburg, 1930

Black to move



741
Yurgis - Botvinnik
Leningrad, 1931

Black to move



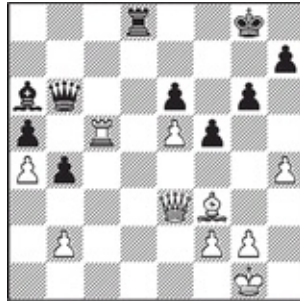
742
Eliskases - Holzl
Austria, 1931

White to move



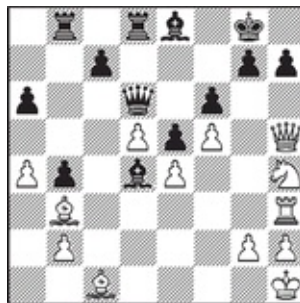
743
Alekhine - Vasic
Graz, 1931

White to move



744
Alekhine - Flohr
Bled, 1931

White to move



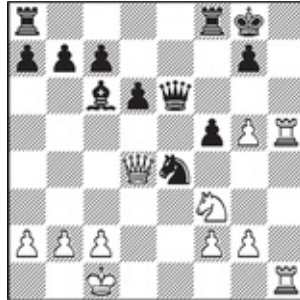
745
Ahues - NN
Berlin, 1932

White to move



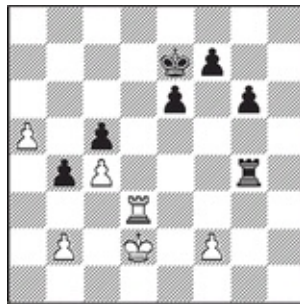
746
Alekhine - Borochov
Hollywood, 1932
Simultaneous exhibition, blindfolded

White to move



747
Alekhine - Mindeno
Holland, 1933
Simultaneous exhibition

White to move



748
Alekhine - NN
1933
Simultaneous exhibition

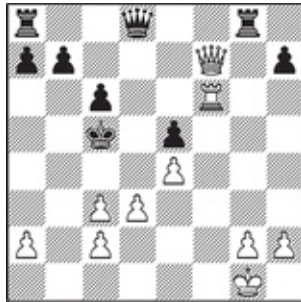
White to move



749

Binner - Grau
Sidney, 1933

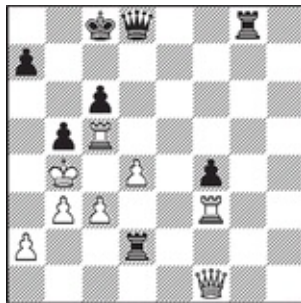
Black to move



750

Capablanca - Steiner
Los Angeles, 1933

White to move



751

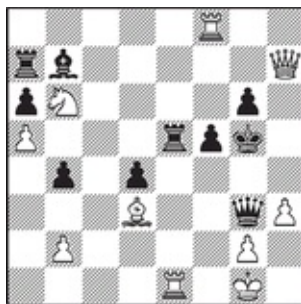
Siversen - Podgorny
Correspondence game, 1933

Black to move



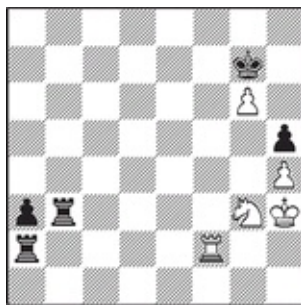
752
Canal - NN
Budapest, 1934

White to move



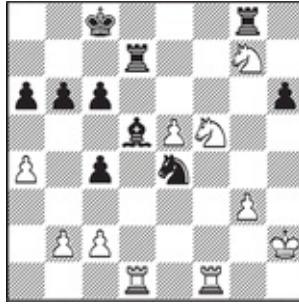
753
Alekhine - Bogoljubow
Baden Baden, 1934
2nd game of the match

White to move



754
Bogoljubow - Alekhine
Stuttgart, 1934
11th game of the match

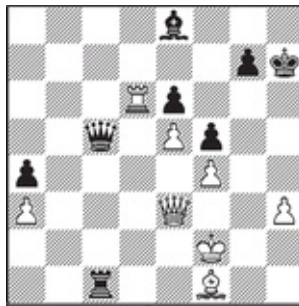
Black to move



755

Alekhine - Bogoljubow
Bayreuth, 1934
16th game of the match

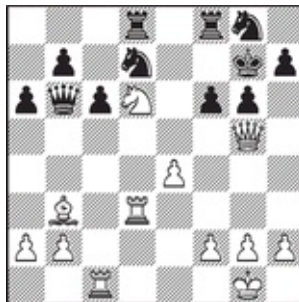
White to move



756

Bogoljubow - Alekhine
Berlin, 1934
5th game of the match

Black to move

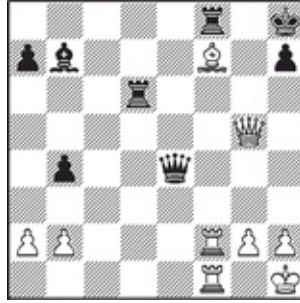


757

Alekhine - Lasker

Zurich, 1934

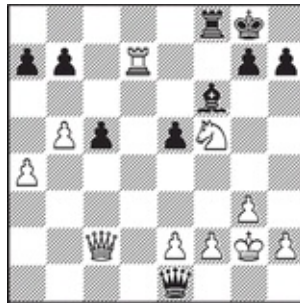
White to move



758

Euwe - Thomas
I Hastings, 1934 - 1935

White to move



759

Alekhine - Euwe
Moscow, 1935 1st game of the match

White to move



760

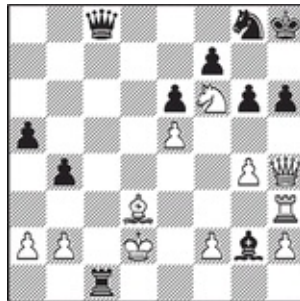
**Lasker - Pirc
Holland, 1935**

White to move



**761
Goglidze - Botvinnik
Moscow, 1935**

Black to move



**762
Ragozin - Levenfish
Moscow, 1935**

White to move



763
Gerasimov - Smyslov
Moscow, 1935

Black to move



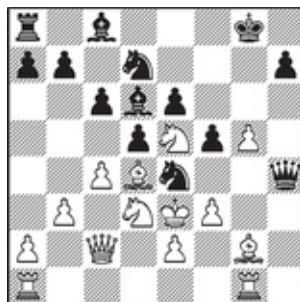
764
Botvinnik - Chekhover
Moscow, 1935

White to move



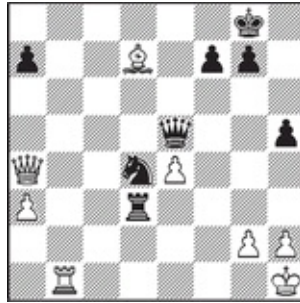
765
Botvinnik - Tartakower
Nottingham, 1936

White to move



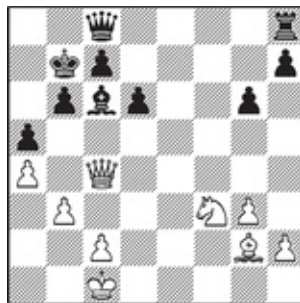
766
Kotov - Bondarevsky
Leningrad, 1936

Back to move



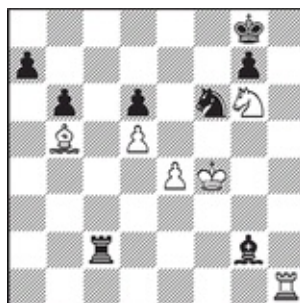
767
Stahlberg - Keres
Bad Neugheim, 1936

Black to move



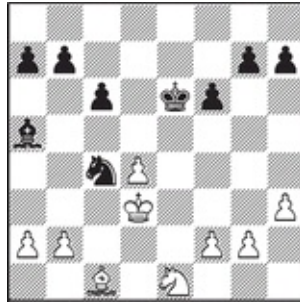
768
Kasparian - Manvelian
Yerevan, 1936

White to move



769
Bondarevsky - Ufimtsev
Leningrad, 1936

White to move



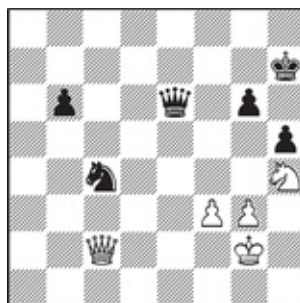
770
Lasker - Euwe
I Nottingham, 1936

White to move



771
Botvinnik - Vidmar
Nottingham, 1936

White to move

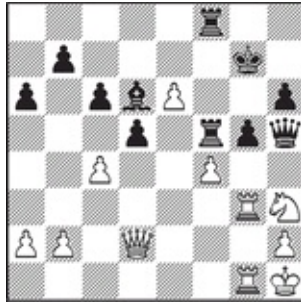


772

Alekhine - Euwe

Holland, 1937, 18th game of the match

White to move

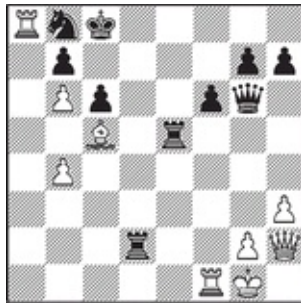


773

Alekhine - Taylor

Margate, 1937

White to move



774

Alekhine - Reshevsky

Kemer, 1937

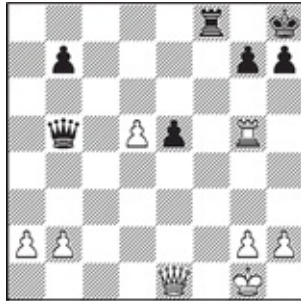
White to move



775

**Fine - Yudovich
Moscow, 1937**

Black to move



Black to move

776

**Lowcki - Tartakower
Urata, 1937**

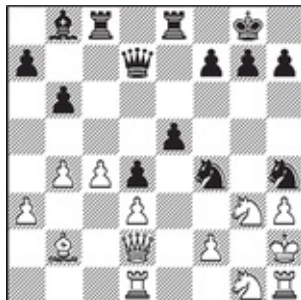
Black to move



777

**Duz-Hotimirsky - Kotov
Kiev, 1938**

White to move



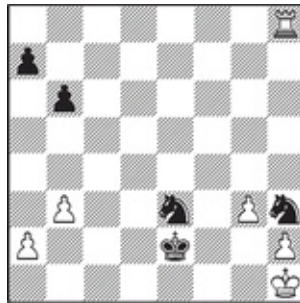
778
Toth - Asztalos
Ljubljana, 1938

Black to move



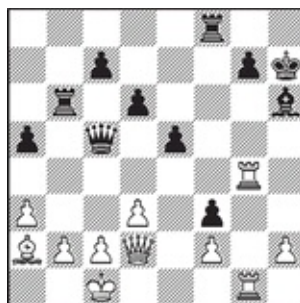
779
Capablanca - Rossolimo
Paris, 1938

White to move



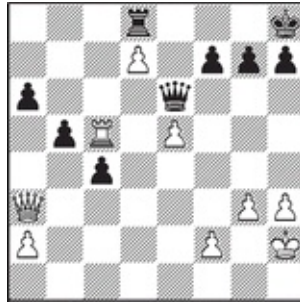
780
NN - Richter
1938

Black to move



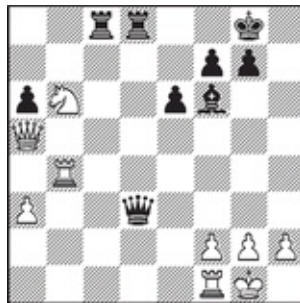
781
Richter - NN
1938

White to move



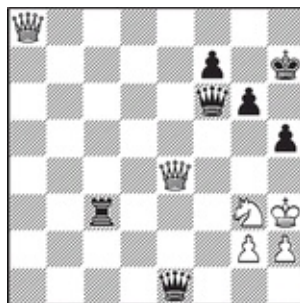
782
Alekhine - Nestor
Trinidad, 1939
I Simultaneous exhibition

Black to move



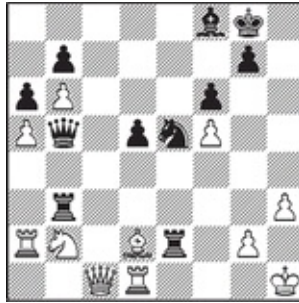
783
Fontein - Euwe
Amsterdam, 1939

Black to move



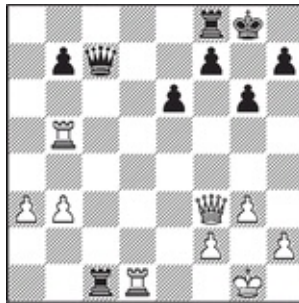
784
Rovner - Guldin
Leningrad, 1939

White to move



785
Stolberg - Botvinnik
Moscow, 1940

Black to move



786
Ragozin - Panov
USSR, 1940

Black to move

Solutions

Diagram 679. 1... ♖xe5! White resigned, due to 2 de ♘c5+ 3 ♘e3 ♘xe3+ 4 ♔h2 g3+ 5 ♖h3 ♘c8+ 6 ♖g4 ♘xg4#. Truly fantastic variations could have arisen after, for example, 2 ♘e3 ♘c5! 3 ♘f2 g3! 4 ♘e3 ♖d8 5 ♖h3 fe 6 de e2+ 7 ♖h1 ♖xd1+ 8 ♖xd1 ♘xe4 9 ♖xg3 ♘xg3+.

Diagram 680. 1...b4 2 ab ♖xh4 3 gh g3! 4 fg c3! 5 bc (5 ♖xc3 ♖xe3) 5...a3. White resigned. (6 ♖c1 ♖xe3)

Diagram 681. ♘e4! f5 (“It is no better for Black to defend with 1...h6 2 ♘xh6 f5 3 ♖g5 ♖c7 4 ♘xg7 ♖xg7 5 ♖xg7+ ♖xg7 6 ♖d7+, followed by ♘xb7, or 1...g6 2 ♘f6 ♘xd5 3 ♘xd5; White wins in both cases. After the move in the game, Black loses his queen for rook and bishop and White’s victory is just a matter of time.” - Alekhine) 2 ♘xf5! ♖xf5 3 ♖d8+ ♖xd8 4 ♘xd8 and White won.

Diagram 682. 1 ♖c7 ♖g8 2 ♘d7! (“White is threatening to win the exchange, and thus he forces Black’s next move.” - Alekhine) 2...♖h8 3 ♘f6! ♖gf8 (or 3...gf 4 ♖h7#) 4 ♖xg7! ♖xf6 5 ♖e5! (“Black cannot retreat his rook from f6, and he cannot defend it with the other rook, because of mate in two.” - Alekhine. It is also good for White to play 5 ♖h7+ ♖g8 6 ♖g7+ ♖f8 7 ♖e5!, mating in a few moves.) Black resigned.

Diagram 683. 1...♘xd4 2 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 3 ♘xd4 ♖xh3! 4 gh? (or 4 ♘e6 ♖e8) 4...♘f2++ 5 ♖g1 ♘xh3#.

Diagram 684. 1...♘xb2! 2 ♖xb2 (or 2 ♘xb2 ♖c2+ 3 ♖a1 ♖c1+! 4 ♖xc1 ♖xc1#; 2 ♖xb2 ♖b6) 2...♖c3! 3 ♖a4 ♖c2+. (or 3...♖xd3!, when White cannot play 4 ♖xd3, due to 4...♖c1+ 5 ♖b3 ♖b8+) White resigned. (4 ♖b1 ♖b8+)

Diagram 685. 1 ♖xc4! dc (It is interesting for Black to try 1...h6! 2 ♘e4!! ♖xf4! 3 ef dc 4 ♘xf6 with an extra exchange for White. 2...♖b8 would not work, in view of 3 ♘xf6!! dc? 4 ♘g6#.) 2 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 3 ♘g6+ and unavoidably 4 ♖xf8#.

Diagram 686. 1 ♘xd4 ed (Otherwise Black loses a piece.) 2 ♖xd7+!, and it is all over. (2...♘xd7 3 ♘e6#)

Diagram 687. 1...♘d6! One of Black’s pawns promotes. (2 ♘xd6 d1 ♖ 3 ♖f8+ ♖e6 4 ♖e8+ ♖d5!; 2 ♖xd6 h2 3 ♖xd2 h1 ♖)

Diagram 688. 1 ♖xf6+!! ♖xf6 (or 1...gf 2 ♘d5#) 2 ♘d5+ ♖e5 3 ♘f3+ ♖xe4 4 ♘c3#.

Diagram 689. 1 h3! ♖xh3 (or 1...♘f4 2 hg ♘h3+ 3 ♖f1) 2 ♖xf3! Black resigned. If 2...♖xf3, 3 ♖c8+ ♘xc8 4 ♖e8+ ♖f8 5 ♖xf8#; 2...♘f4 3 ♖xf4! ♖g8 4 ♘h7+ ♖xh7 5 ♖xf8.

Diagram 690. 1...♖xd4! 2 fe (“If 2 ed ♘xd4+ 3 ♖f1 ♘f4! 4 ♖xe4 (or 4 ♖d2 ♖c4+ 5 ♖e1 e3!),

then 4... ♖c4+ 5 ♕e1 ♘g2+ 6 ♖d2 ♙e3+ and Black wins.” - Alekhine - We will add the following variations: 4 ♖c1 ♗xc1+ 5 ♘xc1 ♗xe2 6 ♘xe2 ♙xb2 with a winning endgame for Black) 2... ♗f4! 3 ef ♖c4! (“This move wins at least a piece. White succumbs to an even faster finish, though.” - Alekhine) 4 ♗xc4? (or 4 ♖e1 ♗xa2) 4... ♖xd1+ 5 ♗f1 ♙d4+, with mate.

Diagram 691. 1 fe! ♙xg3 (or 1... fe 2 ♘xe6) 2 ef+ ♖h8 3 ♘d5! “It is not as strong for White to play 3 ♗e6, due to 3... ♗b8! 4 ♘d5 ♙e5, and Black can fight on. After the text move, the game is practically over, as can be seen from the following variations: 3... ♗b8 4 ♗c6 ♙e5 (if 4... ♗b7, then 5 ♘xd8) 5 ♙xe5 de 6 ♘xb8 ♖xb8 7 ♗c7! ♖f8 8 ♘e6, followed by 9 ♘xf8 and 10 ♖d8; 3... ♗a7 4 ♗c6 ♙e5 5 ♙xe5 de 6 ♘xa7 ♖xa7 7 ♘xb6 ♖f8 8 ♘xc8 ♖xc8 9 ♖xd7; 3... ♗b7 4 ♘e6 ♙e5 5 ♘xd8; 3... ♗c5 4 ♘e6 ♙e5 5 ♙xe5 de 6 ♘xc5 bc 7 ♗c7 ♖b8 8 ♘e8!” (Alekhine)
Black resigned.

Diagram 692. 1 e6! ♗f6 (If 1...f6, then 2 e7, while if 1...c5, or 1...fe, then 2 ♗xg7, and White wins in all variations.) 2 ♙xd7+ ♖d8 3 ♙c6+ ♗xd4 4 e7#.

Diagram 693. 1 ♙xh7+! ♖xh7 (or 1... ♖h8 2 ♖h3 ♙xb2 3 ♙g6+ ♖g8 4 ♖h8+!; 1... ♖f8 2 ♙xg7+! ♖xg7? 3 ♖g3+ ♖f6 4 ♗h5) 2 ♖h3+ ♖g8 3 ♙xg7! (White can also follow with 3 ♗h5 f6 4 ♙xa3 ♗xa3 5 ♗h8+ ♖f7 6 ♗xd8 ♖c1+ 7 ♘f1 ♙b5 8 ♖f3.) Black resigned. “In case of 3...f6, White should not be satisfied to win the queen for rook and bishop, but he should play instead 4 ♙h6! ♗h7 5 ♗h5! ♙f8 6 ♗g4+ ♖h8 7 ♙xf8.” (Alekhine)

Diagram 694. 1 ♖e8+ ♘f8 2 ♘h6+! ♗xh6 (or 2... ♖h8 3 ♖xf8#) 3 ♖xf8+! ♖xf8 4 ♗d8#.

Diagram 695. 1 ♗b5+! ♘d7 (or 1... ♗xb5 2 ♘f6#) 2 ♖fe1 (or 2 ♖ae1) 2... ♙b4 (After 2... ♙e7, it seems good for White to continue with 3 ♘ed6+ ♖f8 4 ♖xe7 gf 5 ♗d5 ♖xe7 6 ♖e1+ ♘e5 7 ♘xf5+ ♖e8 8 ♗xe5+ ♗e6 9 ♗xh8+ ♖d7 10 ♗d4+.) 3 ♘f6++ ♖f8 4 ♘xd7+ ♖xd7 5 ♗e5! Black resigned. “White is threatening to checkmate in three different ways, and it is impossible for Black to defend.” (Alekhine)

Diagram 696. 1 ♗g6!! (This is the fastest way to the win, but it is also possible for White to play 1 ♘g6+ fg 2 ♗xg6 ♖xf5 3 ♖h3, or 1 ♖h3 ♙xc4 2 ♗d1; he forces mate in a few moves in both cases.) 1...fg (or 1... ♖g8 2 ♗xh7+! ♖xh7 3 ♖h3#) 2 ♘xg6+! hg 3 ♖h3+ ♗h4 4 ♖xh4#.

Diagram 697. 1 ♖f1 ♖d8 (“Or 1... ♗e7 2 ♙f7+ ♖h8 3 ♙d5! ♗f6 4 ♗c8 etc.” - Alekhine) 2 ♙f7+ ♖h8 3 ♙e8! “Black resigned, because he loses at least his bishop - 3... ♙xc5+ etc.” - Alekhine.

Diagram 698. 1 ♘e6+! ef (or 1... g5 2 ♗f6+ ♗g6 3 ♗xg6+ hg 4 ♘xf8) 2 ♙g7#.

Diagram 699. 1... ♘e3!! White resigned. (2 fe ♗h4+ 3 g3 ♗xg3#)

Diagram 700. 1...h5! 2 ♗xh5 (or 2 ♗b7+ ♖h6; 2 ♗f1 g4+ 3 ♖h4 ♗h2+; 2 g4! hg+ 3 ♗xg4 ♗

h1+ 4 ♖g3 ♗e1+, winning the knight) 2... ♖h1+ 3 ♖g4 ♖d1+! 4 ♗f3 ♖d7#!

Diagram 701. 1 ♖h6! ♗xe1+ 2 ♗f1 ♖e8 (or 2... ♗e3+ 3 ♗xe3) 3 ♖g7#.

Diagram 702. 1 ♗h4! h6 (or 1... ♖xa3 2 ♗f6+ ♗g7 3 ♗xg7+ ♖g8 4 ♗h6#; 1... ♗g6 2 ♗f6+ ♖g8 3 ♗h6#, or 2... ♗g7 3 ♖f8#) 2 ♖f8+! (Also good is 2 ♗f6+ ♖h7 3 ♖f8!) 2... ♗xf8 3 ♗f6+ ♖h7 4 ♖g7+ ♗h8 5 ♖xf7+ ♖g8 6 ♗xh6#.

Diagram 703. 1 ♖h6! caused Black's resignation. If 1...gh, 2 ♖g3#; or 1...f6, 2 ♖g3 ♖f7 3 ♗xf6 ♖e8+ 4 ♖d1 ♖e4 5 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 6 ♖xg7+ ♖xg7 7 ♗xg7 or 2 ♖h7+ ♖f7 3 ♖g3 ♖g8 4 ♗xd6 ♖ae8+ 5 ♖f1 ♖xd6 6 ♗g6+.

Diagram 704. After 1... ♗c2! White resigned. (2 ♖xc2 ♖xe1#; 2 ♗xc2 ♖xg2#; 2 ♖xc2 ♖xe1+! 3 ♖xe1 ♖xc2 4 ♖g1 f3)

Diagram 705. 1... ♖xf3! 2 ♗xf3 ♖xf3+! 3 ♖xf3 (or 3 ♖f1 ♗c8 4 ♖ec1 ♗g4 5 ♖g1 ♗h3 and 6... ♖g2#) 3... ♗xd4++ 4 ♖g4 ♗c8+ 5 ♖h4 ♗f3#.

Diagram 706. 1 ♖e1+! ♗e5 (or 1... ♗d8 2 ♖a8+; 1... ♗d6 2 ♖b6+) 2 d6+! ♖e6 3 ♖b3+ ♖f5 4 ♖d3+ ♖g5 5 ♖e3+ ♖f5 (5... ♗h5 6 g4+) 6 ♖e4+ ♖e6 7 ♖c4+ ♖xd6 (or 7... ♖f5 8 ♖g4#) 8 ♖d1+ ♖e7 9 ♖xd7+ ♖xd7 10 ♖xa6. Black resigned.

Diagram 707. 1 ♖xd7! ("This sacrifice is possible only because the g5-square is occupied by Black's queen and his king cannot escape when White doubles his rooks along the eighth rank." - Alekhine) 1... ♖xd7 2 ♖e8+! ♖h7 3 ♖c8 ♖d8 4 ♖exd8! Black resigned.

Diagram 708. 1... ♖e8!, and if 2 ♖xe8, then 2... ♖xf3+ 3 ♖g1 ♖g2#, while if 2 ♖d1, then 2... ♖xf3+! mating. (3 ♖xf3 ♖xe1#; 3 ♖g1 ♖g2#)

Diagram 709. 1 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 (or 1... ♖xh7 2 ♖xf6+ ♖g7 3 ♖xg7#) 2 ♖f6+ ♖g7 3 ♖g6+ ♖f8 (or 3... ♖h7 4 ♖g4+ ♖xf5 5 ♖g7#) 4 ♖h8+ ♖e7 5 ♖e6+ ♖d7 6 ♖xe8#.

Diagram 710. 1 ♖xf7+! ♗xf7 (or 1... ♖g8 2 ♖xe8#) 2 ♗xe6+ ♖g8 3 ♖xe8+ ♖h7 4 ♗4g5+ ♗xg5 5 ♗xg5+ ♖h6 6 ♖xh8#.

Diagram 711. 1... ♖e2! White resigned. (or 2 ♖xe2 ♖f1#; 2 ♖c1 ♖xg2+ with mate)

Diagram 712. 1 ♗h5+! g6 2 ♗xg6 ♗b6 (or 2...hg 3 ♗xg6#; 2... ♖f7! 3 ♗xh8++ winning the exchange) 3 ♗e5#.

Diagram 713. 1 ♖h5+! ♖xh5 (or 1... ♖g7 2 ♗f7) 2 ♗f7+ ♗g6 (or 2... ♖h4 3 ♗e1#) 3 g4+ ♖h4 4 ♗e1#.

Diagram 714. 1 ♖xd7! ♙xd7 2 ♘f6+ ♚f8 (or 2... ♙h8 3 ♘d5+) 3 ♘d5! Black resigned, because he had to lose his queen, since he could not capture the knight due to 4 ♙h8#.

Diagram 715. 1 ♖e8! ♚xe8 2 ♙xf6+ ♚g8 3 ♙h6. Black resigned. (3... ♙g6 4 ♙f8#; 3... ♙f7 4 ♙d8+ ♙f8 5 ♙xf8#)

Diagram 716. 1... ♖xh2! 2 ♙f3 (or 2 ♙xh2 ♙xg4+ 3 ♚h1 ♙h3 with mate) 2... ♖hg2+ 3 ♙xg2 ♖xg2+ 4 ♙xg2 ♙xg4 and Black won.

Diagram 717. 1 b4! ♙xb4 (1... ♙e7 2 ♘c7+!; Lasker thought that it was best for Black to follow with 1... ♙xb4 2 ♘d6+ ♙d8 3 ♙xd7+ ♙xd7 4 ♘xc8 ♖xc8) 2 ♖xc6! ("This is stronger than 2 ♘c7+ ♖xc7 3 ♙xc7 ♙c5 4 ♙f4 0-0." - V. Panov) 2... ♖xc6 3 ♙xb4 ♙e4 4 ♘d2 and White won.

Diagram 718. 1... ♙xe3! White resigned, in view of 2 ♙xd5 ♖xd5 3 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 4 ♙e ♖xb4.

Diagram 719. 1 ♖xg7+! ♙xg7 2 ♖g1+ ♚h7 3 ♘xf7! Now Black resigned, not waiting for 3... ♙xf7 4 ♙d3+ ♙g6 5 ♙xg6+ ♙xg6 6 ♙f6.

Diagram 720. 1...dc! "The main line of this profound sacrifice is 2 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 3 ♙e8+ ♚h7 4 ♙xd7 ♙e4! 5 ♙xf7 (or 5 ♙d5 ♙xd5 6 ♖xd5 c2 which Black wins, because the move 7 ♖c5 is refuted by 7... ♙d4+) 5...c2 6 ♙xh5+ ♙g8, with a win for Black." - Alekhine. 2 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 3 ♖xd7 ♙d4+ 4 ♙h1 ("Or 4 ♖xd4 ♙xd4+ 5 ♙f1 ♙f4+ 6 ♙e1 ♙xb4 etc." - Alekhine) 4... ♙c1+. White resigned.

Diagram 721. 1... ♙h5! (It is not as elegant for Black to play 1...h1 ♙ 2 ♙xh1 ♙e4+ 3 ♙h4 ♖d7 or 3... ♖d8.) White resigned. (2 ♙xf6 h1 ♙#)

Diagram 722. 1 ♙xh6! ("The mating attack after 1 ♙xg7! was also winning. It would also be sufficient for White to play 1 ♙h7+ ♙f8 2 ♙xg7+. Still, the sacrifice in the text, including the beautiful final blow is the most forcing line. Now White is threatening mate in two different ways; Black has no satisfactory defense." - Spielmann. After 1 ♙h7+ ♙f8 White does well by playing simply 2 ♙d6.) 1...gh 2 gh+ ♙f8 (Black can avoid being checkmated only by 2... ♙g5 3 ♖xg5+ ♙f8 4 ♙d6+ ♙e8, but after 5 h7 he can resign.) 3 ♖g8+! ("This is the idea behind the queen sacrifice. Mate in two follows: 3... ♙xg8 4 h7+ and 5 h8 ♙# or 5 h8 ♖#." - Spielmann) Black resigned.

Diagram 723. 1 ♙g6! Black resigned. "After 1... ♖xd1+ 2 ♙g2 ♖d2+ 3 ♙h3, the mate on h6 is unavoidable." (Nimzowitsch)

Diagram 724. 1 ♙b7+ ♙b5 (or 1... ♙a5 2 ♘xc6+ ♙xc6 3 b4+ cb 4 ♙a6#) 2 a4+ ♙c5 (or 2... ♙a5 3 ♘xc6+ ♙xc6 4 b4+ cb 5 ♙a6#) 3 ♙xc6+! ♙xc6 4 ♘xe6#.

Diagram 725. After 1 ♙f7! Black resigned, because if 1...gh 2 ♙xh7#; or 1... ♘xf7 2 ♘xf7+ ♙g8

3 g h+ ♖xf7 4 ♜f1+ ♜f5! 5 ♜xf5+ ♜e8 6 ♜e5+ ♜d7 7 ♜f5+ ♜d6 8 ♜e6+ ♜d7 9 ♜e4+ ♜d6 10 ♜f4#, or 5... ♜e7 6 ♜xe7+ ♜xe7 7 h8 ♜.

Diagram 726. 1 ♜a5+! ♜xb4 2 ♜ha3! White wins a rook, because of the threat 3 ♜3a4#.

Diagram 727. 1 ♜xe4! fe (Even after the best defense for Black, 1... ♜xf1 2 ♜xf1!, White has a winning position.) 2 ♜xe4+ ♜h8 (or 2... ♜f5 3 ♜xf5+ etc.) 3 ♜g6+ ♜h7 4 ♜xf8++ ♜h8 5 ♜g6+ ♜h7 6 ♜e5+ ♜h8 7 ♜f7#.

Diagram 728. 1 ♜f6+! ♜h8 (or 1... ♜xf6 2 ♜xc7) 2 ♜e8! ♜xe8 3 ♜xc7 ♜b2 4 ♜ad1. Black resigned.

Diagram 729. 1 ♜e7+! and Black resigned because of 1... ♜h8 2 ♜xf8#; 1... ♜xe7 2 ♜xh7+! ♜xh7 3 ♜h5+ ♜g8 4 ♜h8#.

Diagram 730. 1 ♜xg7+! ♜xg7 2 h8 ♜+! ♜xh8 3 ♜g5+ ♜f8 4 ♜xh8+ with mate next move.

Diagram 731. 1... ♜d6+ (or 1... ♜c7+) 2 ♜h3 (or 2 f4 ♜xf4+ 3 ♜h3 ♜f3+ with mate) 2... ♜f4+ 3 ♜g3 ♜h5++ 4 ♜h3 ♜g3+! 5 ♜xg3 ♜f4#.

Diagram 732. On 1 ♜e5+! Black resigned, due to 1... ♜xe5 2 ♜a7+ ♜c6 3 ♜e4# or 2... ♜c8 3 ♜xa8+ ♜d7 4 ♜xe8 ♜xg6 5 ♜xg8.

Diagram 733. 1 ♜xg6 hg 2 ♜xg6! ♜g8 (or 2... fg 3 ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 4 ♜e8) 3 ♜xf7+! Here Black resigned. (3... ♜xf7 4 ♜e8+)

Diagram 734. 1... ♜g5+ 2 ♜h3 (or 2 ♜h4 ♜xh2#) 2... ♜f1+ 3 ♜h4 White resigned. (3... ♜h5+! 4 ♜xh5 ♜h3+ 5 ♜h4 g6# or 5... ♜f5#)

Diagram 735. 1... ♜e4! 2 ♜d2 (or 2 ♜xe4 ♜c1+ with mate to follow) 2... ♜xa4 and White soon resigned.

Diagram 736. Black resigned after 1 ♜xb6! due to 1... ab 2 ♜xb6+ ♜c8 3 a7 ♜d7 4 a8 ♜ ♜xa8 5 ♜b7+ and 6 ♜xa8#.

Diagram 737. Following 1... h5! White resigned; if 2 hg ♜h1+ 3 ♜g2 ♜dg1#.

Diagram 738. 1 ♜e8+ ♜f8 (or 1... ♜h7 2 ♜d3+) 2 ♜xf8+! ♜xf8 3 ♜f5+. Black resigned. (3... ♜g8 4 ♜f8+! ♜xf8 5 ♜d8# or 4... ♜h7 5 ♜g7#)

Diagram 739. 1... ♜e2+! 2 ♜xe2 (or 2 ♜h2 ♜g2#) 2... ♜f1+! 3 ♜xf1 (Or Black mates on h1.) 3...

h1+. White resigned. (4 ♖f2 ♘g4#)

Diagram 740. 1... ♖xf3. White resigned; if 2 ♖xf3 ♘xf3; 2 ♖xg5 ♖xf2!; 2 ♖xf3 ♖xe3 3 ♖xe3 ♖xf1#.

Diagram 741. 1... ♖c4!! 2 bc (This move loses immediately, but it is equally hopeless for White to try 2 ♖c1 ♖c5 3 ♖g2 ♖xf2.) 2... ♖c5! (or 2... b3?? 3 ♖xc2) 3 ♖g2 ♖xf2 4 ♖xf2 b3. White resigned.

Diagram 742. 1 ♖d5!! (It was not as spectacular, nor would White win so quickly after 1 ♖e5! ♖g6 2 hg!) Black resigned. (1... ♖xd5 2 ♖f6#; 1... ♖xd5 2 ♖f8#; after 1... ♖xd5, or 1... ed, White wins with 2 ♖xd8#.)

Diagram 743. 1 ♖xe6+! fe (or 1... ♖e7 2 ♖xe7#) 2 ♖g6#.

Diagram 744. 1 ♖c8! Black resigned. (1... ♖xe3 2 ♖xd8+ ♖f7 3 fe; 1... ♖xc8 2 ♖xb6)

Diagram 745. 1 ♖xh7+! ♖xh7 (Black can avoid immediate checkmate, but still loses with the line 1... ♖f8 2 ♖h8+ ♖e7! 3 ♖xg7+ ♖f7 4 ♖g6+ ♖d7 5 ♖xf7+.) 2 ♖g6+ ♖g8 3 ♖h8+ ♖f7 4 ♖f8+! ♖xf8 5 d6#.

Diagram 746. After 1 ♖e6! Black resigned due to 1... ♖xe6 2 ♖xh7+! ♖xh7 3 ♖h3+ ♖h4 4 ♖hxh4#.

Diagram 747. 1 ♖e5! de (“Obviously Black has no choice, because after 1... ♖xe5 2 ♖xe5 de, 3 g6 wins immediately for White.” - Alekhine) 2 g6! (“This is the point: now if 2... ♖xg6, then 3 ♖c4+, and mate in three.” - Alekhine) Black resigned.

Diagram 748. 1 a6 ♖h4 (or 1... ♖g1 2 a7 ♖a1 3 ♖a3! ba 4 a8 ♖ab 5 ♖b7+ and 6 ♖xb2; Black would not save the game with 4...a2 either.) 2 ♖d8! ♖xd8 3 a7. Black resigned.

Diagram 749. 1... ♖c4+! (or 1... ♖xh2?? 2 ♖xf8+!) 2 ♖xc4 (or 2 ♖e2 ♖xb5) 2... ♖xh2. White resigned. If 3 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 4 ♖e8+ ♖xe8 5 ♖b5+ ♖f8 6 ♖e1 gf.

Diagram 750. 1 ♖xb7! ♖b6 (or 1... ♖xf6 2 ♖b4#) 2 ♖xc6+! ♖xc6 (It is better for Black to play 2... ♖b5 3 ♖xb6+ ab.) 3 ♖b4#.

Diagram 751. 1... ♖a5+!! 2 ♖xa5 ♖xa2+ 3 ♖b4 a5#.

Diagram 752. 1 ab! ♖xa1+ 2 ♖d2! ♖xh1? (It was necessary for Black to play 2... ♖e5!, but even then after 3 ♖xe5 ♖xh1 4 ♖xf7 ♖xd4+! 5 ♖xd4, White’s position is winning.) 3 ♖xc6+! bc 4 ♖a6#.

Diagram 753. 1 h4+! ♔f4 (or 1... ♖xh4 2 ♖xh4+ ♖xh4 3 ♖xe5; 1... ♔g4 2 ♖xg6+) 2 ♖h6+ g5 (or 2... ♔g4 3 ♖g5#) 3 ♖xf5+! ♖xf5 4 ♖d6+ ♔g4 5 ♔xf5+! Black resigned. (5... ♖xf5 6 ♖e6+ ♔f4 7 ♖e5+ ♔g4 8 ♖xg5#; 5... ♔h5 6 ♖g6+ ♖xh4 7 ♖h6#)

Diagram 754. 1... ♖xg3+! (not 1... ♖xf2 - stalemate) White resigned. (2 ♖xg3 ♖xf2)

Diagram 755. 1 e6! ♖dxcg7 2 ♖xg7 ♖xg7 3 ♖xd5! cd 4 ♖f8+ ♔c7 5 ♖f7+ ♔d6 (“This is a sad necessity, because after 5... ♖xf7 6 ef, White’s pawn is unstoppable.” - Alekhine) 6 ♖xg7, and White won.

Diagram 756. On 1... ♖xf1+! White resigned. (2 ♖e2 ♖e1+!)

Diagram 757. 1 ♖f5+ ♔h8 2 ♖xg6! and Black resigned. (2...hg 3 ♖h3+ ♖h6 4 ♖xh6#)

Diagram 758. Following 1 ♔d5! Black resigned. (1... ♖xf2 2 ♖g8#; 1... ♖xd5 2 ♖xf8+; 1... ♖xg2+ 2 ♖xg2)

Diagram 759. 1 ♖h6+! ♔h8 (or 1...gh 2 ♖xh7#) 2 ♖xc5 (“If now 2... ♖e8, then 3 ♖d5! gh 4 ♖f7 ♔e7 5 ♖xe7 and mate is unavoidable.” - Alekhine) Black resigned.

Diagram 760. 1 ♖xf6! gf 2 ♖h5+ ♔d8 (or 2... ♔e7 3 ♖f5+! ef 4 ♖d5+ ♔d8 5 ♔b6+ ♔d7 6 ♖f7+ ♔c6 7 ♖c7+ ♔b5 8 a4+; 2... ♔d7 3 ♖f7+ ♔e7 4 ♖f5! ♖e8 5 ♖d1) 3 ♖f7 ♔d7? (or 3... ♔e7 4 ♖f5 ♖c7 5 ♖a4 ♖f8 6 ♖xh7 ♔e8 7 ♔b6 ♖d7 8 ♖h5+ ♖f7 9 ♖g7+ and 10 ♖h8#, or 4... ♖e8 5 ♖xd6! ♔xd6 6 ♔b6+ ♔c7 7 ♖d1+) 4 ♖xf6+ ♔c7 5 ♖xh8 ♔h6 6 ♖xe6+! ♖xe6 7 ♖xa8 ♔xe3+ 8 ♖h1. Black resigned.

Diagram 761. 1... ♔xa3 2 ♖xa3 ♖xe2 3 ♖xb6 (White is reluctant to lose a piece, so he loses the game outright.) 3... ♖ab8 4 ♖d6 ♖xf1+! 5 ♔xf1 ♖b1+. (or 5... ♖c1+) White resigned. (6 ♖e2 ♖c2#)

Diagram 762. 1 ♖xh6+! ♖xh6 2 ♖xh6+ ♔g7 3 ♖h7+ ♖f8 4 ♖h8+ ♔e7 (or 4... ♔g7 5 ♖h7+ with a repetition of position) 5 ♖g8+! ♖f8 (or 5... ♖xg8? 6 ♖xg8; 5... ♔d7 6 ♖f6+ ♔e7 drawing. Black cannot play 6... ♖c7??, because of 7 ♖xc8+ ♖xc8 8 ♖xc1) 6 ♖f6+, drawing by perpetual check.

Diagram 763. 1... ♖d3! 2 ♖xb6 (or 2 ♖xd3 ♔h2+ 3 ♖h1 ♖xf2+; 2 ♖c2 ♖d2 and Black wins.) 2... ♖xh3! 3 ♔d4 (or 3 ♖xc6 ♔h2+ and 4... ♖xf2#) 3... ♔h2+ 4 ♖h1 ♔xe5+. White resigned. (5 ♖g1 ♔h2+ 4 ♖h1 ♔c7+ and 5... ♔xb6)

Diagram 764. 1 ♖xf6! ♔xf6 2 ♖h7+ (We believe it is simpler for White to follow with 2 ♖e1! ♔

e5 3 de!. Now Black can resign, since after 3... ♖f8, comes 4 ♜h8+ and mate in two, while 3... ♜c8 is met by 4 e6) 2... ♖f8 3 ♖e1 ♜e5 4 ♜h8+ ♖e7 5 ♜xg7+ ♖d6 6 ♜xe5+ ♖d7 7 ♜f5+ ♖c6 8 d5+ ♖c5 9 ♜a3+ ♖xc4 10 ♜e4+ (or 10 ♜c2+) 10... ♖c3 11 ♜b4+ ♖b2 12 ♜b1#.

Diagram 765. 1 ♖xf6! ♖xf6 2 ♜h5 ♜g6 3 ♜f5! ♖g8 (or 3... ♜xf5 4 ef) 4 ♜xh6 ♜xa2 (“This is the only way for Black to free up a square for the retreat of his king — by removing the bishop.” - Botvinnik) 5 ♖d1 and White wins.

Diagram 766. 1...f4+! 2 ♜xf4 ♜f2+ 3 ♖d3 ♜xd4+! 4 ♖xd4 ♜c5+ 5 ♖d3 ♜xe5#.

Diagram 767. On 1... ♜f3! White resigned. “After 2 gf ♖d2, White has no defense against the mate on h2.” (Paul Keres)

Diagram 768. 1 ♜xc6+!! ♖xc6 (This leads to mate.) 2 ♜e5++ ♖c5 3 ♜d3+ ♖d4 4 ♖d2. Black resigned, because 5 c3# cannot be stopped.

Diagram 769. 1 ♖h8+ ♖f7 2 ♜e8+! ♜xe8 3 ♖g5! with mate.

Diagram 770. 1 b4! ♜xb4 2 ♜c2 ♜d2 3 ♜xd2 and White won.

Diagram 771. 1 ♜xf7! ♖xf7 (or 1... ♖xf7 2 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 3 ♖xd5) 2 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 (or 2... ♜xf6 3 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 4 ♜xc8+) 3 ♖xd5 (“This is much stronger than 3 ♜xd5.” - Alekhine) 3... ♜c6 4 ♖d6! ♜e8 5 ♖d7. Black resigned.

Diagram 772. White draws with 1 ♜xg6!; 1... ♜e3+ 2 ♖f2 ♜xc2 3 ♜f8+ and 4 ♜xe6.

Diagram 773. 1 ♜xg5! ♜xf4! (or 1...hg 2 ♖xg5+ ♖xg5 3 ♖xg5+) 2 ♜c3+! (“This is the first subtlety — White delays the discovered check, refraining from the attractive move 2 e7, since after 2... ♜xd2 3 ♜e6++ ♖h8, it would all be a hallucination.” - Alekhine) 2... ♖8f6 (or 2... ♜e5 3 ♜f3+) 3 ♜e4+ ♜xg3 4 ♖xg3+ ♖h8 (or 4... ♖f8 5 ♜b4+! and mate) 5 ♜xf6+! (“This is the last fine point and it reminds us of some of the famous positions of Greco and Stamma.” - Alekhine) 5... ♖xf6 6 ♖g8+! (“After 6... ♖xg8 7 ♜xf6+ ♖f8 8 ♜xh5 dc 9 ♖g2, White can stop Black’s queenside pawns even without the help of the knight.” - Alekhine) Black resigned.

Diagram 774. 1 ♖xb8+! ♖xb8 (or 1... ♜d7 2 ♖xb7+ ♖c8 3 ♖c7+ ♖b8 4 ♜d6! ♖xd6 5 ♜xe5!) 2 ♜xe5+! mating. (2...fe 3 ♖f8+; 2... ♖a8 3 ♖a1+; 2... ♖c8 3 ♜c7#)

Diagram 775. 1...ab! 2 ♜xf6+ ♜xf6! 3 ♜xf6 ♜b4+ 4 ♜d2 ♜xd2+ 5 ♖xd2 gf, and Black is up a piece.

Diagram 776. 1... ♜c5+ 2 ♖h1 ♜c4! 3 ♖g1 ♜d4+ 4 ♖h1 ♜e4! (but not 4... ♜d2, because of 5

Ke5 5 Kc1 (or 5 Kd1 Kf4! ; 5 Kg1 Ke2) 5... Kd3 6 Kg1 Kd4+ 7 Kh1 Kd2! White resigned.
(8 Kxd2 Kf1\#)

Diagram 777. 1 Kxf6+ gf (1... Kf8 2 Kxh7) 2 Kxf7! Ke7 (or 2... Kxf7 3 Kxh7+ Kf8 4 Kxg6 Ke7 5 Kh8\# ; 2... Kf8 3 Kxh7+ Kh8 4 Kh6 , with mate) 3 Kxh7\# .

Diagram 778. 1... Kxh3+! 2 Kxh3 Kf3\# .

Diagram 779. 1 Kd3! Black resigned. (1... Kxa1 2 Kc8\# ; 1... Ke8 2 Kxe5!)

Diagram 780. 1... Kf1! 2 Kxh3 (or 2 Kf8+ Kf2+ 3 Kxf2+ Kxf2 and Black wins) 2... Kg4 (or 2... Kd1) with the unavoidable 3... Kf2\# .

Diagram 781. 1 Kxh6+! gh (or 1... Kxh6 2 Kh4\#) 2 Kg7+ Kh8 3 Kg8! Kxg8 4 Kxg8+ Kh7 5 Kg7\# .

Diagram 782. 1 Kc8! Kxc8 (or 1... Kxd7 2 Kf8+ Kxf8 3 Kxf8\#) 2 Ke7!! and Black resigned.
(2... Kxe7 3 Kc8+ with mate; 2... Kg8 3 d8K ; 2... Kxd7 3 Kxd7)

Diagram 783. 1... Kc1! with a win for Black. (2 Kxc1 Kd1+! 3 Kxd1 Kxd1\#)

Diagram 784. 1 Kg8+! Kxg8 (or 1... Kh6 2 Kf8+ and Black cannot play 2... Kg5?? , due to 3 Kh4\# , while 2... Kh7 3 Kg8+! leads to a repetition of position.) 2 Ke8+! Kh7 (or 2... Kxe8 and a stalemate) 3 Kg8+! Kh6! 4 Kh7+! Kg5 5 Kh6+! Kxh6 . This is a draw by stalemate.

Diagram 785. 1... Kxh3+! 2 gh d4 . "White resigned, because he cannot cover the long light-squared diagonal." (Botvinnik)

Diagram 786. 1... Kc6! White resigned. If 2 Kxc6 Kxd1+ ; 2 Kxc1 Kxf3 ; 2 Kd3 Kxd1+ 3 Kxd1 Kxb5 .

XII

Botvinnik, Smyslov, Tal (1941-1960)

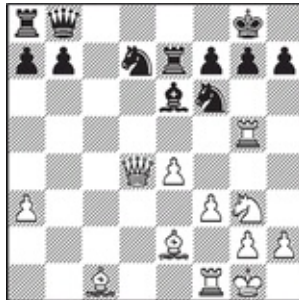
Half the variations which are calculated in a tournament game turn out to be completely superfluous. Unfortunately, no one knows in advance which half.

Jan Timman

In 1946, the world champion Alexander Alekhine died suddenly. To fill the vacancy, FIDE decided to hold a match tournament in 1948 in The Hague and in Moscow. Participants included Max Euwe - the ex-world champion, and other eminent grandmasters: the American Samuel Reshevsky, Mikhail Botvinnik, Vasily Smyslov and Paul Keres, who represented the USSR. Another grandmaster from the USA, Reuben Fine, was expected to take part, but decided not to.

Botvinnik won that competition quite convincingly and he became world champion number six.

The following two combinations are from the classical legacy of the winner in that event.



787

Botvinnik - Keres
The Hague, 1948

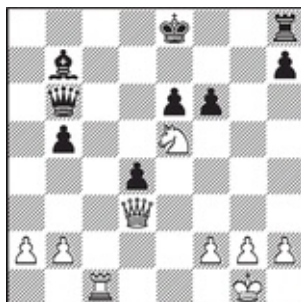
White to move

1 ♖g5 x g7+! ♔g8 x g7
2 ♜g3 - h5+ ♔g7 - g6

“Even after 2... ♖f8, White’s attack is overwhelming, while now everything ends with a checkmate.” (Botvinnik)

3 ♖d4 – e3!

Or 3 ♖d2. Black resigned.



788

Botvinnik - Euwe
The Hague, 1948

White to move

1 ♖d3 – g3!

“There is no defence against the penetration of White’s queen.” (Botvinnik)

1	...	f6 x e5
2	♖g3 – g7	♖h8 – f8
3	♖c1 – c7	

“Black cannot play 3... ♖d6, because of: 4 ♖xb7 d3 5 ♖a7 ♖d8 6 ♖xh7, so he is forced to give up his queen.” (Botvinnik)

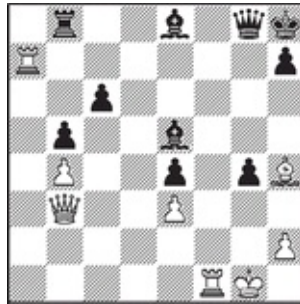
3	...	♖b6 x c7
4	♖g7 x c7	♖b7 – d5
5	♖c7 x e5	d4 – d3
6	♖e5 – e3	♖d5 – c4
7	b2 – b3	♖f8 – f7
8	f2 – f3	♖f7 – d7
9	♖e3 – d2	e6 – e5
10	b3 x c4	b5 x c4
11	♖g1 – f2	♖e8 – f7
12	♖f2 – e3	♖f7 – e6
13	♖d2 – b4	♖d7 – c7
14	♖e3 – d2	♖c7 – c6
15	a2 – a4	

Black resigned.

Beginning in the next decade, matches for the world championship became a regular event. According to FIDE's formula, they were held every three years and they consisted of up to 24 games; if either player acquired 12½ points, the match ended immediately. If the reigning champion lost a match, he had the right to a return match the next year.

In 1951 there was a match for the title between Botvinnik and grandmaster David Bronstein; that match ended in a draw, each player winning 5 games and drawing the rest. By the rules of the competition Botvinnik retained his title.

The following combination was played in the final stages of the match.



789

Bronstein - Botvinnik

Moscow, 1951, 22nd game of the match

White to move

1 ♖h4 - g3! ♗e5 - g7

Black is helpless: 1... ♙xb3 2 ♖f8+ ♙g8 3 ♗xe5#, or 1... ♗xg3 2 ♙c3+ (or 2 ♙b2+) 2... ♗e5 3 ♙xe5+ and mate next move.

2 ♙b3 x g8+

Black resigned. (2... ♙xg8 3 ♗xb8)

The next match for the world title was held three years later, and it also ended in a draw. Smyslov was the new challenger. The match was hotly contested — the players won seven games each.

Here are some combinations from that match.



790

Smyslov - Botvinnik
Moscow, 1954, 9th game of the match

White to move

1 ♖d3 x e4!!

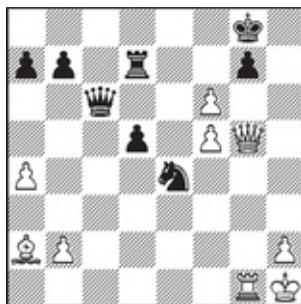
“This beautiful sacrifice ends this short but quite tense encounter. It becomes clear now that Black’s king is in a mating net.” (Smyslov)

1	...	d5 x e4
2	♖b7 - b8+	♙d7 - c8
3	♙f1 - b5+!	♗a5 x b5

“Of course not 3...♘d7 4 ♖xc8+. Still, now White wins easily, exploiting his passed pawn on the h-file.” (Smyslov)

4	♗b8 x b5	♙f8 - e6
5	♙g5 - f6	♗g8 x g2
6	h4 - h5	♙c8 - a6
7	h5 - h6!	

Black resigned.



791

Botvinnik - Smyslov
Moscow, 1954, 12th game of the match

1 f6 - f7+!

White to move

“This was a complete surprise! The pawn can be captured only with the rook, but then Black loses his control over the d8-square and his central pawn on d5 is lost...” (Botvinnik)

1 ... ♖d7 x f7

If 1... ♖xf7, then 2 ♔xg7+ ♕e8 3 ♔h8+ ♕e7 4 ♖g7+ ♕d6 5 ♖g6+.

2 ♖g5 - d8+ ♔g8 - h7

Black loses immediately after 2... ♖f8 3 ♗xd5+.

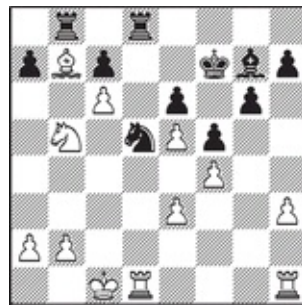
3 ♗a2 x d5

“All three black pieces are hanging (this is a true fork!) and he cannot avoid losing material.”
(Botvinnik)

3	...	♗e4 - f2+
4	♔h1 - g2	♖c6 - f6
5	♖d8 x f6	♗f7 x f6
6	♔g2 x f2	♗f6 x f5+
7	♗d5 - f3	♗f5 - f4
8	♗g1 - g4	

Black resigned.

In 1957 Smyslov’s attempt to claim the world chess throne proved to be successful. He won six games, losing only three, and thirteen games were drawn, so Smyslov became the new world champion.



792

Smyslov - Botvinnik
Moscow, 1957, 6th game of the match

White to move

1 ♖d1 x d5!

“This combination is quite logical. The exchange sacrifice is the fastest road to victory. Black’s position crumbles after the loss of his c7-pawn.” (Smyslov)

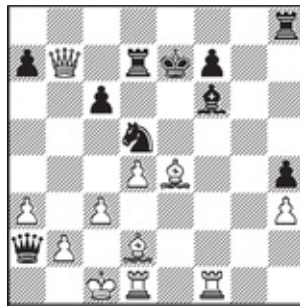
“Or 1...♖xd5 2 ♘xc7 ♖c5+ 3 ♕b1 and White’s threat 4 ♘a6 is decisive.” (Smyslov)

2 ♘b5 x c7	♕d8 - c8
3 ♖b7 x c8	♕b8 x c8
4 ♘c7 x d5	♕c8 x c6+
5 ♖c1 - d2	♕f7 - e6
6 ♘d5 - c3	

Black resigned.

Still, Botvinnik won the return match next year and regained the world title. He won seven games, Smyslov won five, and 11 were draws.

Smyslov finished the next game with a spectacular queen sacrifice.



793

Smyslov - Botvinnik

Moscow, 1958, 19th game of the match

White to move

1 ♕d1 - e1!

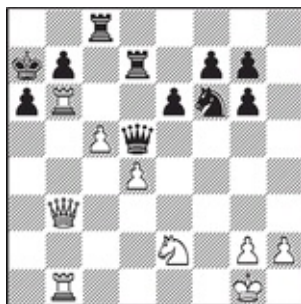
“This is a decisive blow. In case of 1...♖xb7, White follows with 2 ♘xd5+ ♕d8 3 ♘xa2.” (Smyslov)

1	...	♕a2 - a1+
2 ♘e4 - b1+		

Black resigned.

“After 2...♕d6, White wins with: 3 ♖xf6+ ♘xf6 4 ♕f4+ and he checkmates on the next move.” (Smyslov)

In 1960 the world had a new champion - a chess player with a magnificent, brilliant talent for combinations, Mikhail Tal. He lost only two games to Botvinnik, winning six and with thirteen draws.



794

Tal - Botvinnik

Moscow, 1960, 17th game of the match

White to move

1 ♖b6 x a6+! ♔a7 - b8

After 1... ♖xa6, Black gets mated in one move, while after 1...ba, it is mate in three: 2 ♕b6+ ♔a8
3 ♕xa6+ ♖a7 4 ♕xc8#.

2 ♕b3 - a4

White could also have won quickly with either 2 ♕b6 or 2 ♕a3.
Black resigned.

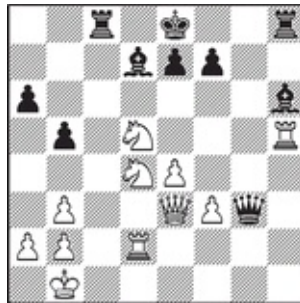
How Would You Play?



795

Keres - Botvinnik
Leningrad, 1941

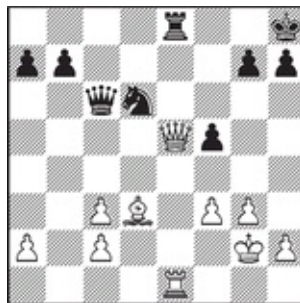
Black to move



796

Boleslavsky - Bondarevsky
Moscow, 1941

Black to move



797

Smyslov - Lilienthal
Leningrad, 1941

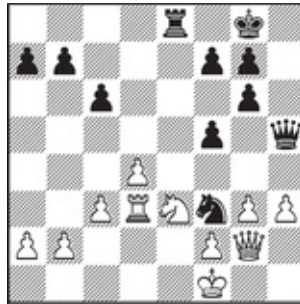
White to move



798

Boleslavsky - Lilienthal
Leningrad, 1941

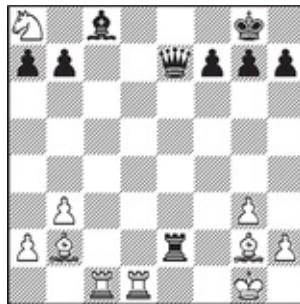
White to move



799

Blümich - Alekhine
Krakow, 1941

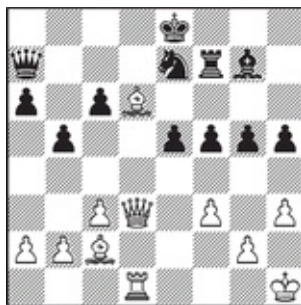
Black to move



800

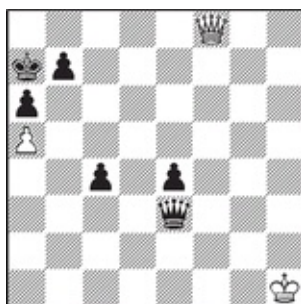
Opočenský - Alekhine
Prague, 1942

Black to move



801

Makogonov - Flohr
Tbilisi, 1942



802

Pilnik - Reshevsky
USA, 1942



803

Alekhine - De Cossio
1944, simultaneous

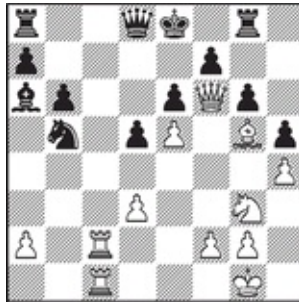
White to move



804

**Rossolimo - NN
Paris, 1944**

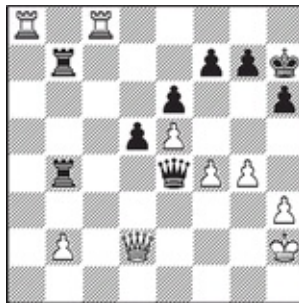
White to move



805

**Bronstein - Goldenov
Kiev, 1944**

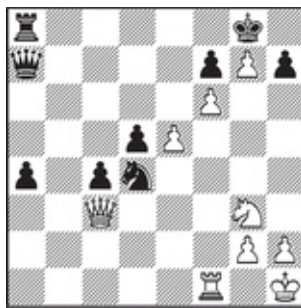
White to move



806

**Bernstein - Kotov
Groningen, 1946**

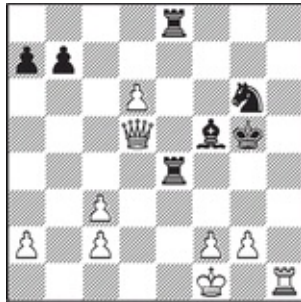
White to move



807

Botvinnik - Alexander
Radio match USSR - Gr. Britain, 1946

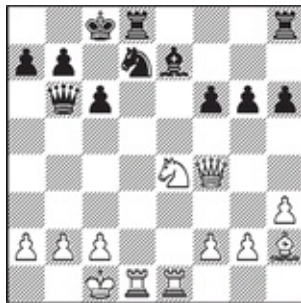
White to move



808

Abrahams - Winter
London, 1946

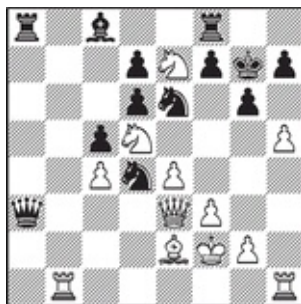
White to move



809

Unzicker - Wust
West Germany, 1946

White to move



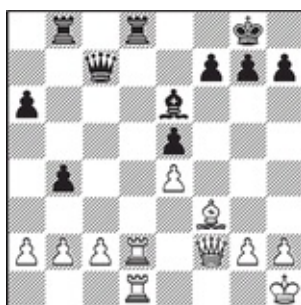
810
Schmidt - NN
Heidelberg, 1946

White to move



811
Rusakov - Verlinsky
Moscow, 1947

Black to move



White to move

812
Rovner - Kamyshev
Moscow, 1947

White to move



819

Bronstein - NN

Sochi, 1950, simultaneous display

White to move

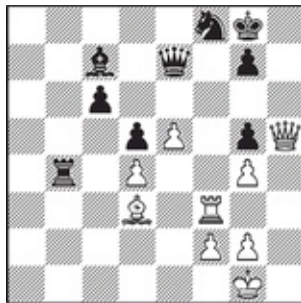


820

Paoli - Smyslov

Venice, 1950

Black to move

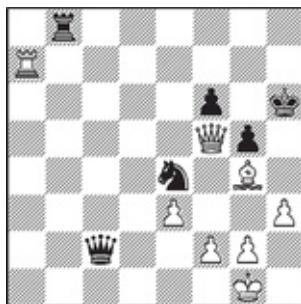


821

Geller - Novotelnov

Moscow, 1951

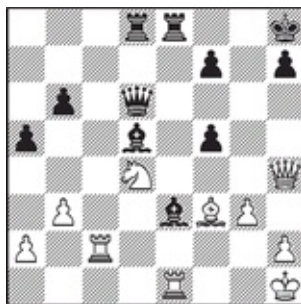
White to move



822

**Ormosh - Betazki
Budapest, 1951**

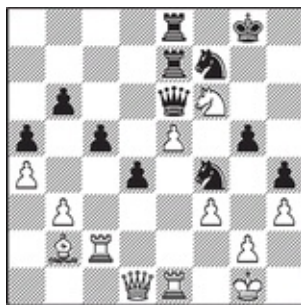
Black to move



823

**Botvinnik - Bronstein
Moscow, 1951
11th game of the match 1**

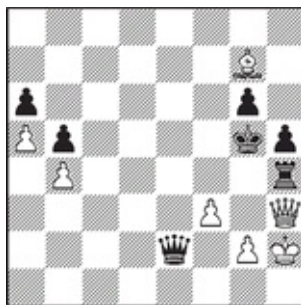
Black to move



824

**Botvinnik - Bronstein
Moscow, 1951
7th game of the match**

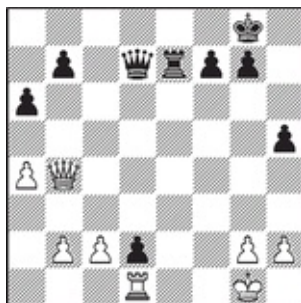
Black to move



825

Jung - Sabadosh
1952

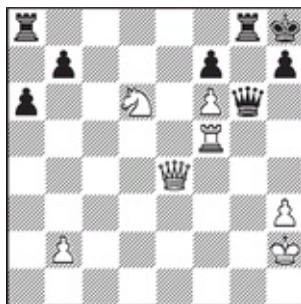
White to move



826

Madsen - Napolitano
Correspondence game, 1953

Black to move



827

Suta - Sutei
Bucharest, 1953

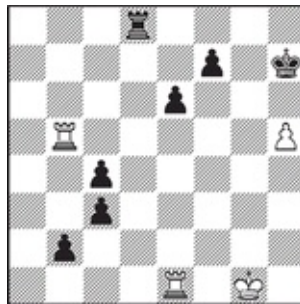
White to move



828

**Taimanov - Petrosian
Zurich, 1953**

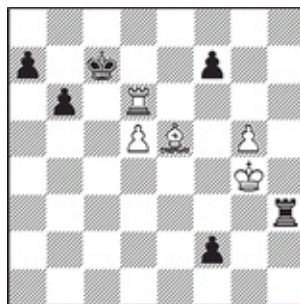
White to move



829

**Geller - Averbach
Kiev, 1954**

Black to move



830

**Koblents - Moiseev
Riga, 1955**

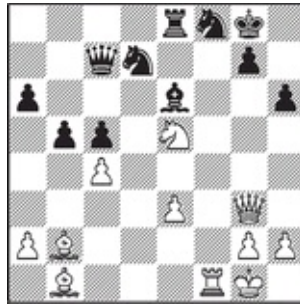
Black to move



831

**Mista - Kloza
Poland, 1955**

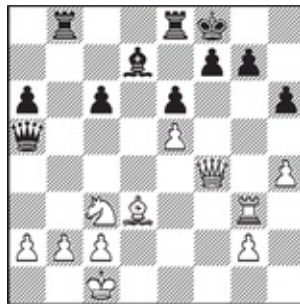
White to move



832

**Keres - Spassky
Gothenburg, 1955**

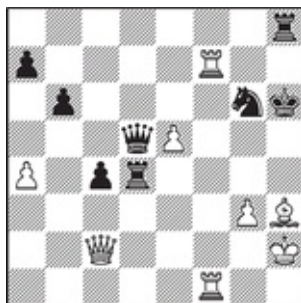
Black to move



833

**Keres - Szabo
Budapest, 1955**

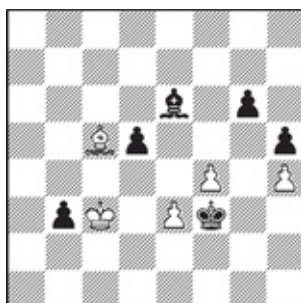
Black to move



834

Nezhmetdinov - Kasparian
Riga, 1955

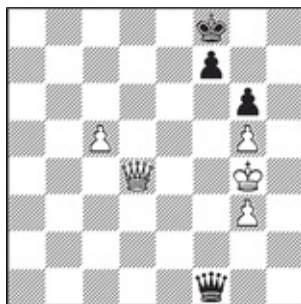
White to move



835

Kotov - Botvinnik
Moscow, 1955

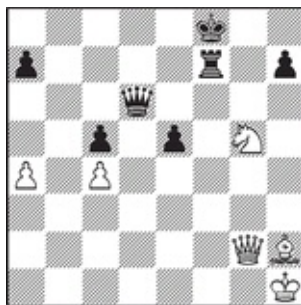
Black to move



836

Borisenko - Simagin
Moscow, 1955

Black to move



837

Petrosian - Simagin
Moscow, 1956

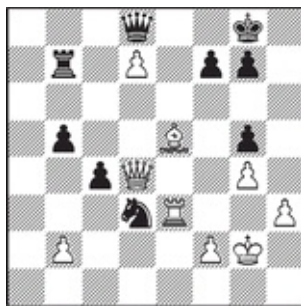
White to move



838

Bolbochan - Pachman
Moscow, 1956

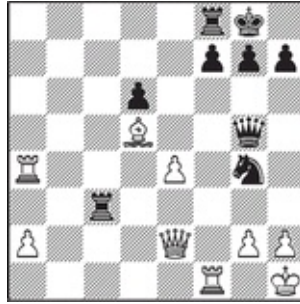
White to move



839

Fischer - Di Camillo
Washington, 1956

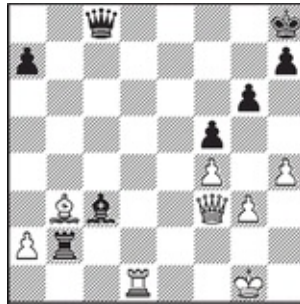
White to move



840

Fischer - Sherwin
New Jersey, 1957

White to move



841

Fischer - Bennett
San-Francisco, 1957

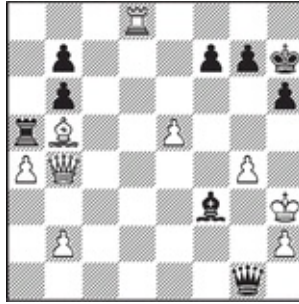
White to move



842

Euwe - Fischer
New York, 1957

White to move



843

Forintos - Tomovic
Match Budapest - Belgrade, 1957

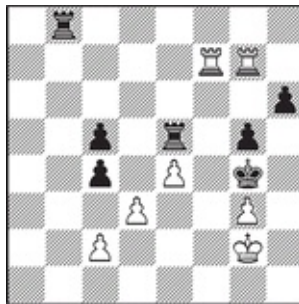
White to move



844

Turoverov - Arzumanian
USSR, 1957

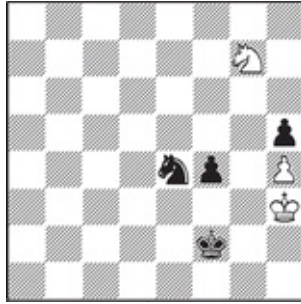
Black to move



845

Durao - Kattozi
Dublin, 1957

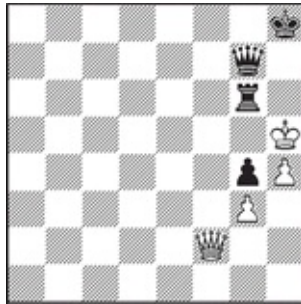
White to move



846

Udovcic - Nedeljkovic
Yugoslavia, 1957

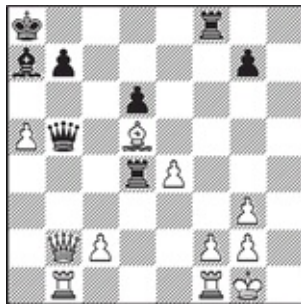
Black to move



847

Kennenberger - NN
Simultaneous display, DDR 1957

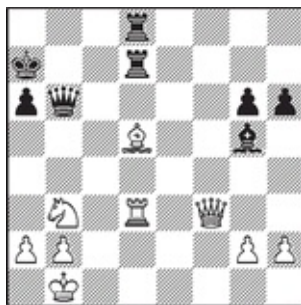
White to move



848

NN - Rossolimo
1957

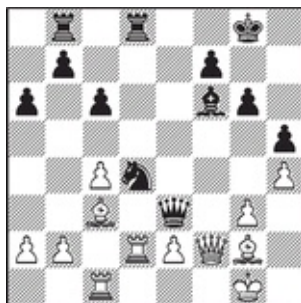
Black to move



849

Smyslov - Botvinnik
Moscow, 1957, 4th game of the match

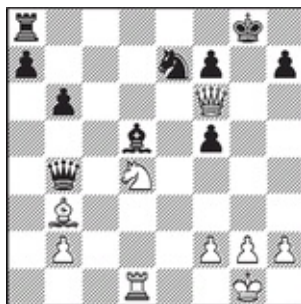
Black to move



850

Bannik - Tal
Moscow, 1957

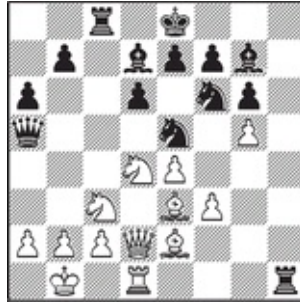
Black to move



851

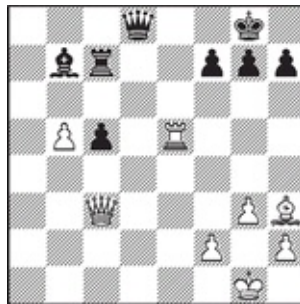
Tal - Tolush
Riga, 1958

White to move



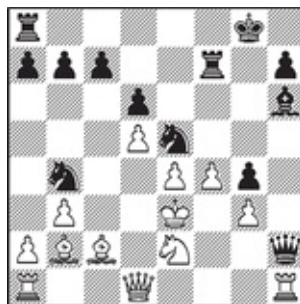
852
Tal - NN
Stuttgart, 1958

White to move



853
Ivkov - Eliskases
Monte Carlo, 1958

White to move



854
Polugaevsky - Nezhmetdinov
Sochi, 1958

Black to move



855

Mazukevich - Bodisko
Moscow, 1958

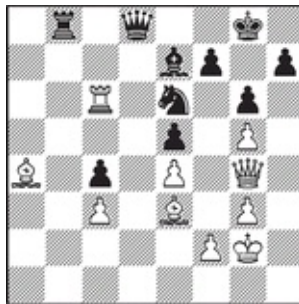
White to move



856

Fischer - Reshevsky
New York, 1958

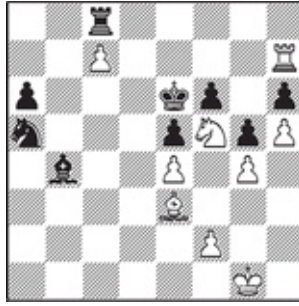
White to move



857

Fischer - Shocron
Mar del Plata, 1959

White to move



858

**Fischer - Sanchez
Santiago, 1959**

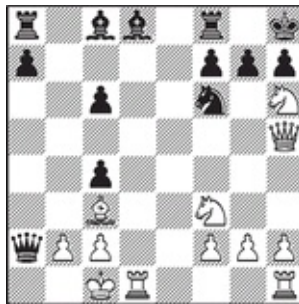
White to move



859

**Fischer - Tal
Yugoslavia, 1959**

Black to move



860

**Tal - Smyslov
Yugoslavia, 1959**

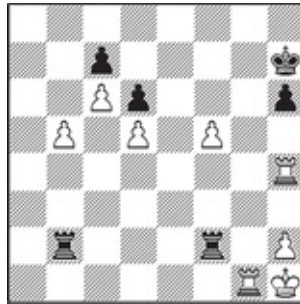
White to move



861

Krogius - Sergievsky
Voronezh, 1959

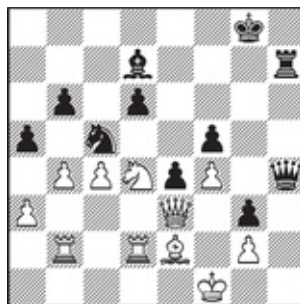
White to move



862

Petrosian - Gligorić
Belgrade, 1959

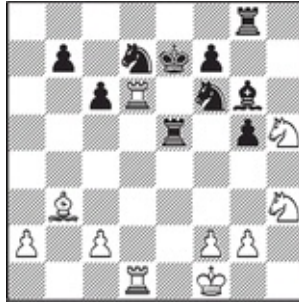
White to move



863

Keres - Petrosian
Bled, 1959

Black to move

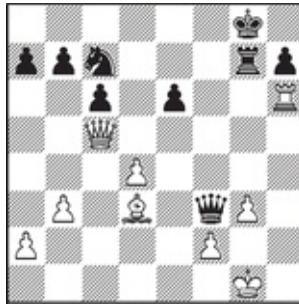


864

Tal - Botvinnik

Moscow, 1960, 7th game of the match

White to move

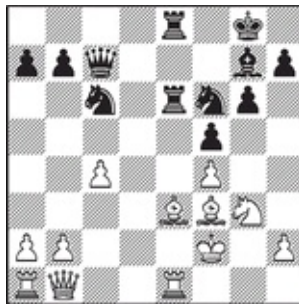


865

Tal - Botvinnik

Moscow, 1960, 11th game of the match

White to move



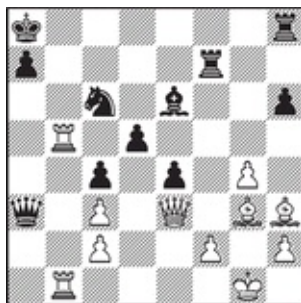
866

Letelier - Fischer

Leipzig, 1960

Black to move

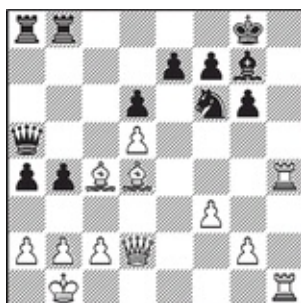
Black to move



867

Fischer - Weinstein
New York, 1960

White to move



868

Simagin - Abramson
USSR, 1960

White to move

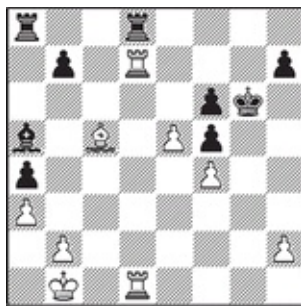


869

Spassky - Bronstein

Leningrad, 1960

White to move



870

Polugaevsky - Szilagyi
Moscow, 1960

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 795. 1...b5! 2 ♖xb5 ♘d4! 3 ♖d3 (3 ♖xd4 ♖c1#) 3...♘c2+ 4 ♖b1 ♘b4. White resigned.

Diagram 796. 1...♖g8! 2 ♖d3 (or 2 ♖xh6 ♖g1+ with mate) 2...♖g1+. (or 2...♖e1+) White resigned, due to 3 ♖d1 ♖c1+! 4 ♖xc1 ♖xc1#.

Diagram 797. 1 ♖xd6! and Black resigned; if 1...♖xe1 2 ♖f8#; 1...♖xd6 2 ♖xe8+.

Diagram 798. 1 ♖xc7! Black resigned, in view of 1...♖xc7 2 ♖xe6+ ♖e7 3 ♖b5#, or 2...♖(♘)e7 3 ♖f7#.

Diagram 799. 1...f4! 2 gf (or 2 ♘c2 ♘h4! 3 gh ♖e2+, or 3 g4? ♖b5) 2...♖b5! 3 c4 (If 3 ♖e2 ♖xd3+!, or 3...♘e1!) 3...♖xc4! 4 ♖xf3 (or 4 ♘xc4 ♖e1#) 4...♖xd3+ 5 ♖g2 ♖xd4 6 f5 gf. White resigned.

Diagram 800. 1...♖h3! 2 ♖d8+ (or 2 ♖xh3? ♖e3+ 3 ♖h1 ♖f3+ 4 ♖g1 ♖f2+ 5 ♖h1 ♖xh2#; 2 ♖xb7 ♖xb2 3 ♖e1 ♖e2) 2...♖xd8 3 ♖xh3 ♖xa8. White resigned. (if 4 ♖c8+ ♖xc8 5 ♖xc8 ♖xb2)

Diagram 801. 1 ♖b8! Black resigned, because of 1...♖xb8 2 ♖d7+ ♖f8 3 ♖d8+ ♖xd8 4 ♖xd8#.

Diagram 802. 1 ♖f2! Draw (or 1...♖xf2 with a stalemate)

Diagram 803. 1 ♘f6+! gf 2 ♖xf6 Black resigned.

Diagram 804. 1 ♖xf5! ef (After this move White mates in six in fantastic fashion.) 2 ♖xh6+!! ♖xh6 (or 2... gh 3 ♘f6+ ♖h8 4 ♖g8#) 3 ♖h1+ ♖g6 4 ♖f4!! ♖e6 5 ♖h8! Black resigned. (if 5... ♖xe5+ 6 de and 7 ♖h5#)

Diagram 805. 1 ♖c8! Black resigned. (1...♖xc8 2 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 3 ♖xd8#; 2...♖d7 3 ♖xd8+)

Diagram 806. 1 ♖h8+ and White mates in three: 1...♖g6 2 f5+! ef 3 ♖xh6+! gh 4 ♖ag8#.

Diagram 807. 1 ♖xd4! ♖xd4 2 ♘f5 h5 3 ♘xd4 ♖e8 4 ♘f5 d4 5 e6! Black resigned.

Diagram 808. 1 ♖h5+! ♖xh5 2 ♖xf5+ ♖h6 3 ♖xe4! ♖xe4 4 d7 and White wins.

Diagram 809. 1 ♖xd7! Black resigned. (1...♖xd7 2 ♖b8#; 1...♖xd7 2 ♘xf6+! ♖xf6 3 ♖g4#;

1...g5 2 ♖c7+, or 2 ♖g3)

Diagram 810. 1 ♖h6+! ♔xh6 2 hg+ ♖g5! 3 ♖h5+! ♔xh5 4 f4+ ♘xe2 (or 4... ♖f3+ 5 ♙xf3+ ♘xf3 6 ♖h1+ ♘h4 7 ♘f6+ and White wins as in the game.) 5 ♘f6+ ♖h6 6 ♖h1+ ♖g7 7 ♘e8+! ♖xe8 8 ♖xh7+ ♖f6 9 ♖xf7#.

Diagram 811. 1...cb 2 ♖e2+ ♖e7!! 3 fe ♙g7! with a win for Black (or 4 ♖xb2 ♙xb2 5 ♘a3! ♙xa3; in case of 5... ♙c3+ 6 ♖d1 ♙xa1 7 ♘b5, White regains the exchange, but Black still preserves his material advantage.)

Diagram 812. 1 ♖a7! ♖a5 (or 1... ♖xa7 2 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 3 ♖xd8#; 1... ♖xd2 2 ♖xc7) 2 ♖xa6! ♖c7 3 ♖a7! Black resigned.

Diagram 813. 1 ♙g5!! h1 ♖ (Or 1...fg 2 f6, with mate; 1... ♖xg5 2 ♖d8+ ♖g7 3 ♖c7+ and 4 ♖xh2 with a winning endgame for White.) 2 ♖e8+ (White wins faster with 2 ♖e6+ ♖g7 3 ♖xf6+ ♖g8 4 ♖e6+ ♖h8 5 ♖e8+ ♖g7 6 f6+ ♖h7 7 ♖f7+ ♖h8 8 ♖g7#.) 2... ♖g7 3 ♖g6+ ♖f8 4 ♖xf6+ ♖g8 5 ♖d8+ ♖g7 6 ♖e7+ ♖g8 7 ♖e8+. Black resigned. (7... ♖g7 8 f6+ ♖h7 9 ♖f7+ ♖h8 10 ♖g7#)

Diagram 814. 1 ♙e6! Black resigned. (1... ♖xd3 2 ♖e8#; 1... ♙xe6 2 ♖c8+ ♙d8 3 ♖xd8+! ♖xd8 4 ♖xd8#)

Diagram 815. 1... ♖g4+! with a draw. (2 fg is stalemate; 2 ♖f1 ♖xa4)

Diagram 816. 1 ♘g6+! ♖e8 (or 1...fg 2 ♖xe6+ ♖f8 3 ♖e7#) 2 ♖xe6+ and mate is unavoidable: 2... ♙xe6 3 ♖e7#; 2...fe 3 ♖xe6+! and 4 ♖e7#.

Diagram 817. 1 ♖xe7! (It is worse for White to play 1 ♖xg7+ ♖xg7 2 ♖xd8 ♖f8, but it is worth trying 1 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 2 ♖xg7+! ♖h8! 3 ♙e2 ♖e5 4 ♖xh7+! ♖g8 5 f4 ♖a1+ 6 ♖f2 ♘f5 7 e7 ♖b8 8 ♖h3.) 1... ♖xe7 2 ♖xd8+ ♖e8 3 e7+ ♖h8 4 ♙e6! ♖xb5 5 ♙f7 ♖b1+ 6 ♖e2 ♖b5+ 7 ♖f3 ♖f5+ 8 ♖g2. Black resigned. (8... ♖e4+ 9 f3)

Diagram 818. 1... ♘xe1! White resigned. (2 ♖xf7 ♘f3#; 2 ♙xe1 ♖xe1+ 3 ♖h2 gf)

Diagram 819. 1 ♖d8+! Black resigned. (1... ♖xd8 2 ♖xe4)

Diagram 820. 1... ♖xc2! 2 ♖xc2 (or 2 ♙e2 ♘c7!; 2 ♖f5 ♘f4! 3 ♖xg5 ♘xh3+ 4 ♖h2 ♘xg5! 5 ♖xe5! ♘f3+, and Black wins in both cases.) 2... ♘f3+ 3 ♖f2 (or 3 ♖h1 ♖g3) 3... ♖g3+. White resigned. (4 ♖e2 ♘fd4+)

Diagram 821. 1 ♖xf8+! ♖xf8 (or 1... ♖xf8 2 ♙h7+ ♖h8 3 ♙g6+ ♖g8 4 ♖h7#) 2 ♖h8+ ♖f7 3 ♙g6+! ♖xg6 (or 3... ♖e6 4 ♖c8+ ♖d7 5 ♙f5+ with mate to follow) 4 ♖h5#.

Diagram 822. 1...♖b1+ 2 ♕h2 ♖h1+! 3 ♕xh1 ♘g3+! 4 fg ♕xg2+! 5 ♕xg2. Stalemate.

Diagram 823. 1...♖e4! (“Here, Bronstein could have won the game with 1...♙g5 2 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 3 ♕xg5 ♙xf3+ 4 ♘xf3 ♕d1+ and 5...♕xc2+, but he found a more elegant way.” - Boris Veinstein. It was also good for Black to play 1...f4 2 ♖e2 ♖e6 3 ♖xe3 ♖xe3 4 ♖xe3 fe.) 2 ♙xe4 ♙xe4+ 3 ♕xe4 fe 4 ♘f5 ♕b4 and Black won.

Diagram 824. 1...♕xf6. White resigned. (2 ef ♖xe1+ 3 ♕xe1 ♖xe1+)

Diagram 825. 1 ♕xh4+!! ♕xh4 2 ♙f6+ g5 3 ♙c3!! Black resigned due to: 3...g4 4 ♙f6#; 3...f1 4 g3#; 3...♕f2 4 ♙e5! and Black ends up in zugzwang.

Diagram 826. 1...♖e1+! 2 ♖xe1 ♕d4+! 3 ♕xd4 (or 3 ♕f1 ♕xb4) 3... de ♕#.

Diagram 827. 1 ♖g5!! ♕xf6 (If 1...♕xg5, or 1...♕xe4, then 2 ♘xf7#. Black loses even after the best defense, 1...♖af8, by 2 ♖xg6 ♖xg6 3 ♕xb7; now he cannot play 3...♖xf6, due to 4 ♕e7) 2 ♕d4!! ♖g6 3 ♖xg6! ♕xd4 4 ♘xf7#.

Diagram 828. 1 ♖xg6+! hg (or 1...♙xg6 2 ♕xe6+ ♙f7 3 ♕f6) 2 h7+ (White also mates after 2 ♕f2 ♕h7 3 ♕xf7+.) 2...♕xh7 3 ♕xf7+ ♘g7 (After 3...♕h6 4 ♙g5+!, Black loses his queen, because following 4...♕h5 5 ♕f2 ♕xf7 6 ♖h1+ ♕g4, he would get mated with 7 ♖h4#.) 4 ♕f2! Black resigned. (4...♕h8 5 ♖h1+ ♘h5 6 ♙f6#)

Diagram 829. 1...♖d1!! White resigned. (if 2 ♖xd1 c2 3 ♖f1 c1 ♕)

Diagram 830. 1...f5+! (or 1... f1 ♕?? 2 ♖f6+) White resigned. Black promotes his pawn after any move by White; for example, 2 ♕xh3 f1 ♕+ 3 ♕h4 ♕h1+ 4 ♕g3 ♕e1+ 5 ♕f4? ♕f2#.

Diagram 831. 1 ♕h7+! ♕xh7 2 ♖xg7+ ♕h8 (or 2...♕h6 3 ♖1g6#) 3 ♖g8++ ♕h7 4 ♖1g7+ ♕h6 5 ♖g6+ ♕h7 6 ♖8g7+ ♕h8 7 ♖h6#.

Diagram 832. 1 ♕xg7+! Black resigned. (Next was 1...♕xg7 2 ♘xd7+ ♕g8 3 ♘f6+ ♕f7 4 ♘d5+.)

Diagram 833. 1 ♖xg7! ♕xg7 (or 1...♖e7 2 ♕xh6) 2 ♕f6+ ♕f8 (or 2...♕g8 3 ♕xh6 f5 4 ef) 3 ♙g6. Black resigned, because of 3...♖e7, 4 ♕h8#; 3...♕g8 4 ♕xf7+ ♕h8 5 ♕h7#.)

Diagram 834. 1 ♕xg6+! Black resigned; the alternative was 1...♕xg6 2 ♖1f6+ ♕g5 3 ♖f5+ ♕h6 4 ♖7f6+ ♕h7 5 ♖h5+ ♕g7 6 ♖g5+ ♕h7 7 ♙f5#, or 4...♕g7 5 ♖g5+, etc.

Diagram 835. 1...g5! 2 fg. “Capturing with the h-pawn loses in a prosaic way: 2 hg h4 3 f5 (or 3 ♙

d6 ♖f5 4 g6 ♖xg6 5 f5 ♖xf5 6 ♖xb3 ♖g2) 3... ♖xf5 4 ♖xb3 h3 5 ♖d6 ♖xe3.” (Botvinnik)
2...d4+! 3 ed (“It would be senseless for White to capture with his king, because Black’s b-pawn promotes, while after 3 ♖xd4 ♖g3 4 g6 ♖xh4 5 ♖d2, Black wins with the line 5... ♖h3! 6 ♖e2 ♖g2 7 ♖f6 h4 etc.” — Botvinnik) **3...♖g3** (“Black could have still overlooked the following drawish variation: 3... ♖g4? 4 d5 ♖xd5 5 ♖f2” — Botvinnik) **4 ♖a3 ♖xh4 5 ♖d3 ♖xg5 6 ♖e4 h4 7 ♖f3** (or 7 d5 ♖xd5+!) **7...♖d5+**. White resigned.

Diagram 836. 1...f5+! 2 gf (or 2 ♖h4 ♖h1#) **2...♖f5+ 3 ♖h4 ♖h5#.**

Diagram 837. 1 ♖a8+ (or 1 ♖xf7?? ♖d1+ with perpetual check) **1...♖g7** (or 1... ♖e7 2 ♖xa7+) **2 ♖xe5+** (or 2 ♖h8+ ♖g6!) **2...♖xe5 3 ♖h8+! ♖xh8 4 ♖xf7+**. Black resigned.

Diagram 838. 1 ♖xf7+! ♖xf7 (or 1... ♖h8 2 ♖g7#) **2 ♖xe6#.**

Diagram 839. 1 ♖c7! ♖f4+ (or 1... ♖xc7 2 d8 ♖+; 1... ♖xc7 2 ♖e8+) **2 ♖f1.** Black resigned.

Diagram 840. 1 ♖xf7! ♖c1+ (or 1... ♖xf7 2 ♖a8+ and mates; 1...h5! 2 ♖f1! ♖xf7 3 ♖xf7+ ♖h7 4 ♖g8+ ♖h6 5 ♖h8+ ♖g6 6 ♖f7+! ♖xf7 7 ♖a7+ ♖f6 8 ♖d8+ ♖g6 9 ♖xg7+! ♖xg7 10 ♖xg5+ and White wins.) **2 ♖f1! h5** (or 2... ♖xf1+ 3 ♖xf1+ ♖xd5 4 ♖xf8+ with a win for White) **3 ♖xc1 ♖h4 4 ♖xf8+ ♖h7 5 h3 ♖g3 6 hg h4 7 ♖e6.** Black resigned.

Diagram 841. 1 ♖d8+! ♖xd8 (or 1... ♖g7 2 ♖xc8) **2 ♖xc3+ ♖f6 3 ♖xf6#.**

Diagram 842. 1 ♖cxd5! (This is more precise than 1 ♖fxd5 g6 2 ♖xb6 ab 3 ♖xe6, which is also sufficient for White to win.) **1...♖xd5** (or 1... ♖xd5 2 ♖h8#; 1...g6 2 ♖xb6 ab 3 ♖xe6+ fe 4 ♖xe6, winning for White) **2 ♖xd5.** Black resigned. (2... ♖xd5 3 ♖h8#)

Diagram 843. 1 ♖d3+ (or 1 ♖h8+! ♖g6 2 ♖d3+ f5 3 gf+, and White mates next move, while 1... ♖xh8 2 ♖f8+ ♖h7 3 ♖d3+ transposes into the game.) **1... g6 2 ♖h8+! ♖xh8** (or 2... ♖g7 3 ♖f8#) **3 ♖f8+ ♖h7 4 ♖xf7+ ♖h8 5 ♖f8+ ♖h7 6 ♖xg6+!** and Black resigned. (6... ♖xg6 7 ♖g8#)

Diagram 844. 1...♖xf1!! 2 d7 (or 2 ♖xf1 ♖g3+ and 3...cd) **2...♖c5!** White resigned. (3 d8 ♖d3+! 4 ♖xf1 ♖g3#; 3 ♖xf1 ♖xd7)

Diagram 845. 1 ♖f4+ ♖h5 2 ♖h4+! gh 3 g4#.

Diagram 846. 1...♖g1! White resigned. (2 ♖xh5 ♖f2#!)

Diagram 847. 1 ♖f6!! and no matter how Black captures the queen it is a stalemate, while in case of 1... ♖h7, White follows with 2 ♖xg7+ and again a stalemate. Draw.

Diagram 848. 1...♖d1!! 2 ♖xb7+ (If 2 ♖xb5, or 2 ♖fxd1, then 2... ♖xf2+ and 3... ♖h8#) **2...♖b8**

3 c4! ♖xf2+? (It was better for Black to play 3...♖xf2! 4 ♖xf2 ♖xb1!, winning.) 4 ♖h2?? (White should have defended with 4 ♖xf2 ♖xf2 5 ♖fxd1 ♖c5 6 ♖d5+.) 4...♖h8#.

Diagram 849. 1...♖xd5! 2 ♖xd5 ♖g1+ 3 ♖c2 ♖c8+ 4 ♖d3 ♖b1+ 5 ♖d4 ♖xb2+ 6 ♖e4 ♖e8+ (Or 6...♖c2+ 7 ♖d3! ♖e8+ 8 ♖f3 ♖f8+ 9 ♖e4 ♖f4+ 10 ♖e5 ♖f5+ 11 ♖d6 ♖f6+ 12 ♖e5 ♖c7+ 13 ♖d4 ♖f4+ 14 ♖e3 ♖e4++! 15 ♖f2 ♖f7+ 16 ♖f3 ♖xd5, with an extra rook for Black.) 7 ♖d3 and White resigned, in view of 7...♖e3+.

Diagram 850. 1...♖xe2+! 2 ♖xe2 ♖xc1+ 3 ♖e1! ♖xc3! 4 ♖xc1 ♖d4 and Black won.

Diagram 851. 1 ♖c6! (White can also play simply 1 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 2 ♖xd5 ♖f8 3 ♖xf5) 1...♖xb3 (or 1...♖xc6 2 ♖xf7+ ♖h8 3 ♖f6#; 1...♖xc6 2 ♖xd5 ♖f8 3 ♖xc6) 2 ♖xe7+ ♖f8 3 ♖e1 ♖e6 4 ♖xf5. Black resigned.

Diagram 852. 1 gf!! ♖xd1+? (or 1...♖h7 2 fg) 2 ♖xd1!! ♖xd2 3 fg!! ♖e6 4 g8 ♖+ ♖d7 5 ♖xc8+! ♖xc8 6 ♖xd2. Black resigned.

Diagram 853. 1 ♖d2! ♖a8 (or 1...♖b8 2 ♖e3 ♖f8 3 b6 ♖c6 4 ♖d7; 1...♖f8 2 ♖e3; 1...♖xd2 2 ♖e8#) 2 ♖a5! ♖b8 3 ♖xc7! elicited Black's resignation.

Diagram 854. 1...♖xf4!! 2 ♖xh2 (or 2 ♖xf4 ♖xc2+; 2 gf ♖xf4+ 3 ♖xf4 ♖xc2+; 2 ♖d4 ♖f2+ 3 ♖c3 ♖f3+; 2 ♖xe5 ♖f3++) 2...♖f3++ 3 ♖d4 ♖g7! It is also interesting for Black to try 3...c5+ 4 dc b5! 5 ♖d3 ♖exc6+ 6 ♖c3 ♖g7+ 7 ♖d2 ♖xd3+ 8 ♖e1 ♖xd1+ 9 ♖xd1 ♖xb2, with material advantage for Black. 4 a4? It was more tenacious for White to defend with 4 ♖g1, and against that, Rashid Nezhmetdinov suggested the line 4...♖xg3! 5 ♖e2 ♖f3 6 ♖g1 ♖ed3+ 7 ♖c4 ♖xb2+ 8 ♖xb4 ♖c3+ 9 ♖a3 b5! 10 ♖d4 ♖xd4 11 ♖xf3 ♖c3 12 b4 ♖c4+ 13 ♖b3 ♖xa1 14 ♖g5 g3, and Black's position would be winning. The game concluded with 4... c5+ 5 dc bc 6 ♖d3 ♖exd3+ 7 ♖c4 d5+! 8 ed cd+ 9 ♖b5 ♖b8+ 10 ♖a5 ♖c6+ and White resigned.

Diagram 855. 1 ♖xe6+! ♖xe6 2 ♖c4+ ♖f5 3 ♖h4+ ♖e4. (or 3...♖g4 4 h3+! ♖xh4 5 ♖e2 and 6 g3#) 4 ♖e2 (or 4 ♖c1, or 4 ♖d2) Black resigned, because of 5 f3#.

Diagram 856. 1 ♖xf7+! (This move was first discovered by Georgy Bastrikov; after this 2 ♖e6! would be unavoidable.) 1...♖xf7 2 ♖e6!! de (or 2...♖xe6? 3 ♖d5+ ♖f5 4 g4+! ♖xg4 5 ♖g1+ ♖h5 6 ♖d1+ ♖f3 7 ♖xf3+ ♖h4 8 ♖g4#) 3 ♖xd8 ♖c6 4 ♖d2 and White won.

Diagram 857. 1 ♖xe6! ♖c8! ("Blow for blow! Apparently Shocron was well prepared for this trick, having seen that 39...fe? 40 ♖xe6+ ♖f8 41 ♖xe5 is crushing." — Fischer) 2 ♖d7! Black resigned. (2...♖xd7 3 ♖xg6+!)

Diagram 858. 1 ♖d2! and Black resigned. (1...♖xd2 2 ♖e7#; 1...♖a3 2 ♖xa5)

Diagram 859. 1...♔xg2! 2 ♖xa6 (if 2 ♖xg2 ♖g8) 2...♔a7+! 3 ♖xg2 (or 3 c5 ♖b7; 3 ♖f2 ♖xa6) 3...♖g8+ 4 ♖h3 ♖g7 (or 4...♖e6) 5 ♔d1 ♖e6. White resigned.

Diagram 860. 1 ♖xf7! ♔a1+ (or 1...♖e8 2 ♖g8+! and 3 ♖f7#; 1...♖xf7 2 ♖xd8+ and mate coming) 2 ♔d2 ♖xf7 3 ♖xf7+ ♔g8 4 ♖xa1 ♖xf7 5 ♖e5+ and Black soon resigned.

Diagram 861. 1 ♖g6! Black resigned. If 1...♖xf5 2 ♖xe7+; 1...♖d7 2 ♖e7+!; 1...♖d7 2 ♖xe7+.

Diagram 862. 1 b6! ♖xb6 (“In case of 1...cb, White wins with 2 ♖c1 ♖bc2 3 ♖xc2 ♖xc2 4 ♖g4!, and one of White’s pawns promotes.” - Petrosian) 2 ♖g4 ♖b8 3 ♖g7+ ♖h8 4 ♖7g6. Black resigned. “After 4...♖h7, White settles the issue with 5 f6 ♖f8 6 ♖g7+ ♖h8 7 ♖xc7.” (Petrosian)

Diagram 863. 1...♖xf4+! forced White to give up; 2 ♖xf4 ♖h1#.

Diagram 864. 1 ♖xd7+! ♖xd7 2 ♖xd7+! ♖xd7 3 ♖f6+ ♔d6 4 ♖xg8 and White made good his material advantage.

Diagram 865. 1 ♔xh7+! ♖xh7 2 ♖g5+ ♔h8 (or 2...♖g7 3 ♖d8+ ♖f8 4 ♖h8+) 3 ♖d8+ (or 3 ♖e5+ ♖g8 4 ♖xh7) 3...♖g7 4 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 5 ♖xc7+ ♖g6 6 ♖xb7 and White won.

Diagram 866. 1...♖xe3! 2 ♖xe3 ♖xe3 3 ♖xe3 ♖xf4+! White resigned, seeing 4 ♖xf4 ♔h6#; 4 ♖f2 ♖g4+ 5 ♖g2 ♖e3+ 6 ♖f2 ♖d4 7 ♖h1 ♖g4+.

Diagram 867. 1 ♖xh6! Black resigned. If 1...♖b8+! ♖xb8 3 ♖xb8#; or 1...♖e8 2 ♖xe6!; or 1...♖ff8 2 ♖xe6.

Diagram 868. 1 ♖h6!! ♔xh6! 2 ♖xh6 g5? (“Black cannot play 2...♖f8 because of 3 ♖h8+ ♖g8 4 ♖xg8+! and 5 ♖h8#. His best defense would be 2... e5 3 de ♖e5, but Black remains two pawns down in an endgame.” - Vladimir Simagin) 3 ♖h8+ ♖g7 4 ♖1h7+ ♖g6 5 ♔d3+ ♖e4 6 ♔xe4+. Black resigned; if 6...f5 7 ♖g7#.

Diagram 869. 1 ♖xf7! ef ♖+ 2 ♖xf1 ♔f5. (“This was relatively best for Black. He loses immediately after 2...♖xf7 because of 3 ♖e5+ ♖g8 4 ♖h7+! ♖xh7 5 ♔b3+ etc. Nor would he have saved the game with 2...♖d5, because of 3 ♔b3 ♖xf7 4 ♔xf7+ ♖xf7 5 ♖c4+ ♖g6 6 ♖g8! leaves Black helpless against the threats 7 ♖e5+, or 7 ♖h4+. For example, 6...♔f6 7 ♖h4+ ♔xh4; if 7...♖g5, then 8 ♖d5+ ♖xh4 9 ♖f4+ ♔g4 10 g3+ ♖h3 11 ♖g2#, or - 8 ♖f7+ ♖h7 9 ♖xe8, and Black’s pieces are so tied up that he is bound to lose.” — Spassky. After 2...♖f7, White wins quickly by 3 ♖g5+ ♖g8 4 ♔b3+ ♖h8 5 ♖xf8+! and 6 ♖h7#, or with 3 ♔b3+ ♔e6 4 ♖g5+; if 2...♖d7, then 3 ♖3e5 ♖e6 4 ♔b3) 3 ♖xf5 ♖d7 4 ♖f4 ♔f6 5 ♖3e5 ♖e7 (or 5...♔xe5 6 ♖xe5) 6 ♔b3 ♔xe5 (“If 6...♖e6, then 7 ♖g4.” — Spassky) 7 ♖xe5+ ♖h7 (or 7...♖h8 8 ♖e4) 8 ♖e4+. Black resigned. “After any Black move White follows with 9 ♖xf8, etc.” (Spassky)

Diagram 870. 1 ♖g1+ ♖h6 2 ♔f8+! ♖xf8 (or 2...♖h5 3 ♖xh7#) 3 ♖d3 and White mates; if 3...♔e1 4 ♖h3+ ♔h4 5 ♖xh4#.

XIII

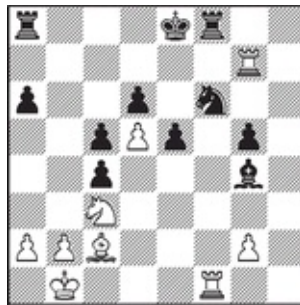
Petrosian, Spassky, Fischer (1961 - 1980)

On the chessboard, lies and hypocrisy do not survive long. The creative combination lays bare the presumption of a lie; the merciless fact, culminating in the checkmate, contradicts the hypocrite.

Emanuel Lasker

Botvinnik won the return match once again in 1961 and he regained the title of world champion. The fight was intense this time and Botvinnik won 10 games, Tal won five, and six were draws.

Botvinnik played a little combination in game 21 and it brought him victory in the game as well as the match.



871

Botvinnik - Tal

Moscow, 1961, 21st game of the match

White to play

1 ♖c3 - e4! ♔f6 - d7

Black loses immediately after 1... ♞xe4 2 ♜a4+! ♜d7 3 ♜xd7+.

2 ♜e4 x d6+ ♔e8 - d8
3 ♜f1 x f8+ ♜d7 x f8
4 ♜d6 x c4 ♜g4 - d7
5 ♜g7 - f7 ♔d8 - c7

6 d5 - d6+

Petrosian - Spassky
Moscow, 1966
10th game of the match

White to play

1 ♖e6 x f7+! ♜a7 x f7
2 ♜b2 - h8+!

You may remember from the previous chapter that Petrosian won in approximately the same fashion once against grandmaster Vladimir Simagin. This is yet another demonstration of how important it is to learn the key tactical ideas - you might be able to use them over and over again!

Black resigned, because next is 2... ♔xh8 3 ♞xf7+ and 4 ♞xg5.

The following amazing combination was found by the ex-world champion Botvinnik in his game against the eminent Hungarian grandmaster Lajos Portisch.



874
Botvinnik - Portisch
Monte Carlo, 1968

White to play

1 ♜c1 x c6!

“No doubt Black had seen this possibility, but he had probably considered (quite mistakenly, though) that White’s rook on c7 would remain trapped and that he would need to give it up as well. On the other hand, after the disappearance of the bishop on c6, the b7-square became unprotected. That was not the most important point, though. The rook sacrifice had annihilated Black’s bishop and now the entire light-squared complex had become quite vulnerable.” (Botvinnik)

1 ... ♗b7 x c6

“Black thus preserves his b7-pawn, but that is immaterial, because White is already eyeing the other

side of the board.” (Botvinnik)

2 ♖c7 x f7!!

“It is rarely seen that one can sacrifice both rooks right in the opening stage of the game. Well, here Black cannot even accept the second sacrifice, because after: 2... ♖xf7 3 ♔c4+ ♖g6 4 ♔g4+ ♖f7 5 ♘g5+, he will need to part with his queen; otherwise he will get checkmated.” (Botvinnik)

2 ... h7 - h6

“Black has defended his g5-square, but he has compromised his light squares even more.” (Botvinnik)

3 ♖f7 - b7 ♔d8 - c8
4 ♖a4 - c4+ ♕g8 - h8

“After 4... ♖e6 5 ♘xe5, Black would not have survived for long.” (Botvinnik)

5 ♗f3 - h4!

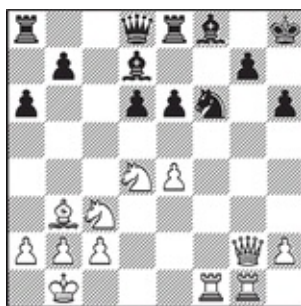
“Here, White can once again ignore his opponent’s threat to capture the rook, because he is playing for mate.” (Botvinnik)

5 ... ♖c8 x b7
6 ♗h4 - g6+ ♕h8 - h7
7 ♗g2 - e4 ♗f8 - d6
8 ♗g6 x e5+ g7 - g6
9 ♗e4 x g6+ ♕h7 - g7
10 ♗e3 x h6+!

Black resigned.

“In case of 10... ♖xh6, White would follow with 11 ♔h4+ ♖g7 12 ♔h7+ ♖f6 (or 12... ♖f8 13 ♔xb7) 13 ♘g4+ ♖e6 (13... ♖g5 14 ♔h5#) 14 ♔xb7.” (Botvinnik)

In 1969, Spassky wrested the world chess crown from Petrosian, winning six games, losing four and drawing 13 in the match.



Spassky - Petrosian
Moscow, 1969
19th game of the match

White to play

1 e4 - e5!

“It was enough for White to win the game with the simple move 1 ♘f3, followed by 2 ♘h4, or 2 e5, but the line chosen by Spassky was much more beautiful and resolute.” (Boleslavsky)

1 ... d6 x e5
 2 ♖c3 - e4! ♗f6 - h5

“This was Black’s only defense. After 2...ed, White would have continued with 3 ♘xf6 g5 (with the threat 4 ♖g6) 4 ♖h3 ♗e7 5 ♗xg5 ♘g7 6 ♗xg7 ♙xg7 7 ♗g1+, and he would mate in a few moves.” (Boleslavsky) It was also useless for Black to try 2...♗xe4, because of 3 ♗xf8+! and 4 ♖xg7#.

3 ♗g2 - g6! e5 x d4

“Black had to test here his last chance to hold on by playing 3...♗f4 4 ♗xf4 ef. Now it would be bad for White to play 5 ♗f5, due to 5...ef 6 ♗g5 ♖xg5 He would achieve nothing either with 5 ♗d6, because of: 5...♗e7 6 ♗4f5 ♙e8.” (Boleslavsky)

Still, after 3...♗f4, White wins beautifully as well, with the line 4 ♗xf4! ef 5 ♗f3 ♖b6 (or 5... ♖a5 6 ♗f6 ♖f5 7 ♖xh6+ with a checkmate) 6 ♗g5!! (This problem-like move was found by Efim Geller.) 6... ♖d8 (or 6...♙c6 7 ♗f6! mating) 7 ♗e5 ♖e7 8 ♗h5 ♗ec8 9 ♗g5.

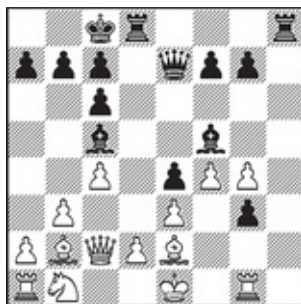
4 ♗e4 - g5!

Now Black loses after 4...hg 5 ♖xh5+ ♙g8 6 ♖f7+ ♙h8 7 ♗f3, and also after 4... ♖xg5 5 ♗xg5 ♗f4 6 ♗xf4 gh 7 ♗f3 g4 8 ♖h5+ ♙g8 9 ♖f7+ ♙h8 10 ♗f5!.

Black resigned.

In 1970, a unique chess event was held in Yugoslavia-the so-called “Match of the Century.” The strongest team in the world, the USSR, was to play the best players from the rest of the world. The USSR won by a single point.

The world champion used a brilliant rook sacrifice to defeat the top board of the Rest of the World team Larsen.



876

Larsen - Spassky
Belgrade, 1970

Black to play

1 ... ♖h8 - h1!!

A memorable move quite worthy of the “Match of the Century.” Still, it seemed good enough for Black to play 1...♙xe3!. For example, 2 de ♖h1! 3 ♖xh1 g2 4 ♖h2 g1 ♙+ 5 ♙f1 ♙xe3+ 6 ♙e2 ♙g3+ 7 ♙f2 ♙b4+ 8 ♙c3 ♙bxc3+ 9 ♙xc3 ♙xc3+ 10 ♙d2 ♙xa1+, and Black wins.

2 ♙g1 x h1

Spassky had planned to counter 2 ♙f1 with 2...♖xg1+ 3 ♙xg1 ♙h4, winning.

2 ... g3 - g2
3 ♙h1 - f1

“White would not succeed with 3 ♖g1, because of: 3... ♙h4+ 4 ♙d1 ♙h1 5 ♙c3 ♙xg1+ 6 ♙c2 ♙f2.” (Spassky)

3 ... ♙e7 - h4+
4 ♙e1 - d1 g2 x f1 ♙+

White resigned.

“After 5 ♙xf1 ♙xg4+ checkmate is unavoidable.” (Spassky)

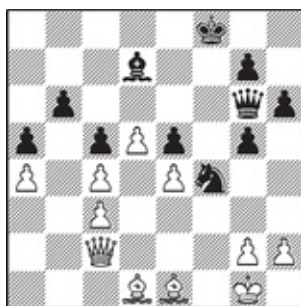
In 1972, there was a new champion, a player who had phenomenal success in the 1970s-the strange and completely unpredictable Robert James Fischer from the United States. Who else could have beaten Taimanov and Larsen 6-0, without a single draw? And in the final candidates match, he crushed Petrosian, winning four games in a row at the end of the match.

In the world championship match, Fischer lost the first game to Spassky, and he did not appear to play in the second game, so he lost it by forfeit. Then, however, Fischer started playing with impressive energy and drive and he won the match. Out of 21 games, the American grandmaster won

seven and drew 11 games.

Three years later, the world was amazed again when Fischer decided not to defend his title. People failed to understand, but the secret was simple. Fischer's goal was to become world champion, and he had achieved that. Later, he was not even interested in defending that title; after all, he had already shown that he was the best player in the world. Did he have to prove that once again? (Of course, this is just the opinion of the author of this book. The Fischer enigma has generated a lot of speculation and controversy.)

We have strayed from the subject. The following little combination decided the outcome of the sixth game of the match.



877

**Spassky - Fischer
Reykjavik, 1972
6th game of the match**

Black to play

1 ... ♖d7 x a4!

It is very bad for White to capture the bishop: 2 ♙xa4 ♜xe4 3 ♚f2 ♞d3+! 4 ♙g3 ♜h4+ 5 ♙f3 ♜f4+ 6 ♙e2 ♞c1#. It is also very bad not to capture it: 2 ♙d2 ♜xd1 3 ♙xd1 ♜xe4.

White resigned.

In the new cycle of candidates matches, a young grandmaster, Anatoly Karpov, achieved tremendous success. On his way through the candidate matches he beat Polugayevsky, Spassky and Korchnoi consecutively. These three had been among the best players in the world for many years.

See how impressively Karpov finished one of his games in the final candidates match.



878
Karpov - Korchnoi
Moscow, 1974
2nd game of the match

White to play

1 e4 - e5! ♖c6 x d5

“After 1...de 2 ♘xf6+ ef 3 ♘h5, mate is unavoidable.” (Karpov)

2 e5 x f6! e7 x f6
 3 ♖h6 x h7+ ♔g8 - f8

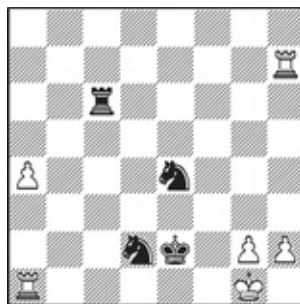
4 ♖h7 - h8+

“If 4...♔e7, then 5 ♘xd5+ ♚xd5 6 ♖e1+.” (Karpov)
 Black resigned.

In 1975, Fischer refused to play a match against the challenger and Karpov was declared the twelfth world champion..

Three years later, the young champion successfully withstood the most difficult test in his life, winning his match against Korchnoi after an incredibly tough fight. The match was played until one player had six wins and it produced the following results: Karpov won six games, Korchnoi won five, and 21 were drawn.

The champion won the following game with a simple, but elegant, combination.



879
Korchnoi - Karpov
Bagio city, 1978
17th game of the match

Black to play

1 ... ♘d2 - f3+!!

Mate is unavoidable: 2 gf (or 2 ♔h1 ♞f2#) 2...♖g6+ 3 ♔h1 ♞f2#.
White resigned.

How Would You Play?



880

Bronstein - Geller
Moscow, 1961

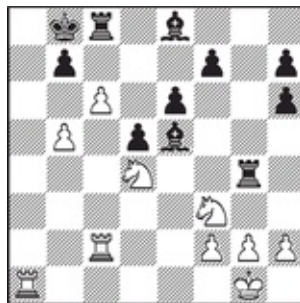
White to move



881

Petrosian - Pachman
Bled, 1961

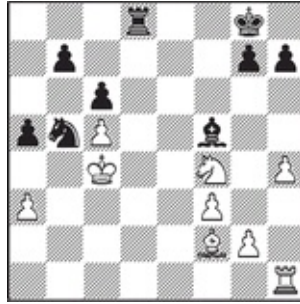
White to move



882

Tal - Botvinnik
Moscow, 1961, 8th game of the match

White to move



883

**Kopilov - Karlsson
Irkutsk, 1961**

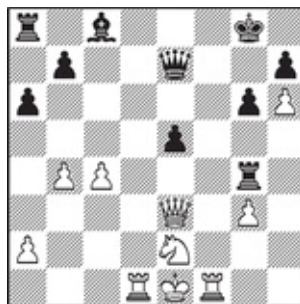
Black to move



884

**Zaitzev - Spassky
Moscow, 1961**

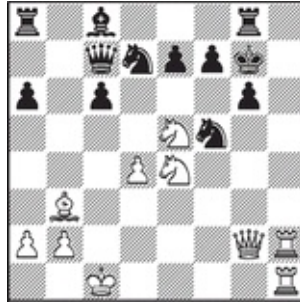
White to move



885

**Stephenson - Brain
England, 1962**

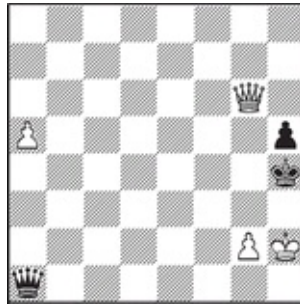
White to move



886

**Spassky - Evans
Varna, 1962**

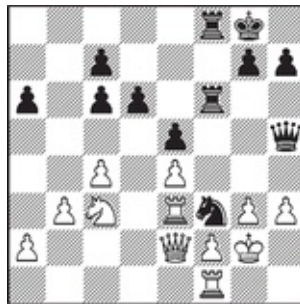
White to move



887

**Spassky - Keres
Moscow, 1962**

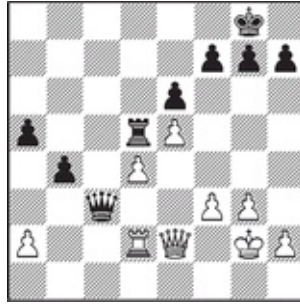
Black to move



888

**Stein - Vaisman
Kharkov, 1962**

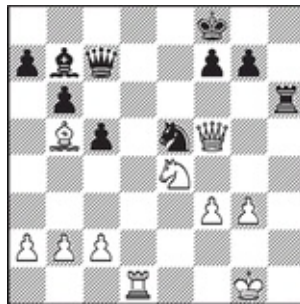
Black to move



889

Lepek - Koonen
Correspondence game, 1962

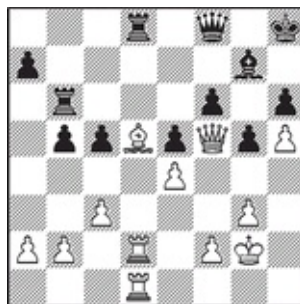
Black to move



890

King - Bendjanian
USA, 1962

White to move



891

Trifunović - Aaron
Beverwijk, 1962

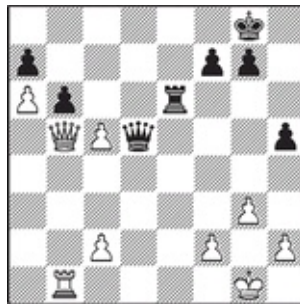
White to move



892

Stein - Portisch
Stockholm, 1962

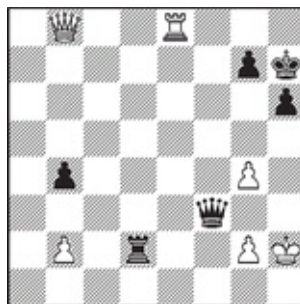
White to move



893

Smyslov - Rossetto
Mar del Plata, 1962

White to move



894

Bronstein - Korchnoi
Leningrad, 1962

Black to move



898

Petrosian - Botvinnik
Moscow, 1963, 1st game of the match

Black to move



899

Fischer - Fine
New York, 1963

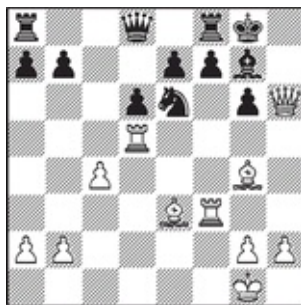
White to move



900

Fischer - Benko
New York, 1964

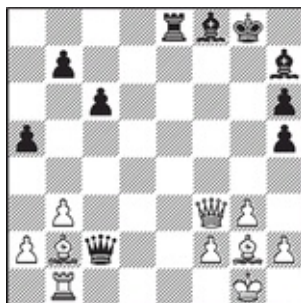
Black to move



904

Larsen - Petrosian
Santa Monica, 1966

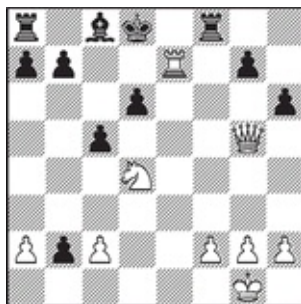
White to move



905

Rashkovsky - Anikaev
Yalta, 1966

White to move



906

Sokolov - Ruzhnikov
Correspondence game, 1966-1967

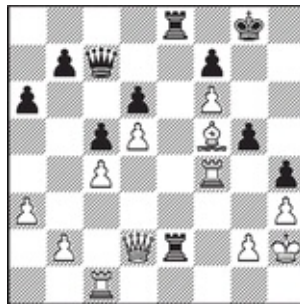
White to move



907

Rossolimo - Riceman
Puerto Rico, 1967

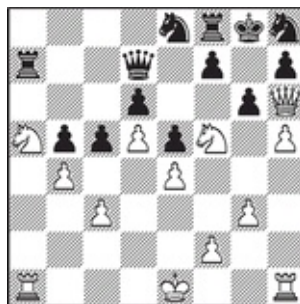
White to move



908

Cuellar - Reshevsky
Sousse, 1967

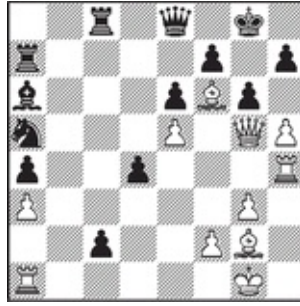
White to move



909

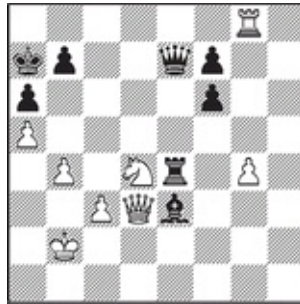
Taimanov - Jakobsen
Copenhagen, 1967

White to move



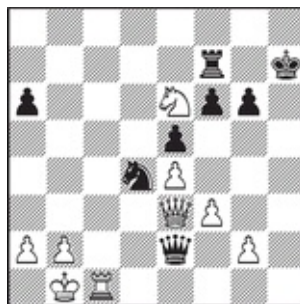
910
Fischer - Miagmarsuren
Sousse, 1967

White to move



911
Spassky - Petrosian
Moscow, 1967

White to move



912
Spassky - Korchnoi
Kiev, 1968

White to move



913
Gus - Taxis
Esslingen, 1968

White to move



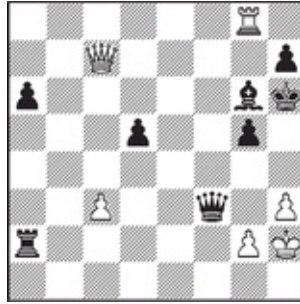
914
Neumann - Haze
Correspondence game, 1968

White to move



915
Par - Whitecroft
Holland, 1968

White to move



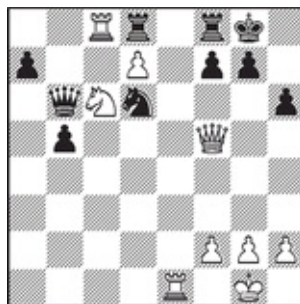
916
Cotliver - Van der Weide
Beverwijk, 1968

White to move



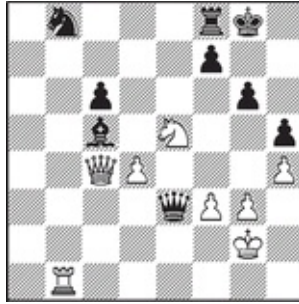
917
Lechtynsky - Kubicek
Prague, 1968

White to move



918
Spassky - Petrosian
Moscow, 1969, 5th game of the match

White to move

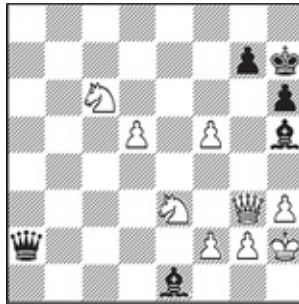


919

Petrosian - Spassky

Moscow, 1969, 20th game of the match

White to move



920

Spassky - Petrosian

Moscow, 1969, 21st game of the match

White to move

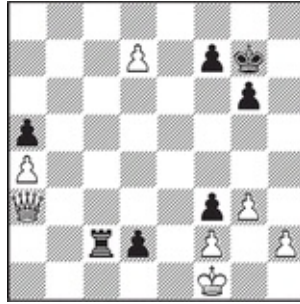


921

Tal - Suetin

Tbilisi, 1969

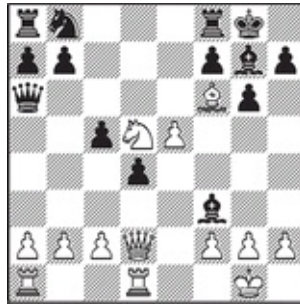
White to move



922

Ermenkov - Sax
Warsaw, 1969

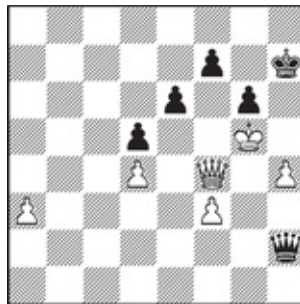
White to move



923

Bednarski - Nouissere
Ziegen, 1970

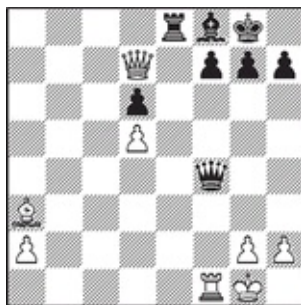
White to move



924

Matohin - Kuzmin
USSR, 1970

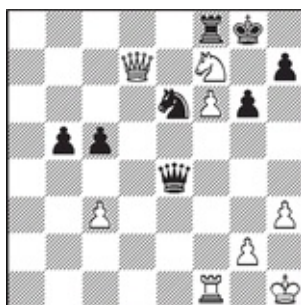
Black to move



925

Reshevsky - Fischer
Palma de Mallorca, 1970

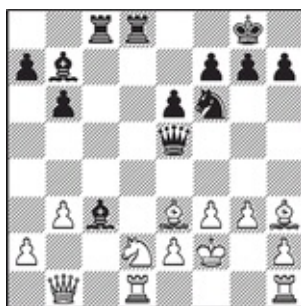
White to move



926

Reshevsky - Larsen
Palma de Mallorca, 1971

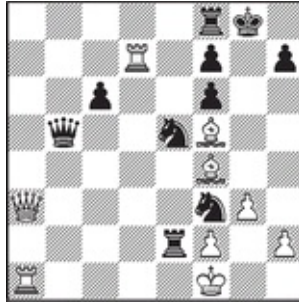
White to move



927

Agdamus - Rubinetti
Buenos Aires, 1971

White to move



928

**Tal - Vooremaa
Riga, 1971**

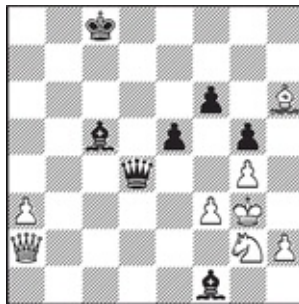
White to move



929

**Podzerov - Kuntzevic
Correspondence game, 1971**

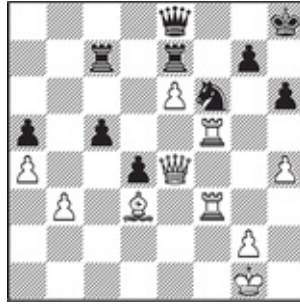
White to move



930

**Pares - Benko
Olot, 1971**

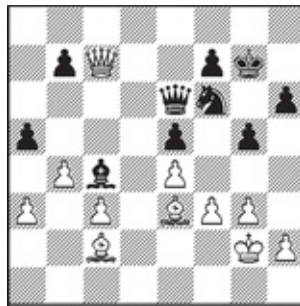
White to move



931

Fischer - Spassky
Reykjavik, 1972
6th game of the match

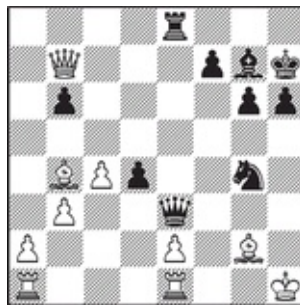
White to move



932

Andersson - Hartston
Hastings, 1972 - 1973

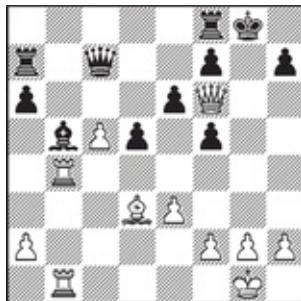
Black to move



933

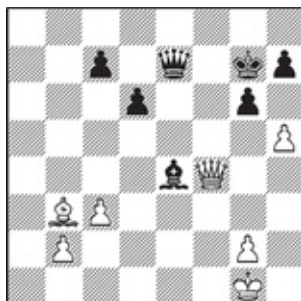
Gergel - Ziewitz
Correspondence game, 1972 - 1973

Black to move



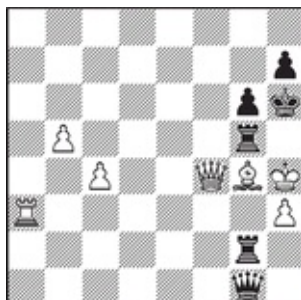
934
Hort - Portisch
Madrid, 1973

White to move



935
Ivanovic - Popovic
Yugoslavia, 1973

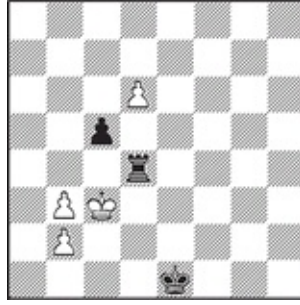
White to move



936
Georgadze - Kuindzhi

USSR, 1973

Black to move

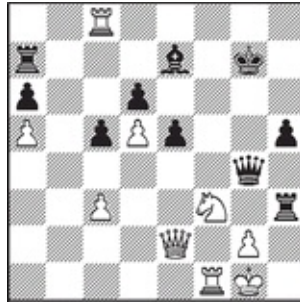


937

Helmertz - Vernbro

Lund, 1973

White to move

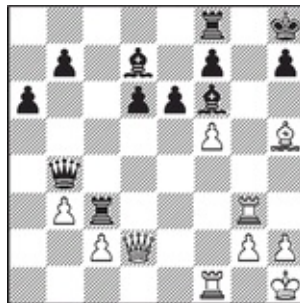


938

Karpov - Zholdosh

Budapest, 1973

White to move



939

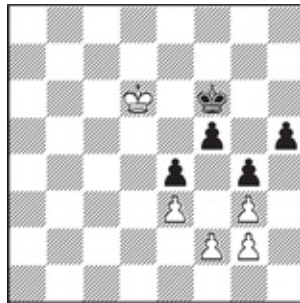
942
Tal - Petrosian
USSR, 1974

White to move



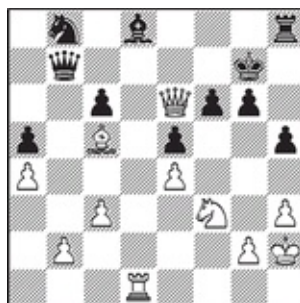
943
Van den Enden - Prashak
Ljublin, 1974

White to move



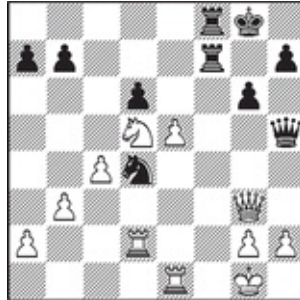
944
Pomar - Cuadras
Olot, 1974

Black to move



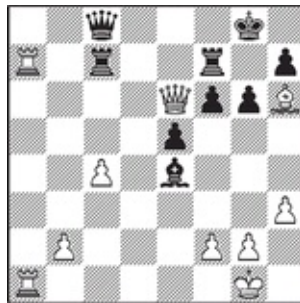
945
Karpov - Spassky
Leningrad, 1974
9th game of the match

White to move



946
Panno - Bravo
Fortaleza, 1975

White to move



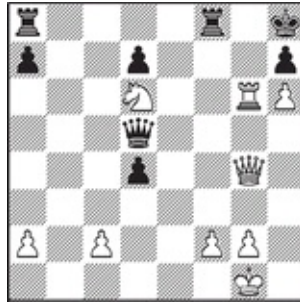
947
Vickmann - Kanko
Finland, 1975

White to move



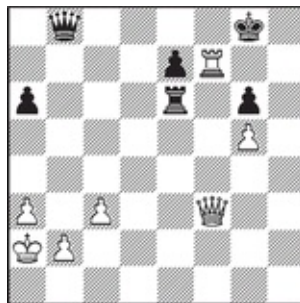
948
Larsen - Ljubojević
Milan, 1975

Black to move



949
Beliavsky - NN
Aznakaevo, 1975, simultaneous display

White to move



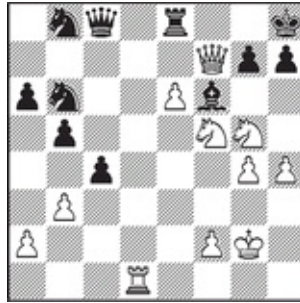
950
Byrne - Tarjan
USA, 1975

White to move



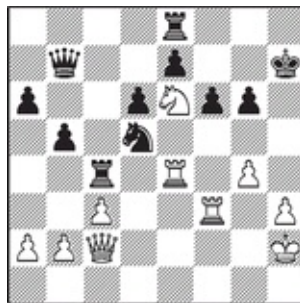
951
Portisch - Gligorić
Milan, 1975

White to move



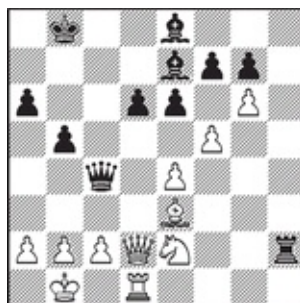
952
Tal - Portisch
Biel, 1976

White to move



953
Tal - NN
Holland, 1976, simultaneous display

White to move



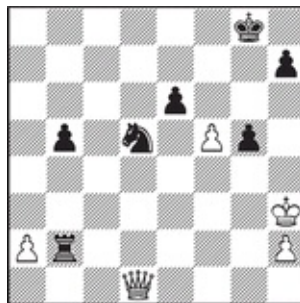
954
Tal - Koblents
Jurmala, 1976

White to move



955
Friberg - Schussler
Malmo, 1976

White to move



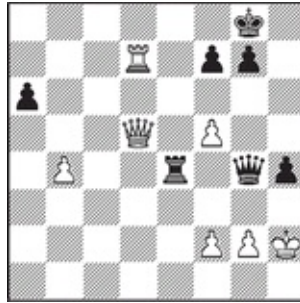
956
Bellon - Garcia
Cienfuegos, 1976

White to move



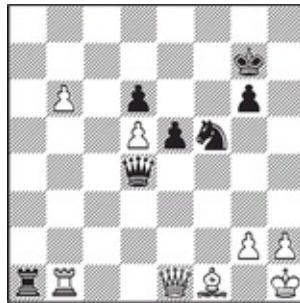
957
Karpov - Czom
Bad Lauterberg, 1977

White to move



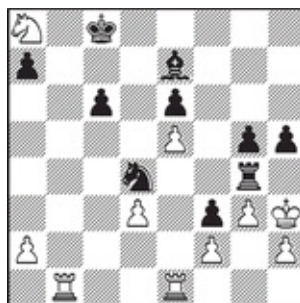
958
Tarjan - Karpov
Skopje, 1976

Black to move



959
Karpov - Taimanov
Leningrad, 1977

Black to move



960
Vadasz - Lukacs
Budapest, 1977

Black to move



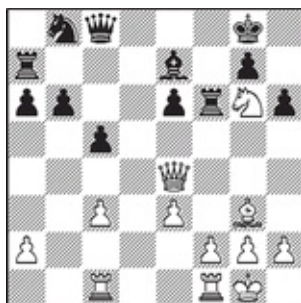
961
Kasparov - Pigusov
Riga, 1977

White to move



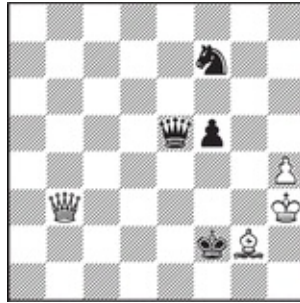
962
Kasparov - Palatnik
Daugavpils, 1978

White to move



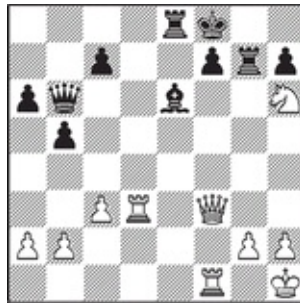
963
Panchik - Shurade
Zakopane, 1978

White to move



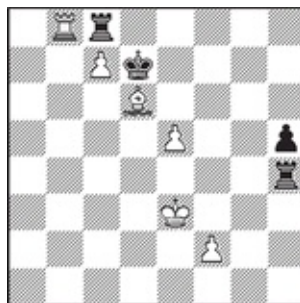
964
Dorfman - Tseshkovsky
Tbilisi, 1978

Black to move



965
Karpov - Korchnoi
Bagio city, 1978
8th game of the match

White to move



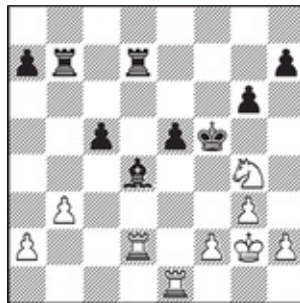
966
Karpov - Korchnoi
Bagio city, 1978
14th game of the match

White to move



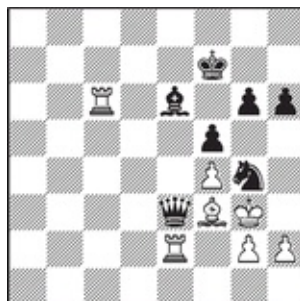
967
Karpov - Spassky
Montreal, 1979

White to move



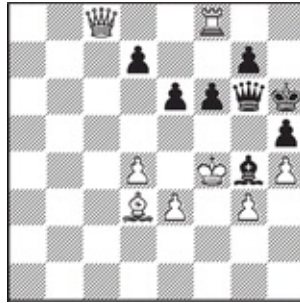
968
Petrosian - Ivkov
Belgrade, 1979

White to move



969
Sugar - Vegh
Hungary, 1979

Black to move



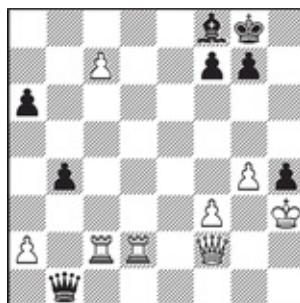
970
Frolov - Sukhin
Moscow, 1979

Black to move



971
Popov - Novopashin
Beltsi, 1979

White to move



972
Bouaziz - Miles
Riga, 1979

Black to move



973
Kasparov - Browne
Banja Luka, 1979

White to move



974
Kasparov - Ligterink
La Valletta, 1980

White to move



975

Kasparov - Czom
Baku, 1980

White to move

Solutions

Diagram 880. 1 ♔g6! Black resigned. (1...fg 2 ♖xg7+ and 3 ♘xg6#)

Diagram 881. 1 ♔xf6+!! ♕xf6 2 ♖e5+ ♔g5! (or 2...♔f5 3 ♖f4+ ♔g5 4 ♖f6+ and 5 ♖h4#) 3 ♖g7!! ("After this quiet move, it is easy to see that Black cannot avoid being checkmated." - Petrosian) Black resigned. (3...♖xd3 4 cd ♖h5 5 ♖h4+ ♔g5 6 f4+ ♔f5 7 ♘d6#; 3...♘f5 4 f4+ ♔g4 5 ♘e5+ ♔h5 6 ♖f3#)

Diagram 882. 1 ♘xe5 ♖xd4 2 ♘d7+! Black resigned, because of 2...♖xd7 3 cd ♖d8 4 ♖c8+! ♖xc8 5 ♖a8+! ♖xa8 6 dc ♖+ ♔a7 7 ♖c5+; 2...♔c7 3 b6+ ♖d8 4 cb ♖xc2 5 b8 ♖+ ♖xd7 6 ♖a7+ ♔c6 7 ♖xe8+.

Diagram 883. 1...♖d3 2 ♘xd3 (or 2 ♖a1 ♖c3#; 2 ♖c1 ♘xa3#) 2...♖e6#.

Diagram 884. 1 ♖c4! and Black resigned. (1...♖xc4 2 ♖h1+; 1...f5 2 ♖xe4 fe 3 ♖h1+ ♔g8 4 ♖h8+ ♖f7 5 ♖f6+)

Diagram 885. 1 ♖d8+! (It is not good for White to play 1 ♖xe5 ♖e6!, but 1 ♖c5! leads to mate.) 1...♖xd8 2 ♖xe5 ♖d7 3 ♖h8+! ♔xh8 4 ♖f8#.

Diagram 886. 1 ♖h7+ ♖f8 2 ♖xf7+ ♔e8 3 ♖xg6! (After 3 ♖xf5, White could have won a piece, while now Black gets checkmated.) 3...♘xe5 (or 3...♖xg6 4 ♖h8+; 3...♘h6 4 ♖g7+ ♔e8 5 ♖xg8+, with mate in both cases) 4 ♖f8+! (Equally exquisite is 4 ♘f6+!, with mate next move.) Black resigned. (4...♖xf8 5 ♖xg8#; 4...♔d7 5 ♖e6#, or 5 ♖e6#)

Diagram 887. 1...♖h1+! (or 1...♖g1+!) Draw. (2 ♖xh1 is stalemate)

Diagram 888. 1...♖xh3+! 2 ♖xh3 ♖h6+ 3 ♖g4! ♘h2+ 4 ♔g5 ♖h3! 5 ♖f3 (or 5 ♖h5 h6+ 6 ♖xh6 gh+ 7 ♖g6 ♘g4 with mate) 5...h6+ 6 ♖g6 ♘xf3. White resigned. (7 ♖xf3 ♖xf3 8 ♘d5 cd)

Diagram 889. 1 ♖c2! ♖xd4 2 ♖c4! ♖b6 (or 2...♖d2 3 ♖c8+ ♖d8 4 ♖xd2) 3 ♖c8+ ♖d8 4 ♖b5! Black resigned. (4...♖xb5, 5 ♖xd8+ followed by mate)

Diagram 890. 1 ♖xe5! ♖xe5 (or 1...♖c8 2 ♖d7 ♖g8 3 ♘d6 ♖b8 4 ♖xb7 ♖xd6 5 ♖b8+ ♔h7 6 ♖d3+) 2 ♖d8+ ♔e7 3 ♖e8#.

Diagram 891. 1 ♖g8! Black resigned, due to 1...♖xd2 2 ♖h7# or 1...♖xg8 2 ♖xd8.

Diagram 892. 1 ♘xg7!! ♖xc4 (1...♖xg7 2 ♖f6+ ♔g8 3 ♖d2, or 2...♖g6 3 ♖xe6 h5 4 ♖d2 and White wins in both cases.) 2 ♖f6!! ♖e7 (or 2...♖xc4 3 ♘f5+ ♔g8 4 ♘h6#) 3 ♖f3! Black resigned, in view of 3...♖xf6 4 ♖xf6 ♘d5 5 ♖xd5!.

Diagram 893. 1 **cb!!** ♖e1+ 2 ♖xe1 ♚xb5 3 **ba** ♚c6 (or 3... ♚xa6 4 ♖e8+ ♚h7 5 a8 ♚) 4 ♖b1 ♚h7 5 ♖b8 and it is all over.

Diagram 894. 1 ♖h8+ ♚g6 2 ♖xh6+! Black resigned, because of: 2...gh 2 ♚g8+ ♚f6 3 ♚f8+ and 4 ♚xf3; 2...♚xh6 3 ♚h8+ ♚g6 4 ♚h5+ ♚f6 5 g5+ and 6 ♚xf3; 2...♚f7 3 ♚c7+ ♚g8 4 ♚c8+ ♚f7 5 ♚e6+ ♚f8 6 ♖h8#, or 4... ♚f8 5 ♖h8+!.

Diagram 895. 1 ♚xe7+! ♚xe7 2 ♖d6 ♚xd6 (After 2... ♚f7 3 ♖xe7+ White has an extra bishop.) 3 ♖e8#.

Diagram 896. 1... ♖e1+! 2 ♚h2 ♖h1+! Seeing 3 ♚xh1 ♚xg2#; 3 ♚xh1 ♚h3+ 4 ♚g1 ♚xg2#, White resigned.

Diagram 897. 1... ♚xd5! Mate is inevitable since 2 ♖xd5 is met with 2... ♖xd5.

Diagram 898. 1... ♖e2+! (Or 1... ♚g4 and White's position is hopeless; for example, 2 ♚f2 ♖xc2 3 ♚xc2 ♚h3 4 g6 ♚h2+ 5 ♚f3 ♖e3+! and Black wins.) White resigned. The continuation might have been 2 ♚xe2 ♚xe2+ 3 ♚xe2 ♖xe2+, and Black wins a piece.

Diagram 899. 1 ♖fe1+! (or 1 ♖ae1+) 1... ♚d8 (“The line 1... ♖xe1 2 ♖xe1+ would have led to the same finish.” — Fischer. In that case, after 2... ♚d8, White should play simply 3 ♚c3; for example, 3... ♖xg7 4 ♚xg7 c5 5 d6 with mate.) 2 ♚g3! Black resigned. (2... ♚xg3 3 ♖f6#)

Diagram 900. 1 ♖xd4 ed 2 ♖f6! (“The zwischenzug Benko missed. He had expected 2 e5 f5!” - Fischer) 2... ♚g8 (“Forced. On 2...dc - 2... ♖xf6 is the same - 3 e5, with mate.”) 3 **e5 h6 4 ♚e2!** “Black was hoping for 4 ♖xd6 ♚xe5! and he can survive to an ending.” Black resigned. “There is no defense to the threat of 5 ♖xd6. On 4... ♚b5, 5 ♚f5 wins, whilst 4... ♖xf6 5 ♚xh6 forces mate.”

Diagram 901. 1... ♚b2!! and White resigned. (2 ♖xb2 ♖xa1+; 2 ♚d1 ♚xf2+; or 2 h3 ♖xa1)

Diagram 902. 1... ♖xa3! caused White to resign. If 2 ♚xa3, or 2 ♖xa3, then 2... ♚e1+ mates, while if 2 ba, then 2... ♚xa1+ 3 ♖b1 ♖e1+, with the same result. White would not save the game with 2 ♚f1, because of 2... ♖xa1 3 ♚xa1 ♚e1+.

Diagram 903. 1 ♖b8! and Black resigned. “After 1... ♚xb8 2 ♚xh4, checkmate is unavoidable.” (Botvinnik)

Diagram 904. 1 ♚xg6! ♚f4 (or 1... ♚c7 2 ♚xg7+! ♚xg7 3 ♖g5+ and 4 ♖h3#; 1...fg 2 ♖xe6+ with approximately the same variations as in the game: 2... ♚h7 3 ♖h3+ ♖h6 4 ♖xh6 ♖f5 5 ♖xf5! gf 6 ♖f7!, or 2... ♖f7 3 ♖xf7! ♚h8 4 ♖g5!) 2 ♖xf4 gf 3 ♖e6+ ♖f7 (“After 3... ♚h7 4 ♖h3+ ♖h6 5

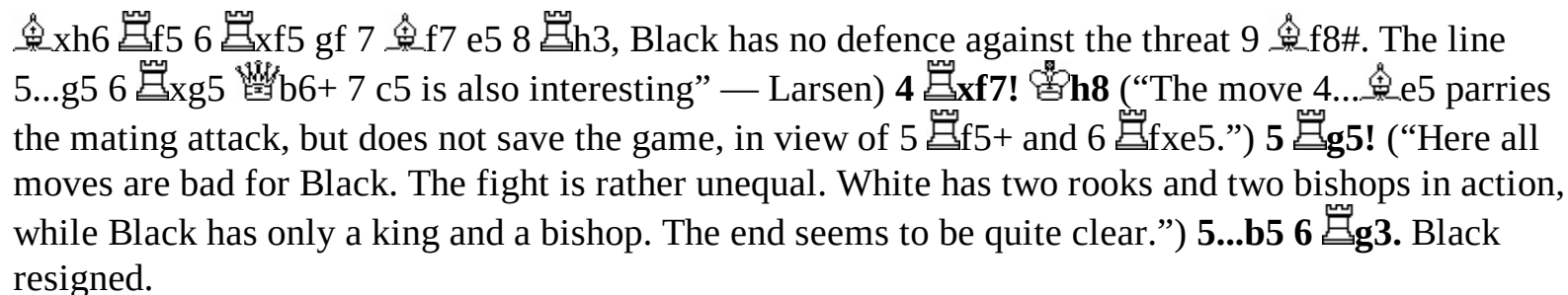

 — Larsen) 4 ♖xf7! ♖h8 (“The move 4...♖e5 parries the mating attack, but does not save the game, in view of 5 ♖f5+ and 6 ♖fxe5.”) 5 ♖g5! (“Here all moves are bad for Black. The fight is rather unequal. White has two rooks and two bishops in action, while Black has only a king and a bishop. The end seems to be quite clear.”) 5...b5 6 ♖g3. Black resigned.

Diagram 905. 1 ♖d5+! White wins. (1...cd 2 ♖xd5+ ♖e6 3 ♖xe6#)

Diagram 906. 1 ♖xb7+! hg (or 1...♖f6 2 ♖c6+ ♖e8 3 ♖e7+ ♖f8 4 ♖xg7#) 2 ♖c6+ ♖e8 3 ♖e7#.

Diagram 907. 1 ♖xd5 cd 2 ♖f6+ ♖h8 3 ♖g6!! ♖c2 (Or 3...hg 4 ♖h3#; 3...fg 4 ♖xg6+! hg 5 ♖h3#; 3...♖g5 4 ♖xg5 ♖d6 5 ♖h5 ♖h6 6 ♖xh6 and White has an extra piece.) 4 ♖h3! Black resigned. (4...♖xg6 5 ♖xg6+! fg 5 ♖xh7#; 4...♖g5 5 ♖xf7+! ♖xf7 6 ♖xc2 ♖xh3+ 7 gh, and White wins.)

Diagram 908. 1 ♖e4! and Black is beyond salvation. (1...♖xd2 2 ♖xe8#; 1...♖8xe4 2 ♖xg5+ with mate)

Diagram 909. 1 ♖g7+! ♖xg7 2 ♖h6#.

Diagram 910. 1 ♖h6 ♖f8 (or 2 ♖g7#) 2 ♖xh7+! Black resigned. 2...♖xh7 is met by 3 hg++ ♖xg6 4 ♖e4#.

Diagram 911. 1 b5! ♖xd4 (or 1... b6 2 ♖c6+; 1...ab 2 ♖xb5+ mating; 1...♖c1+ 2 ♖c2!) 2 ♖xd4+!; Black resigned. If 2...♖xd4 3 b6#; 2...b6 3 ♖xb6#; 2...♖c5 3 ♖xc5+ and 4 ♖xb6#.

Diagram 912. 1 ♖h6+! Black resigned. (1...♖xh6 2 ♖h1#; 1...♖g8 2 ♖c8+ ♖f8 3 ♖xf8#)

Diagram 913. 1 ♖h7+! ♖xh7 2 ♖f6++ ♖h8 3 ♖g6#.

Diagram 914. 1 ♖e7! ♖b7+ (or 1...♖xe7 2 ♖xf8#; 1...♖xe7 2 ♖xh7#) 2 ♖e4 ♖xe4+ 3 ♖gxe4 ♖xe7 4 ♖xe7! Black resigned. If 4...♖xe7 5 ♖xf8#.

Diagram 915. 1 ♖h5! ♖xd7 (or 1... gh 2 ♖f5#) 2 ♖g5+ ♖h8 3 ♖xh6#.

Diagram 916. 1 ♖g7+ ♖h5 2 ♖xg6+!! hg (or 2...♖h4 3 ♖xg5#) 3 ♖h8#.

Diagram 917. 1 ♖xg7+! ♖xg7 2 ♖h6#.

Diagram 918. 1 ♖xd8! ♖xf5 2 ♖c6! (or 2 ♖b7!) Black resigned. (2...♖d6 3 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 4 d8



Diagram 919. 1 ♖xb8! Black resigned. (1... ♖xb8 2 ♜xf7+ ♔h8 3 ♞xg6#; 1... ♔h8! 2 ♞xf7+! ♔g7 3 ♖b7 ♜d2+ 4 ♔h3 ♜e1 5 ♞g5+ ♜e7 6 ♖xe7+! ♜xe7 7 ♞e6+ and 8 ♞xf8; White wins.)

Diagram 920. 1 f6! Black resigned. (1...ef 2 ♞f5; 1... ♜g6 2 ♜c7)

Diagram 921. 1 ♜xe5! de 2 ef+ Black resigned. (2... ♜f8 3 ♜h6#; 2... ♜d7 3 ♜f5++ ♜c6 4 ♜e4+ ♞d5 5 ♜xd5+ ♜d7 6 ♜xa8+ ♜e6 7 ♜d5+ ♜e7 8 ♜g5+ ♜f8 9 ♜h6+ is crushing.)

Diagram 922. 1 ♜xf3!! ♖c1+ 2 ♜d1!! and Black resigned. If 2... ♖xd1+ 3 ♜e2 ♖b1 4 d8 ♜d1 ♜+ 5 ♜xd1 ♖xd1 6 ♜xd1 and White wins the king-and-pawn endgame.

Diagram 923. 1 ♜h6! Black resigned. (1... ♜xh6 2 ♞e7#; 1... ♜xd5 2 ♜xg7#; 1... ♜xf6 2 ♞xf6+ ♜xf6 3 ef and 4 ♜g7#)

Diagram 924. 1...f6+! 2 ♔g4 (or 2 ♜xf6 ♜g3#) 2... ♜g2+ 3 ♜g3 f5+ 4 ♔f4 e5+! 5 de (or 5 ♜xe5 ♜xg3+) 5... ♜d2#.

Diagram 925. 1... ♜d4+ 2 ♔h1 (or 2 ♖f2 ♖e1#) 2... ♜f2! White resigned. If 3 ♖xf2, then 3... ♖e1+ 4 ♖f1 ♖xf1#, while after 3 ♜b5 or 3 ♖g1, Black wins with 3... ♖e1.

Diagram 926. 1 ♞g5! and Black resigned. (1... ♞xg5 2 ♜g7#)

Diagram 927. 1... ♜xe3+! 2 ♜xe3 ♜d4+ 3 ♜f4 (or 3 ♜d3 ♖c3#) 3...e5+ (Black can also play 3... ♞d5+ 4 ♜e4 ♞c3+ 5 ♜f4 h5 6 ♜d3 ♞d5+ 7 ♜g5 ♜e3+ 8 ♜h4 g5+ 9 ♜h5 ♜g7 10 ♜xe3 ♞xe3.) 4 ♜f5 ♖c6! 5 ♞e4 ♜c8+ (After 5... ♞xe4 6 ♜xe4 ♖f6+ 7 ♜g4 ♜xe4, Black wins the exchange.) 6 ♜g5 h6+ 7 ♜h4 g5+ 8 ♞xg5 hg+ 9 ♜xg5 ♞h7+ 10 ♜h5! ♜xh3? (It would be correct for Black to play 10... ♖dd6!, forcing 11 ♜xh7+ ♜xh7 12 ♜xc8 ♖xc8, and Black is up material.) 11 e3? (White had to play 11 g4!) 11... ♖dd6! White resigned.

Diagram 928. Black resigned after 1 ♜xf8+!, because of 1... ♜xf8 2 ♜h6+ ♜g8 3 ♖d8#; 2... ♜e8 3 ♖a8+ ♜b8 4 ♜xb8#.

Diagram 929. 1 ♜g8+! ♜xg8 (or 1... ♖xg8 2 ♞f7#) 2 ♞e7++ (White would have mated in exquisite fashion after 2 ♞f6++ ♜f8 3 ♞fxd7+ ♜e7 4 ♞c6#) 2... ♜f8 (or 2... ♜h8 3 ♞f7#) 3 ♞5g6+! (or 3 ♞7g6+!) 3...hg 4 ♞xg6#.

Diagram 930. 1... ♜f4+! 2 ♞xf4 (or 2 ♜h3 ♜xf3#) 2...ef#.

Diagram 931. 1 ♖xf6! gf 2 ♖xf6 ♜g8 3 ♜c4 (It is also possible for White to play here 3 ♖xh6.)

3... ♖h8 4 ♜f4! Black resigned. (4... ♜g8 5 ♜e5!)

Diagram 932. 1... ♜h3+! White resigned. (If 2 ♜xh3, then 2... ♜f1#, while if 2 ♜h1, then 2... ♜f1+ 3 ♜g1 ♜xf3#.)

Diagram 933. 1... ♘f2+ 2 ♜g1 (or 2 ♜h2 ♜e5+ with mate) 2... ♘h3++ 3 ♜h1 (or 3 ♜h2 ♜e5+ 4 ♜h1 ♜g1+!) 3... ♜g1+! 4 ♜xg1 ♘f2+ 5 ♜h2 ♜e5#.

Diagram 934. 1 ♜g4+! fg 2 ♜g5+ ♜h8 3 ♜h6. Black resigned. If 3... ♜xd3 4 ♜xf8#; 3... ♜g8 4 ♜xh7#.

Diagram 935. 1 h6+ ♜h8 2 ♜e6! Black gave up, due to 2... ♜xe6 3 ♜f8+ ♜g8 4 ♜f6+ ♜g7 5 ♜xg7#; or 2... d5 3 ♜e5+ with mate in two; 2... ♜f5 3 ♜d4+, followed by mate.

Diagram 936. 1... ♜f2+ 2 ♜xf2 (or 2 ♜g3 ♜h5+ 3 ♜xh5 ♜f6+ 4 ♜g4 gh#) 2... ♜h5+! 3 ♜xh5 g5#.

Diagram 937. 1 b4! ♜xb4 (or 1... ♜xd6? 2 bc) 2 d7 ♜d4 (or 2... ♜b8 3 ♜c4 ♜d8 4 ♜xc5 with a draw) 3 b4! Draw. If 3... ♜xd7 4 bc.

Diagram 938. 1 ♘xe5! ♜xe2 (or 1... de 2 ♜xe5+ and mate; 1... ♜xc8 2 ♜f7+ ♜h6 3 ♜d2+ ♜g5 4 ♜f6+ ♜h7 5 ♜xg5, or 2... ♜g8 3 ♜e4) 2 ♜f7+ ♜h6 3 ♜h8+ ♜g5 4 ♜g8+ ♜h4 (or 4... ♜h6 5 ♜g6#) 5 ♘g6+ ♜g5 (or 5... ♜g3 6 ♘xe7+ ♜g4 7 ♜f3+ ♜h4 8 ♘f5+ ♜xf5 9 ♜xf5 ♜g3 10 ♜f4+ ♜g4 11 ♜h2!, mating) 6 ♘xe7+ ♜h4 (or 6... ♜h6) 7 ♘f5#.

Diagram 939. “White had aimed for this position from afar, having in mind the move 23 ♜h6!. It was only here that Black realized that on his intended 1... ♜xg3 there would follow 2 ♜g6!! with inevitable mate. He therefore resigned.” (Tal) If 2... ♜xg6 3 fg fg 4 ♜xf8#, or 3... ♜g7 4 ♜xh7#.

Diagram 940. 1... ♜e6!! (It is not as good for Black to play 1... c2+ 2 ♜b2 ♜d ♜ 3 ♜xd1, and White has some counterplay; for example, 3... ♜h3 4 h6 ♜xg4 5 ♜f1.) 2 ♜xe6 (White cannot defend with 2 d5 ♘d3! because Black has a mating attack.) 2... ♘d3! 3 ♜f7 (There is no salvation for White: 3 ♜xd3 ♜b8+ 4 ♜c2 ♜b2+ 5 ♜d1 ♜a1+ and mate next move.) 3... ♜b8+ 4 ♜b3 (4 ♜c2 ♘b4+ 5 ♜b1 ♘d5+, and Black wins.) 4... ♜xb3+ 5 ♜c2 ♘b4+! 6 ♜xb3 (or 6 ♜c1 ♜b1+! 7 ♜xb1 ♘d5+, with the same variations as in the game) 6... ♘d5+! 7 ♜c2 ♜b2+ 8 ♜d3 ♜b5+. White resigned. (9 ♜c2 ♜e2+ 10 ♜d2 ♜xd2+ 11 ♜b3 ♜b2+ 12 ♜c4 ♜b5#, or 12 ♜a4 ♜b4#)

Diagram 941. 1 ♜h3+ ♜g8 (or 1... ♜g6 2 ♜h5+ ♜f6 3 ♜f1#) 2 ♘f5! ♜g5 (or 2... ♜d7 3 ♘h6+! gh 4 ♜g4+ ♜h7 5 ♜g5!, or 3... ♜h7 4 ♘xf7+ ♜g8 5 ♜h8+! ♜xf7 6 ♜f3+ ♜g6 7 ♜h5+ ♜f6 8 ♜xf8+ ♜e7 9 ♜xc5+ and White wins in both cases.) 3 ♜h5! Black resigned. “He is mated after both 3... ♜xh5 4 ♘e7+, and 3... f6 4 ♘e7#. I find this latter variation more pleasing.” (Tal)

Diagram 942. 1 ♖xd7! ♗xd7 (or 1... ♖xd7 2 ♖h4) 2 ♗xf7+. Black resigned. If 2... ♖xf7 3 ♖xf7+ ♗h8 4 ♖e7 ♖f8 5 ♖xg6 ♗f5 6 ♗f7+ ♖g8 7 ♗h6+ ♗h8 8 ♗xf5 ♖e8 9 h4, and Black is helpless.

Diagram 943. 1 ♖e8 ♖c7 (or 1... ♖xe8 2 ♖xe8) 2 ♖xg5+! fg 3 ♗h5#.

Diagram 944. 1...f4!! 2 ♖d5 (or 2 gf h4; 2 ef h4 3 gh g3 4 fg e3) 2...h4! 3 ♖xe4 (or 3 gh g3! 4 fg fe) 3...f3! 4 gf h3 and Black promotes.

Diagram 945. 1 ♖xd8! Black resigned. 1... ♖xd8 2 ♗e7 ♖e8 3 ♖xf6+ ♗h6 4 ♗h4!; or 2... ♖f8 3 ♗xf8+, and White wins.

Diagram 946. 1... ♖e2! White resigned. If 2 ♖exe2 ♖f1#; 2 ♖dxe2 ♗xe2+! 3 ♖h1 ♖f1+ 4 ♖xf1 ♖xf1#; 2 ♗f6+ ♖xf6 3 ef ♖xd2.

Diagram 947. 1 ♖d1!! Black resigned. (Or 1... ♖xe6 2 ♖d8+; 1... ♖xa7 2 ♖xc8+; 1... ♗b7 2 ♖xb7!; 1... ♗c6 2 ♖xc7! ♖xe6 3 ♖xc6! ♖e8 4 ♖d6 and 5 ♖d8)

Diagram 948. 1... ♖h4! (It is bad for Black to play 1... ♖c1?, because of 2 ♖xd5! ♖f4 3 ♖d8+ ♗g7 4 ♖xe5+!) 2 ♖xe5 (or 2 ♗xc8 ♖xh2#; 2 h3 ♖xh3+ 3 ♖g1 ♗d4+ and 4... ♖xg2#) 2... ♖f2! and White resigned. If 3 ♖g1 ♖xg2+! 4 ♖xg2 ♖c1+ and mate.

Diagram 949. 1 ♖g8+! (This is a wonderful move, but White would win more quickly with 1 ♖e6! ♖g5 2 ♖xg5 and mate next move.) 1... ♖xg8 (The game would have lasted a move longer after 1... ♖xg8 2 ♖xd4+ ♖f6 3 ♖xf6+ ♖g7 4 ♖xg7#.) 2 ♖xd4+! ♖xd4 3 ♗f7#.

Diagram 950. 1 ♖h3! Black is beyond salvation. If 1... ♖e2 2 ♖h7#; 1... ♖xf7 2 ♖h7+ ♖e8 3 ♖h8+ and 4 ♖xb8; 1... ♖xb2+ 2 ♖xb2 ♖b6+ 3 ♖c2. It is also quite good for White to play 1 ♖h1!, with the same variations.

Diagram 951. 1 ♗xh7! ♗f5! (or 1... ♗xh7 2 ♗d8! ♖xd8 3 ♖xd8+ ♗g8 4 ♖h4+ ♗h7 5 ♖f8#, or 4... ♗h5 5 ♖xh5+ and White wins.) 2 ♖xf5! ♗xf5 (Even after the best move for Black, 2... ♖xh7, his position is in ruins, and White can win even with 3 ♖f4) 3 ♗e7!! and now Black resigned. If 3... ♗xh7 4 ♖f6#; 3... ♖xe7 4 ♖xe7 ♗xh7 5 ♖xd6, and White's position is overwhelming.

Diagram 952. 1 ♗h6! and Black resigned. If 1...gh 2 ♖xh7#. Meanwhile White is threatening 2 ♖g8+!; if 1... ♖xe6, then 2 ♗xe6 and White is up an exchange.

Diagram 953. 1 ♖xc4 bc 2 ♖f5! Black resigned. If 2...gf 3 ♖xf5+ ♖h8 4 ♖h5+ ♖g8 5 ♖g6+ ♖h8 6 ♖g7#; 2... ♖g8 3 ♖xd5! ♖xd5 4 ♖xg6+; 2... ♖h8 3 ♖d2!.

Diagram 954. 1 f6! ♖xe2 (It is not as strong for Black to play 1... ♗xf6 2 ♖xd6+ ♖c7 3 ♗f4, or 1...gf 2 g7 ♖g2 3 ♖g1.) 2 fg ♖xd2 3 ♗xd2 ♖e2 4 ♖c1 and White wins.

Diagram 955. 1...♙g1! (It is more precise for Black to play 1...♙c1! 2 ♖de3 ♖xe3 3 ♞d2 ♖e1+, mating.) White resigned in view of 2 ♖d2 ♖e1 3 ♚a1 ♖ae8!, winning.

Diagram 956. Following 1...♖g2! White resigned. If 2 ♙xg2 ♞e3+; 2 ♚d4 ♞f4+ 3 ♚xf4 gf 4 ♙xg2 e5.

Diagram 957. 1 ♞f5! caused Black to resign. If 1...♞xd7, or 1...ef, then 2 ♚h2+ ♖g8 3 ♚g3+ and mate, while after 1...♚b8, White wins with 2 ♖h7+! and 3 ♚g7#.

Diagram 958. 1...♚f4+ 2 ♙h3 (or 2 ♙g1 ♖e1#; 2 g3 ♚xf2+ with mate) 2...♖e3+!; White resigned. (2 fe ♚g3#; 2 g3 ♖xg3+!)

Diagram 959. After 1...♞g3+!! White resigned. On 2 hg ♖a8! and mate; 2 ♚xg3 ♖xb1 3 ♚f3 e4 4 ♚e2 ♚d3, and Black wins.

Diagram 960. 1...♖f4! and after 2 gf, White gets checkmated: 2...g4+ 3 ♙g3 ♞f5#.

Diagram 961. 1 ♖f6! ♞g5 (or 1...♞f8? 2 ♚xh6+! gh 3 ♖xh6+ ♞h7 4 ♖xh7#) 2 ♖xg5! hg (or 2...gf 3 ♖h5 ♚f8 4 ♖xh6+ ♙g8 5 ♖h7, winning) 3 ♚xg5 ♙g8 (or 3...gf 4 ♚h6+ with mate; 3...♚e8 4 ♚h5+ ♙g8 5 e6! gf 6 e7!!, and Black is helpless) 4 ♚h4! (Also good is 4 ♚h5) 4...♚a3 (A more resilient defense for Black is 4...♚d8, but White wins even then, for example, 5 ♚h7+ ♙f8 6 ♖f3 ♖c6 7 ♙g6 ♖xg6 8 ♚xg6; if 4...♚e8, then 5 e6!) 5 ♖f3! g6 6 ♙xg6! ♚xf3 7 ♚h7+ ♙f8 8 gf Black resigned.

Diagram 962. 1 ♖f3+ ♞f6 (“It looks as if Black could have defended with 1...♞f7?. On first impression after 2 ♖xf7+ ♚xf7 3 ♞xf7 ♖c1+ 4 ♙f2 ♖f1 + 5 ♙g3 ♖xf7, Black’s position might be defensible. It turns out, however, that Garik had seen all this and had prepared a nasty surprise for his opponent — the move 6 ♚h4!., after which Black might as well resign.” -Gufeld. 1...♙f6 loses to 2 ♚xh8#.) 2 h3! (“This move removes any of Black’s illusions.”) 2...♚g6 3 ♖xf6+! (“This game was played with great intensity and was crowned by a beautiful exchange sacrifice.”) 3...♙xf6 4 ♞e6+ ♙e8 5 ♞xf6+. Black resigned. (5...♚xf6 6 ef)

Diagram 963 1 ♚a8! and Black resigned. On 1...♚xa8 2 ♞xe7+; 1...♖b7 2 ♞xe7+; 1...♙d8! 2 ♚xa7 ♞c6 3 ♞e7+!, and White wins the exchange.

Diagram 964 1...♞g5+! White resigned. (2 hg ♚h8#)

Diagram 965. 1 ♖d7! ♖b8 (or 1...♙xd7 2 ♚xf7+! and 3 ♖xf7#) 2 ♞xf7! ♙xd7 3 ♞d8+! Black resigned. After any move of Black’s king, White follows with 4 ♚f8#, while if 3...♙f5, then 4 ♙xf5+ ♙e7 5 ♚f8+ ♙d7 6 ♖d1+ ♙c8 7 ♚f5+.

Diagram 966. 1 e6+! “Black resigned, in view of 1... ♖xd6 2 ♜xc8 ♜c4 3 ♜d8+ ♕xc7 4 e7, or 1... ♕xe6 2 ♜g3!” (Karpov)

Diagram 967. 1 ♜xe7! ♜xe7 2 d6 ♜c4 (“Or 2... ♜ed7 3 dc ♜xd3 4 cd ♜.” — Karpov) 3 b3 (“White avoids a final trap: 3 ♜d4 ♜e2 4 de ♜xd1+.”) Black resigned.

Diagram 968. 1 ♜xd4! Black resigned. If 1...ed, then 2 ♜e5+! ♕xg4 3 f3#, or 3 h3#.

Diagram 969. 1... ♜xf4+! 2 ♕xf4 g5+ 3 ♕g3 f4+ 4 ♕h3 ♖f2#.

Diagram 970. White had moved away from the check ♕e4-f4 with his last move, and he was already anticipating victory, since Black could not play 1... ♜xd3?, because of 2 ♜h8+. But Black came up with the unexpected move 1... ♜e4+! 2 ♕xe4. (White gets mated even faster after 2 ♜xe4 e5+ 3 de g5+ 4 hg fg#.) 2...d5+ 3 ♕f4 e5+ 4 de g5+ 5 hg fg#.

Diagram 971. 1 ♖g6+! hg (or 1... ♕g8 2 ♜xf8#) 2 ♜xf8+ ♕h7 3 ♜h6+!! Black resigned, due to 3... ♕xh6 4 ♜h8#; 3...gh 4 ♜xb7+.

Diagram 972. 1... ♜h1+ 2 ♜h2 ♜xf3+ 3 ♕xh4 ♜e7+ 4 g5 ♜xg5+! and White resigned. If 5 ♕xg5 f6+ 6 ♕h4 g5#, or 6 ♕g6 ♜g4#.

Diagram 973. 1 ♜h7+! ♕xh7 (or 1... ♕f8 2 ♜h8#) 2 ♜xe6. Black resigned, since he cannot avoid huge material losses.

Diagram 974. 1 ♖c8! ♖c6 (On other moves Kasparov had planned 1... ♜xc8 2 ♜f5, or 1... ♜c7 2 ♜xb8 ♜f8 3 ♖xd6 ♜xb8 4 ♖c4. In the last variation White could also play 3 ♜fb1.) 2 ♖xa7 ♖xa7 3 ♜d5. (Here, Kasparov points out the possibility of 3 ♜f5 g6; now 4 ♜d7 is probably best, because Black loses a piece and remains a rook down.) Black resigned. After 3... ♜f8 4 ♜b7 ♖c8, Black avoids an immediate defeat, but he has a lost game.

Diagram 975. 1 ♖f5! ♖f7 (or 1... ♖xf3 2 ♖h6#; 1...h5 2 ♖h6+ ♕h7 3 ♜e4+ ♖g6 4 ♜xh5! ♜xe4 5 g8 ♜+! ♜xg8 6 ♖f5#) 2 ♜xh7! and Black resigned. If 2... ♕xh7 3 ♜h1+ ♕g8 4 ♜h8+! ♖xh8 5 gh ♜+ and White mates in one.

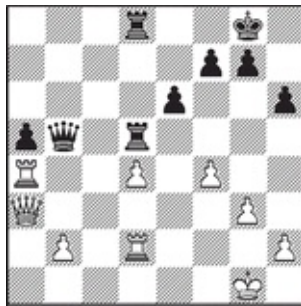
XIV

The Great Opposition: Karpov - Kasparov (1981 - 2000)

Combinations have always been the most intriguing aspects of chess. The masters look for them, the public applauds them, and the critics praise them. It is because combinations are possible that chess is more than a lifeless mathematical exercise. They are the poetry of the game; they are to chess what melody is to music. They represent the triumph of mind over matter.

Reuben Fine

In 1981, Victor Korchnoi made another attempt at wresting from Anatoly Karpov the title World Chess champion. That time, however, the champion took the lead right from the start and never lost the initiative throughout the match. As a result, Karpov won six games, Korchnoi won only two, and ten games ended in draws.



976

Korchnoi - Karpov

Merano, 1981, 9th game of the match

Black to move

The world champion inflicts a brilliant tactical strike in this position:

1 ... e6 - e5!!

“Black had several attractive possibilities here (1...♖c8, 1...g5), but by making the move in the text, I had the feeling that I must take advantage of the geometry of the position. I failed to do that immediately, but after I found the third move, it brought me tremendous aesthetic pleasure, and, as they told me later, it proved to be quite surprising to the majority of the people present in the press center.” (Karpov)

“Black maximizes the striking power of his queen along both diagonals and files.” (Karpov)

3 ♖a3 - a1	♖b5 - e8!
4 d4 x e5	♖d8 x d2
5 ♖a4 x a5	♖e8 - c6
6 ♖a5 - a8+	♔g8 - h7
7 ♖a1 - b1+	g7 - g6

“7...♖c2 was possible, too.” (Karpov)

8 ♖b1 - f1	♖c6 - c5+
------------	-----------

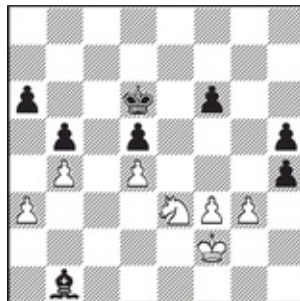
“Of course not 8...♖xa8, because of 9 ♖xf7+.” (Karpov)

9 ♔g1 - h1	♖c5 - d5+
------------	-----------

White resigned.

1984 was the year in which the long rivalry between Karpov and Kasparov began. Just like Karpov, Garry Kasparov was one of the brightest stars on the chess horizon of the 20th century. Their first match had an amazing and unique course and a completely unpredictable finish. The event was scheduled to last until one player had six wins (without any limit on games played). After 27 games, the advantage of Karpov was overwhelming — 5:0 (draws were not counted). Still, at that moment, the challenger demonstrated a phenomenal toughness and confidence in his final success. After the 48th game, the score was 5:3 and a surprising decision by the president of FIDE, Florencio Campomanes, interrupted the match without any final result. Karpov did not win and Kasparov did not lose.

In the following game, the world champion increased his positional advantage with the help of an instructive combination.



977

Karpov - Kasparov
Moscow, 1984, 9th game of the match

White to move

Black had just played g5xh4 and Karpov commented that “the exchange of pawns (if that had happened!) would have helped Black to draw. Indeed, after the pawn break g3 - g4 had become impossible, White would have only a single square, f4, to penetrate into his opponent’s camp, but his king and knight could not manage to do that simultaneously. White, however, had a study-like way to ensure his victory.”

1 ♖e3 - g2!!

“This move is difficult to anticipate, because, very often in the analysis, White’s pawn is not even removed from h4; one simply takes off the board both g-pawns to effect the trade on h4. This surprising knight maneuver involves a pawn sacrifice, but material balance will soon be restored; meanwhile both White’s pieces penetrate the opponent’s camp simultaneously.” (Karpov)

1 ... h4 x g3+

“Even after 1...h3 2 ♘f4, Black’s position remains quite difficult.” (Alexey Suetin)

2 ♖f2 x g3	♔d6 - e6
3 ♘g2 - f4+	♔e6 - f5
4 ♘f4 x h5	♖f5 - e6
5 ♘h5 - f4+	♔e6 - d6
6 ♖g3 - g4	♙b1 - c2
7 ♖g4 - h5	♙c2 - d1
8 ♖h5 - g6	♔d6 - e7

“After 8...♙xf3 9 ♖xf6, Black would lose his d5-pawn.” (Karpov)

9 ♘f4 x d5+

White won after 15 moves.

In the following year there was a new match for the world championship. The format was the same as in the old days - they play 24 games, and if someone won six games, the match ended. Kasparov won five games and Karpov won three, in a tough fight.

White won the next game with a simple but effective queen sacrifice.



Kasparov - Karpov
Moscow, 1985
11th game of the match

White to move

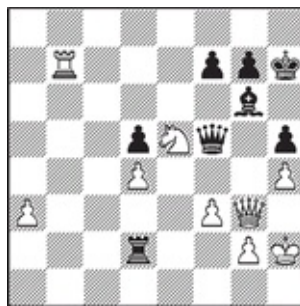
1 ♖g4 x d7!	♜d8 x d7
2 ♜e1 - e8+	♔g8 - h7
3 ♙d5 - e4+	

Black resigned. (If 3...g6 4 ♖xd7 ♙a6 5 ♙xc6, and Black cannot play 5...♙xc6, because of 6 ♖xf7#.)

The great rivalry continued, however. In the next year, 1986, the ex-world champion used his right to have a return match. This exciting competition was held in two cities: London and Leningrad. After a tense and nervous fight, Kasparov defended his title, winning five games and losing four.

The world champion played a little combination in the next game which enabled him to take the lead in the final stages of the match, practically ensuring his victory in the match.

“The game was adjourned in this position:



979

Kasparov - Karpov
Leningrad, 1986
22nd game of the match

White to move

“The world champion had an extra pawn, but Black had managed to activate his forces. For example, in case of 1 ♖b4 - it seemed that White must protect the d-pawn somehow - 1...f6 2 ♘xg6 ♙xg6, Black’s chances for a draw looked good. White finds a study-like combinational way to victory.” (Eduard Gufeld)

1 ♘e5 - d7!!	♜d2 x d4
2 ♘d7 - f8+	♔h7 - h6

If 2... ♖h8, then 3 ♖b8 and White wins.

3 ♖b7 - b4!

“This is a quiet move and White’s entire combination is based on it. After the trade of the rooks, the c1 - h6 diagonal is open and Black’s king is suddenly in a mating net — every attack on that diagonal would be fatal.” (Karpov)

3 ... ♖d4 - c4

The world champion had prepared a beautiful variation in answer to 3... ♖xb4. Here is how it goes: 4 ab d4 5 b5 d3 6 b6 d2 7 b7 d1 ♚c1 8 b8 ♚c1 ♚c1 9 ♘xg6 ♚xg6 (or 9...fg 10 ♚h8#) 10 ♚h8+ ♚h7 11 ♚g7#.

4 ♖b4 x c4 d5 x c4

5 ♚g3 - d6! c4 - c3

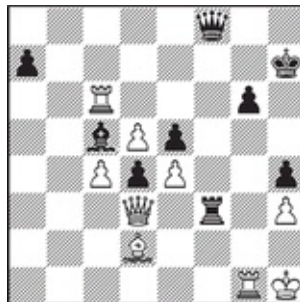
Black liquidates the threat 5 ♚d2+.

6 ♚d6 - d4!

Black resigned. If 6... ♗h7, then 7 ♚xc3 and White wins.

At the end of 1987, a new clash between these titans ended in a draw after 24 games, so Kasparov retained his title.

The ex-world champion struck an unexpected tactical blow in the penultimate game of the match. After that game he only needed a draw in the last game to recapture the title! Here is how it happened:



980

Karpov - Kasparov

Seville, 1987

23rd game of the match

White to move

“It looks like Black is starting some decisive action, but...” (Karpov)

1 ♖c6 - c7+ ♔h7 - h8
2 ♕d2 - h6!

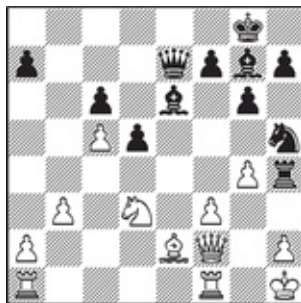
“This combination is based on the themes of deflection and overloading.” (Karpov)

2 ... ♖f3 x d3
3 ♕h6 x f8 ♖d3 x h3+
4 ♔h1 - g2 ♖h3 - g3+
5 ♔g2 - h2 ♖g3 x g1
6 ♕f8 x c5 d4 - d3

Black resigned. “After 7 ♖e3, White gives up his bishop for the pawn and his passed c- and d-pawns are unstoppable.” (Karpov)

Three years passed and there was another match between Kasparov and Karpov in New York and Lyons. Just like all their previous matches, it was an incredibly tough fight, but the champion prevailed at the end by just one game.

Our next example is a witty drawing combination from that match.



981

Karpov - Kasparov
New York, 1990
11th game of the match

Black to move

“It looks like Black will have to lose even more material, but he has a way to save the game.” (Karpov)

1 ... ♕g7 - d4!
2 ♖f2 x d4 ♖h4 x h2+!
3 ♔h1 x h2

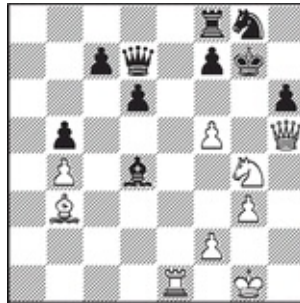
Of course not 3 ♖g1?, because of the obvious resource 3... ♖h4.

Draw by perpetual check.

In 1993, there was dissent in the chess world. The participants in the next world championship match, Kasparov and the English grandmaster Nigel Short, decided not to play under the auspices of FIDE, and they founded the Professional Chess Association (PCA). FIDE continued to hold its world championship match as well. Therefore, in 1993, two different matches, independent of each other, were held for the world chess crown.

In the match between Kasparov and Short, 20 games were played and the champion won six. The challenger won one game and the rest were drawn. The match was played in London.

Two spectacular tactics in a row in the following fragment forced Black to resign.



982

Kasparov - Short
London, 1993
7th game of the match

White to move

1 ♖g4 x h6! ♗d4 - f6

If Black accepts the knight sacrifice by 1... ♖xh6, 2 ♗g5+ ♖h7, and White can continue his attack in two possible ways: either 3 f6 ♗xf2+ 4 ♖xf2 ♗f5+ 5 ♗xf5 ♖xf5 6 ♗c2 ♖g6 7 g4, or 3 ♗c2 ♗f6 (or 3...f6 4 ♗g6+ ♖h8 5 ♗xh6+ ♖g8 6 ♗e4 ♗xf2+ 7 ♖f1, and Black is lost.) 4 ♗xf6 ♗e8 (or 4... ♗c6 5 ♗e6! fe 6 ♗g6+ ♖h8 7 ♗xh6+ ♖g8 8 ♗g6+ ♖h8 9 fe, and White wins.) 5 ♗e6! ♖g8 6 ♗h4+ ♖g7 7 f6+ ♖f8 8 ♗h7 ♖xf6 9 ♗h6+ ♖g8 10 ♗xf6. In both cases Black's compensation for the piece is insufficient. He cannot save the game either with 1... ♖f6, because of 2 ♗g5+ ♖h8 3 ♗h4 and White wins.

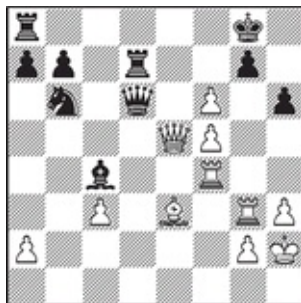
2 ♗b3 x f7!

White's knight and bishop are untouchable: 2... ♗xf7 3 ♗g6+ and 4 ♗xg8#, or 2... ♖xh6 3 ♗g6+ ♖h8 4 ♗xh6#. Black cannot avoid the loss even after 2... ♖e7; for example, 3 ♗e6 ♗c6 4 ♗xf6!,

because he gets mated in two if he captures the rook: 4...♔xf6 5 ♖g4+ ♔g7 6 f6#.

Black resigned.

In the match, organized by FIDE, the opponents were Karpov and the Dutch Jan Timman. The competition, held in Holland and Indonesia, ended with a win for A. Karpov, who won six games, losing two and drawing 13.



983

**Karpov - Timman
Amsterdam, 1993
6th game of the match**

White to move

1 f6 - f7+!

This study-like move is much stronger than 1 ♖xg7+ ♔h8. After 1 f7+ ♔xf7, Black gets mated immediately with 2 ♖xg7#, while in case of 1...♔xf7, his queen is undefended; so, of course, White follows with 2 ♖xd6.

1	...	♔g8 x f7
2	♖e5 x g7+	♔f7 - e8
3	♖g7 - h8+	♔e8 - e7

Everything else is bad for Black as well: 3...♖f8 4 ♖e4+ ♖e7 5 ♖xe7+ ♔xe7 6 ♔c5+, or 3...♔f7 4 ♖g7+ ♔f6 5 ♔d4+ ♖xd4 6 ♖xh6+ ♔e5 7 cd+ ♖xd4 8 ♖e7+ ♔d5 9 ♖xd4+ ♔xd4 10 ♖e3+ ♔d5 11 ♖e5+ ♔c6 12 ♖c7#.

4 ♖f4 - e4+

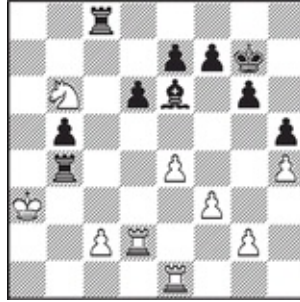
Now Black can be mated, either outright: 4...♔f7 5 ♖g7#; or after a few moves: 4...♔e6 5 f6+! ♔f7 6 ♖g7+ ♔e8 7 ♖g8+ ♖f8 8 ♖xe6+, etc.

Black resigned.

In 1995, the second match for the PCA world title was held. This time Kasparov's challenger was

the Indian grandmaster Viswanathan Anand. Eighteen games were played in that competition and the champion won four, while the challenger won only one.

In the next game the champion prevailed with the help of an elegant tactic.



984
Anand - Kasparov
New York, 1995
11th game of the match

Black to move

Both Black's rooks are hanging. He loses, does he not? No, not at all!

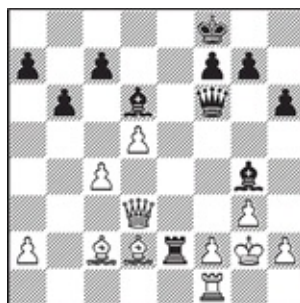
1 ... ♖c8 x c2!!

White resigned.

After 2 ♖xc2 ♖b3+ 3 ♕a2 ♖e3+ and 4... ♖xe1, Black has a couple of extra pawns and a winning position. 2 ♕xb4 would be followed by 2... ♖c2 x d2, also with an easy win.

In 1996, in Elista, the match for the FIDE world championship was held. This time Karpov was challenged by the up-and-coming grandmaster Gata Kamsky. The world champion defended his title successfully, winning six games and losing only three, with nine games drawn.

In the following position, Black's tactic, beginning with an exchange sacrifice, forced his opponent to resign immediately.



985
Kamsky - Karpov
Elista, 1996

6th game of the match

Black to move

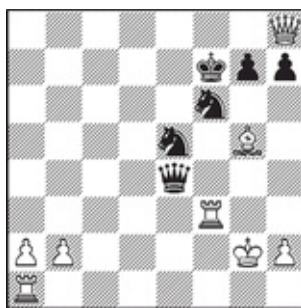
1 ... ♖e2 x d2!

Now White must lose a piece: 2 ♔xd2 ♖f3+ 3 ♔g1 ♗h3 4 ♗e4 (otherwise 4... ♖g2#) 4... ♖xe4 5 f3 ♖f5 6 ♖e2 (All the alternatives are just as bad.) 6... ♗c5+ 7 ♖h1 ♗xf1.

White resigned.

Starting with the FIDE world championship of 1997-1998, a new knockout system was used: short elimination matches, the first two games with a regular time-control and if the score is 1-1, they are followed by a two-game match with a rapid time control. This format requires maximal concentration and composure from the participants.

In the final of the first such competition, Anand had to face Karpov. There was no winner after the first six games of the match, but then Karpov won both games in rapid chess, to preserve his title, world champion of FIDE.



986

Karpov - Anand
Lausanne, 1998
2nd game of the match

White to move

1 ♖h8 x g7+!!

“In this position, Anand relied only on the line 1 ♖f1 ♗xf3 2 ♖xf3, after which the move 2... ♖e2+ would enable Black to draw by force quite comfortably. Unfortunately for him, he had overlooked this simple, but effective, tactical blow. Some time ago Lasker had lost a game against Alekhine, and he told the journalists after the game, ‘I had forgotten that I was playing against the world champion.’ It seemed to me that something like that had happened in this encounter too.” (Igor Zaitsev)

1 ... ♔f7 x g7
 2 ♕g5 x f6+ ♚g7 - g6
 3 ♖f6 x e5 ♜e4 x e5
 4 ♚a1 - g1!

“White’s position seems to be, and actually is, completely winning, since he has a decisive material advantage as well as an attack.” (Zaitsev)

The last competition of the millenium for the FIDE world championship was played in 1999. This time the champion had to qualify like other players and Karpov resigned his title in anger at the new rules. The event went on without Karpov and the title was won by another Russian grandmaster, Alexander Khalifman. He won his opponent’s queen with the help of an exquisite combination in our next example.



987
Khalifman - Nisipeanu
Las Vegas, 1999
1st game of the match in rapid chess

White to move

“Black had already lost the theoretical battle and he had decided to sacrifice a piece for three pawns, but he was in for a nasty surprise.” (I. Zaitsev)

1 ♘c3 - e4! d5 x e4

Black’s problems would be even greater if he had refrained from capturing the knight: 1... ♚c7 2 ♘g5!, with the same idea as in the game, except under even more favorable circumstances for White.

2 ♘d2 x e4 ♜d6 - c7
 3 ♘e4 - g5 ♕e5 x b2
 4 ♜e2 x e6+ ♔g8 - h8

Naturally not 4... ♔f8, because of 5 ♘h7#.

5 ♘g5 - f7+ ♜c7 x f7

“This was a sad necessity for Black. He would be swiftly crushed after 5... ♔g8 - 6 ♘h6+ ♔f8 7 ♖f1+ ♕f6 (or 7... ♘f6 8 ♖xf6+ ♗xf6 9 ♜g8+ ♔e7 10 ♜f7+ ♔d6 11 ♘f5+ ♔e5 12 ♜xc7+ ♔xf5 13 ♜xc6 ♖d8 14 ♗h3+) 8 ♜g8+ ♔e7 9 ♘f5+ ♔d8 10 ♖d1+ ♔c8 11 ♘d6+” (I. Zaitsev.)

White won.

How Would You Play?



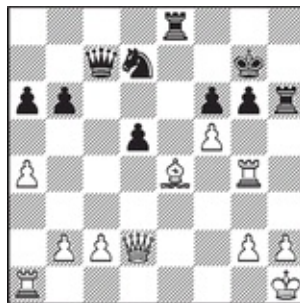
988
Karpov - Geller
Moscow, 1981

White to move



989
Karpov - Timman
Moscow, 1981

White to move



990
Shviker - Boudre
France, 1981

White to move



991

Nikitin & Shkarov - Kasparov
Moscow, 1981

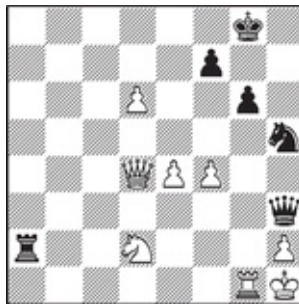
Black to move



992

Kasparov - Gavrikov
Frunze, 1981

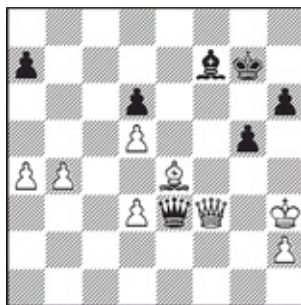
White to move



993

Portisch - Kasparov
Moscow, 1981

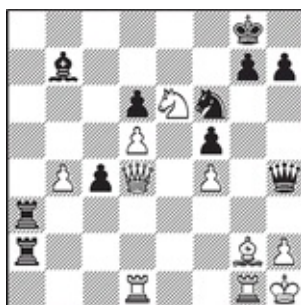
Black to move



994

**Larsen - Spassky
Linares, 1981**

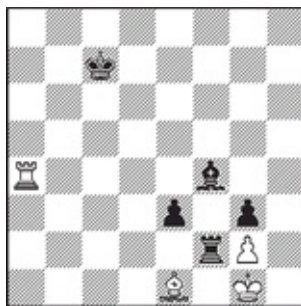
Black to move



995

**Inkirov - Bojovic
Plovdiv, 1982**

Black to move



996

**Voitsekhovsky - Sandler
Riga, 1982**

Black to move



997

Smyslov - Ribli

London, 1983

White to move

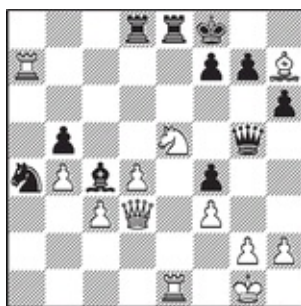


998

Karpov - Sax

Linares, 1983

White to move

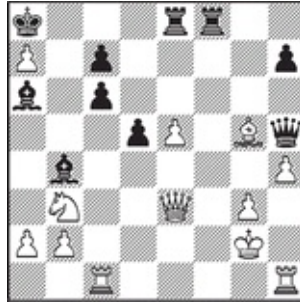


999

Karpov - Geller

Moscow, 1983

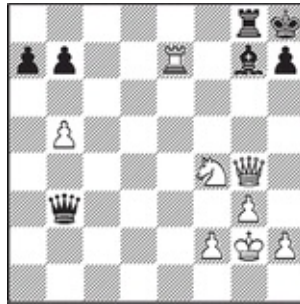
White to move



1000

Timman - Karpov
London, 1984

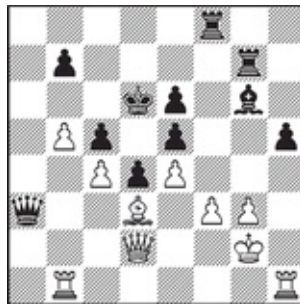
Black to move



1001

Karpov - Korchnoi
London, 1984

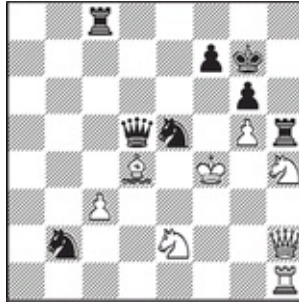
White to move



1002

Palatnik - Kruppa
Kiev, 1984

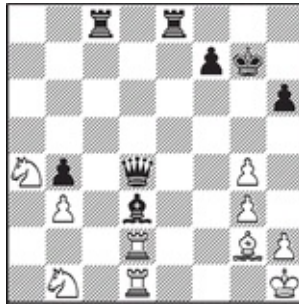
White to move



1006

Korchnoi - A. Sokolov
Montpellier, 1985

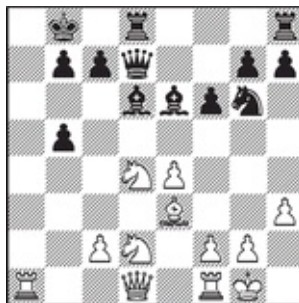
Black to move



1007

Karpov - Kasparov
Moscow, 1985
16th game of the match

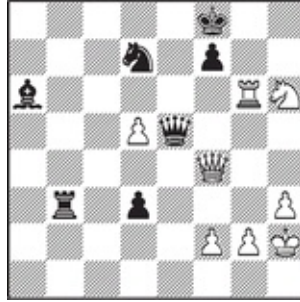
Black to move



1008

Wahls - Bjarnason
Malmo, 1985 - 1986

White to move



1009

**Kasparov - Karpov
Leningrad, 1986
16th game of the match**

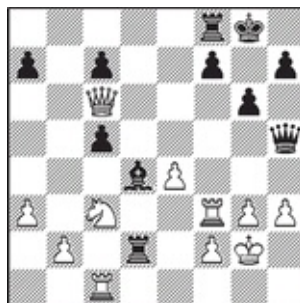
White to move



1010

**Miles - Kasparov
Basel, 1986**

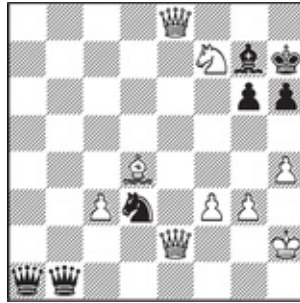
Black to move



1011

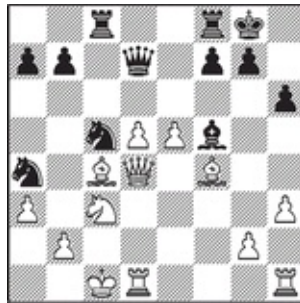
**Schneider - Pirisi
Budapest, 1986**

Black to move



**1012
Shafranska - Belavenets
Zheleznovodsk, 1986**

White to move



**1013
Vetemaa - Shabalov
USSR, 1986**

Black to move



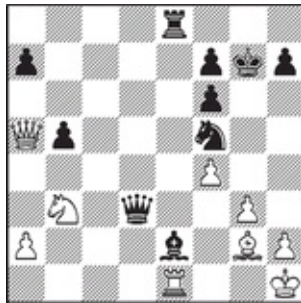
1014
Bareev - Yakovich
Tallinn, 1986

White to move



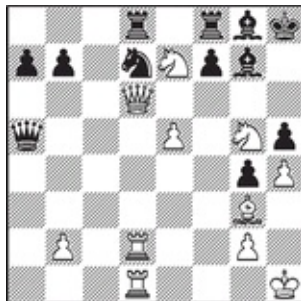
1015
Andres - Perez
Havana, 1987

White to move



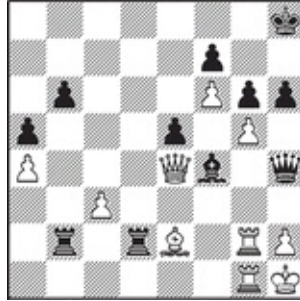
1016
Kasparov - Karpov
Seville, 1987
2nd game of the match

Black to move



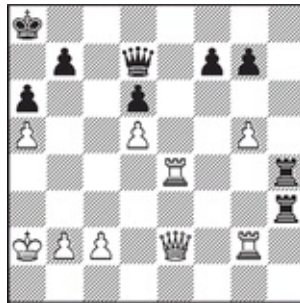
1020
Kasparov - Smirin
Moscow, 1988

White to move



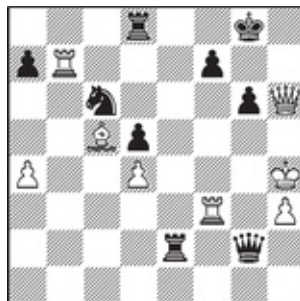
1021
Gislason - S. Polgar
Iceland, 1988

Black to move



1022
Tisdall - J. Polgar
Reykjavik, 1988

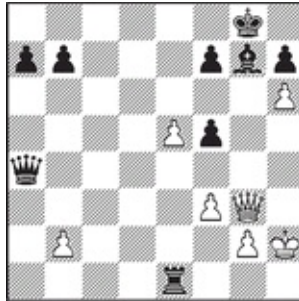
Black to move



1023

J. Polgar - Hansen
Reykjavik, 1989

White to move



1024

J. Polgar - Gomez
Salamanca, 1989

Black to move



1025

Piket - Kasparov
Tilburg, 1989

Black to move



1026
Kasparov - Karpov
Lyon, 1990, 20th game of the match

White to move



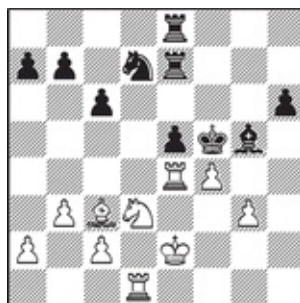
1027
Short - Bareev
Tilburg, 1991

White to move



1028
Hübner - Kasparov
Cologne, 1992

Black to move



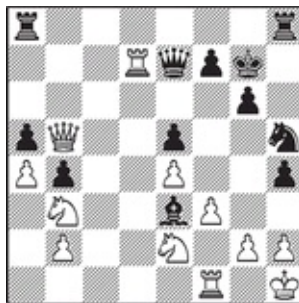
1029
Smyslov - Oll
Rostov on Don, 1983

White to move



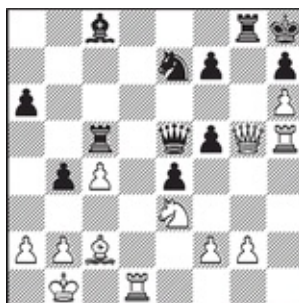
1030
Adams - Tumorhuyug
Moscow, 1994

White to move



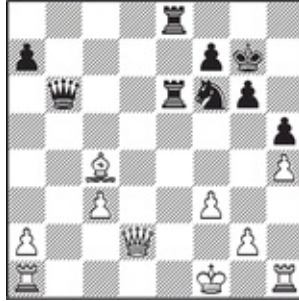
1031
Arbakov - Kasparov
Paris, 1994

Black to move



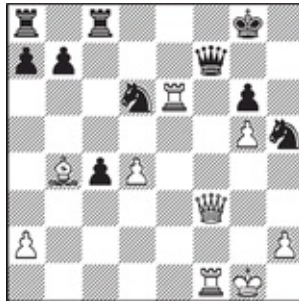
1032
Kasparov - Lautier
Moscow, 1994

White to move



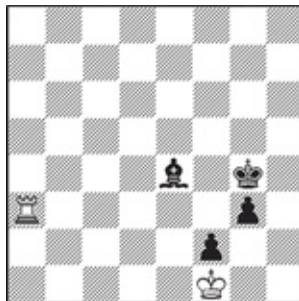
1033
Anand - Kasparov
New York, 1995
13th game of the match

Black to move



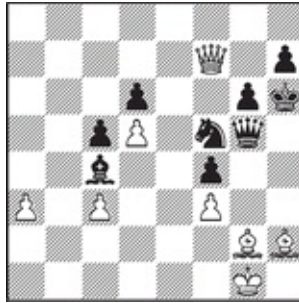
1034
Morozevich - Anand
Moscow, 1995

White to move



1035
Beliavsky - Gelfand
Groningen, 1995

White to move



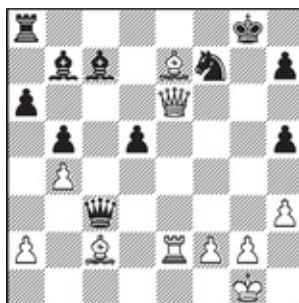
1036
Gelfand - Kasparov
Novgorod, 1997

Black to move



1037
Timman - Magomedov
Elista, 1998

White to move



1038

J. Polgar - Spassky
Hoogoven, 1998

White to move



1039

Morozevich - Ulibin
Maikop, 1998

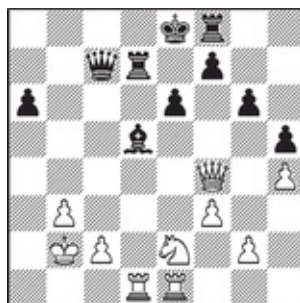
White to move



1040

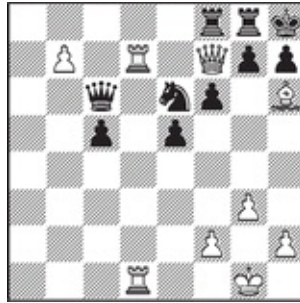
Kramnik - Karpov
Frankfurt am Main, 1999

White to move



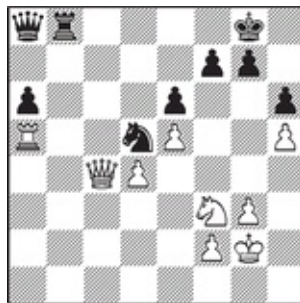
1041
Kasparov - Kramnik
Frankfurt am Main, 1999

White to move



1042
Morozevich - Nikolić
Wiik aan Zee, 2000

White to move



1043
Gulko - Adams
Internet, 2000

Black to move

Solutions

Diagram 988. 1 ♖xf7! ♔xf7 (or 1... ♞e7 2 ♜f6 ♚h8 3 ♜xe6 and White wins.) 2 ♚xg6+ ♔f8 (or 2... ♚e7 3 ♚g7+ ♚e8 4 ♜g6#) 3 ♚xh6+ “Black resigned, because of 3... ♚e8 4 ♜b5+ ♚f7 5 ♚h7+ ♚f8 6 ♚h8+ ♚e7 7 ♚g7#.” (Karpov)

Diagram 989. 1 ♜g6+! Black resigned. If 1... ♚e8 2 ♚g8#; 1...fg 2 e7+! ♚e8 3 ♚g8+ ♚d7 4 ♚e6+ ♚e8 5 ♚f7+ ♚d7 6 e8 ♚++ followed by mate.

Diagram 990. 1 ♚xh6+! ♔xh6 2 ♜xg6+ ♔h7 (or 2... ♚h5 3 ♜f3+ ♚h4 4 g3+ ♚xg3 5 hg+ ♚h3 6 ♜g2#) 3 ♜a3! and mate.

Diagram 991. 1... ♜e2!! 2 ♜e1 (or 2 ♚xe2 ♚xh2+! 3 ♞xh2 ♞g3#; 2 ♜a7! ♚f4! 3 ♞d3 ♜xf2 4 ♞xf4 ♞xf4 5 ♜g4 ♜xg2 6 ♜xf3 ♜xf3, and after a few moves, Black mates) 2... ♜xf2. White resigned.

Diagram 992. 1 ♜g6+! (This is the best move for White; it forces checkmate in a few moves, but he could also have won with the line 1 ♜xc7+! ♚xc7 2 ♞d5+ ♚d7 3 ♚g4+ ♜e6 4 ♞xc7 ♚xc7 5 ♚f4+ ♚b7 6 ♚xf7+.) 1...fg (or 1... ♚d7 2 ♞xe5+ ♜xe5 3 ♚xe5 and mate is unavoidable.) 2 ♜h7+ ♔f8 3 ♚xg6. Black resigned. (3... ♜f5 4 ♚g7+ ♚e8 5 ♜h8+ ♜f8 6 ♜xf8#)

Diagram 993. 1... ♜xd2! 2 ♚xd2 ♚f3+ 3 ♚g2 (or 3 ♜g2 ♚f1+ 4 ♜g1 ♚f3+ with repetition of position) 3... ♞g3+! 4 hg ♚h5+ 5 ♚h2 ♚f3+ 6 ♜g2 ♚d1+ 7 ♚g1 ♚h5+, with a draw by perpetual check.

Diagram 994. 1...g4+! and White resigned. If 2 ♚xg4 ♜h5+! 3 ♚xh5 ♚g5#.

Diagram 995. 1... ♚xh2+! caused White to resign, due to 2 ♚xh2 ♞g4+ 3 ♚h1 ♜h3+! 4 ♜xh3 ♜h2#.

Diagram 996. 1...e2! 2 ♜xf2 (or 2 ♜xf4 ♜xf4 3 ♜xg3 ♚c6, and Black's rook is untouchable.) 2... ♜e3!! and Black wins. (3 ♜xe3 e1 ♚#)

Diagram 997. 1 ♚h8+ ♚e7 2 ♜xe6+! fe 3 ♚xg7+ ♞f7 (or 3... ♚d6 4 ♞e4+ wins the queen.) 4 d6+! (“This forced line ends with an exquisite pawn sacrifice. Now Black loses his queen, because of the discovered attack along the a1-h8 diagonal.” - Smyslov) 4... ♜xd6 (It is even worse for Black to play 4... ♚xd6, due to 5 ♞e4+ and 6 ♚xb2.) 5 ♞d5+! ♜xd5 6 ♚xb2, and White soon won.

Diagram 998. 1 ♜e7!! ♜d1+ (“Or 1... ♚xe7 2 ♚a8+ ♚c7 3 ♚a7+ ♚d8 4 ♚b8#.” - Karpov) 2 ♚xd1 ♚xe7 (“In case of 2... ♜d8+, White would not be able to play 3 ♚c1, since Black's rook controls d4, but after 3 ♜d7! the game would enter a routine queen-and-pawn endgame with two extra pawns for White.” - Karpov) 3 ♚a8+ ♚c7 4 ♚a7+ ♚d6 5 ♚b6+. “Black resigned, because of the

checkmate in two: 5... ♖e5 6 ♜d4+ ♖e6 7 ♘b3#." (Karpov)

Diagram 999. 1 ♜xc4! with mate in a few moves. Black resigned. (1... bc 2 ♜xf7#; 1... ♜xe5 2 ♜xf7#; 1... ♜e7 2 ♜xe7! ♜xe7 3 ♞g6+! and mate next move.)

Diagram 1000. 1... ♜xe5! ("When I sacrificed the rook, my opponent seemed slightly surprised, since he thought that the worst was over for him." - Karpov) 2 ♜xe5 (Otherwise White loses his queen.) 2... ♜f3+ 3 ♜h2 (After 3 ♜h3 ♘c8+, White gets checkmated as well.) 3... ♜f2+ 4 ♜h3 ♘c8+. White resigned. If 5 ♜h3 ♘c8+ 6 g4 ♜f3+, and Black mates in one.

Diagram 1001. 1 ♞g6+! and Black resigned. (1...hg 2 ♜h4+ ♘h6 3 ♜xh6#, or 2 ♜h3+ and 3 ♜xh6#)

Diagram 1002. 1... ♜xf3!! 2 ♜xf3 ♘xe4+! 3 ♜xe4 (or 3 ♜e2 ♘xh1 4 ♜xh1 ♜xg3 5 ♜f1 ♜e3+ with a winning position for Black) 3... ♜xg3! 4 ♜a1 (or 4 ♜hg1 ♜a2! 5 ♜e1 b6! 6 ♜a1 ♜xa1! and mating, or 5 ♜xg3 ♜xd2 6 ♜f1 h4 7 ♜gf3 ♜g2; 4 ♜he1 ♜a8 5 ♜a1 ♜g8) Here White resigned in view of 4... ♜b2! This was an amazing finish.

Diagram 1003. 1... ♜xh6+! Draw. If 2 ♜xh6, then it is stalemate, while after 2 ♜f5, there arises a theoretically drawn queen-and-pawn endgame.

Diagram 1004. 1 ♜a8! (or 1 fe?? ♜xd1#) Black resigned. (1... ♜xa8 2 fe)

Diagram 1005. 1 ♜xh4+! ♜xh4 2 ♜h7+ ♜g5 3 h4#.

Diagram 1006. 1... ♜xh4+! White resigned. (2 ♜xh4 ♜f3+ 3 ♜xe5 ♞c4#)

Diagram 1007. 1... ♜e3! 2 ♜xd3 ♜c1! 3 ♞b2 (This move leads to mate, but there was no salvation anyway; if 3 h3, then 3... ♜xb1! and Black wins.) 3... ♜f2! 4 ♞d2 (or 4 ♜xc1 ♜e1+ 5 ♜xe1 ♜xe1+ 6 ♘f1 ♜xf1#) 4... ♜xd1+ (After 4... ♜e2! Black could have mated on the next move.) 5 ♞xd1 ♜e1+. White resigned, unable to stop 6... ♜xf1+ and 7... ♜xf1#.

Diagram 1008. 1 ♜a8+! ♜xa8 2 ♜a1+ ♜b8 3 ♜a7+! ♜xa7 4 ♞c6++! and 5 ♜a1+ followed by checkmate.

Diagram 1009. 1 ♜g8+ ♜e7 2 d6+! (White wins the queen.) 2... ♜e6 (or 2... ♜xd6 3 ♞xf7+; 2... ♜xd6 3 ♞f5+) 3 ♜e8+ ♜d5 4 ♜xe5+ ♞xe5 5 d7! ♜b8 (or 5... ♞xd7 6 ♜f7+ and 7 ♜xb3) 6 ♞xf7! Black resigned. (6... ♞xf7 7 ♜xb8; 6... ♞xd7 7 ♜d6+)

Diagram 1010. 1... ♜xc1! 2 ♜xc1 d2 3 ♜f1 ♜d4! ("Having been foreseen by Kasparov from the start, this move reveals the idea of the combination. The d-pawn is pinned as before, but if in the line

3...dc ♖? 4 ♖xd8+, White could capture Black's queen with a check; now Black is already threatening 4...dc ♖. Here, White must part with his bishop." - Gufeld) 4 ♖c2 ♖xe4 and Black won.

Diagram 1011. 1... ♖xf3+! 2 ♖xf3 ♖xf2+ 3 ♖g4 h5+ 4 ♖g5 (After 4 ♖h4 ♖f6+ 5 ♖xf6 ♖xf6, Black is up an exchange with a winning position.) 4... ♖g7 (We have found another possibility for Black: 4... ♖e3+ 5 ♖h4 f6! 6 ♖d5+ ♖g7 7 ♖d1 ♖xc1 8 ♖xf2 ♖g5+ 9 ♖xg5+ fg+ and Black wins.) 5 ♖d5 f6+ 6 ♖h4 ♖h6! and White resigned. (7 g4 g5+ 8 ♖g3 h4#)

Diagram 1012. 1 ♖h8+! ♖xh8 2 ♖g5+! hg 3 ♖e7+. Black resigned. If 3... ♖g8 4 ♖e8+; 3... ♖h6 4 ♖f8+, and White mates in both cases.

Diagram 1013. 1... ♖b5! 2 ♖d2 (or 2 ♖xb5 ♖b3#; 3 ♖xb5 ♖b3#; 2 b4 ♖b3+ 3 ♖xb3 ♖xc3+ and 4... ♖xb3) 2... ♖xc3! White resigned. (3 bc ♖b1#; 3 ♖xb5 ♖b3#; 3 ♖xc3 ♖b3+ 4 ♖d1 ♖xc4)

Diagram 1014. After 1 ♖xe6! Black resigned. If he captures his opponent's queen, there would follow 2 ♖g7++ ♖d8 3 ♖e8#, while if 1...fe, then 2 ♖xd5 leaves White with an extra queen.. The best defense for Black is 1... ♖xe6, but after 2 ♖xe6+, the outcome of the game is beyond doubt.

Diagram 1015. 1 ♖xd7! ♖xd7 2 ♖f6+ ♖h6 (or 2... ♖g8 3 ♖e7+ ♖xe7 4 de ♖xe7 5 ♖xe7) 3 g5+ ♖h5 4 ♖f4+ (It is also good for White to play simply 4 g4+ ♖h4 5 ♖g2 ♖xg4+ 6 hg.) 4... ♖h4 5 ♖h2! ♖f2 6 g3+! (or 6 ♖h1) 6... ♖xg3+ 7 ♖g2, and because of the threat 8 ♖h1+, Black is forced to play 8... ♖h2 9 ♖h1 ♖g4+, but that only postpones his inevitable defeat.

Diagram 1016. 1... ♖f3! 2 ♖xf3 (or 2 ♖xe8 ♖f1#; 2 ♖c1 ♖a3!; 2 ♖g1 ♖xg2 3 ♖xg2 ♖e2+ 4 ♖xe2 ♖xe2+, mate to follow) 2... ♖xf3+ 3 ♖g1 ♖xe1+ 4 ♖xe1 ♖e3. White resigned, because if 5 ♖d2 ♖f1#; 5 ♖f2 ♖d1+ with mate; or if 5 ♖xe3 ♖xe3+.

Diagram 1017. 1 ♖g6! and White forces mate: 1...fg 2 ♖xg6#; 1... ♖xe5 2 ♖h6+ ♖h7 3 ♖xh7#; 1... ♖b6 2 ♖d6 ♖xd6 3 ♖xd6, etc.

Diagram 1018. 1 ♖xg6! (White could have won here in four moves, playing according to the principle "check, check and checkmate": 1 ♖f6+! gf 2 ♖xg6+ ♖g7 3 ♖xf7+ ♖f8 4 ♖h7#, or 1... ♖h8 2 ♖xf7#.) Black resigned. If 1...fg 2 ♖f6++ ♖h8 3 ♖f7#; Black can delay the inevitable with the suicidal line 1... ♖xh2+ 2 ♖xh2 ♖d6+ 3 ♖h1 and mate in two.

Diagram 1019. 1 ♖xh7+! Black resigned. If 1... ♖xh7, 2 f7+! ♖xf7 3 ♖h8#; or on 2... ♖f8, 3 ♖xh7! is crushing.

Diagram 1020. 1 ♖xh6! ♖xh6 (or 1... ♖c5+ 2 ♖h1 ♖c1 3 ♖e6#) 2 ♖e6+ ♖h8 (or 2... ♖h7 3 ♖f7+ ♖g7 4 ♖f5+ ♖h8 5 ♖h5+ ♖g8 6 ♖e6+ ♖f8 7 ♖f7#) 3 ♖f6+. Black resigned, due to 3... ♖h7 4 ♖f7+ ♖g7 5 ♖f5+ ♖h8 6 ♖h5+ ♖g8 7 ♖e6+ ♖f8 8 ♖f7#.

Diagram 1021. Following 1... ♖xe2! White resigned. (2 ♜xe2 ♖xe2; 2 ♖xe2 ♜xh2+! 3 ♖xh2 ♜xh2#)

Diagram 1022. Black played 1... ♜a4+! and White resigned. If 2 ♖xa4 ♖xa4+ 2 ♜b1 ♖h1+ with mate; or 2 ♜b1 ♖h1+ 3 ♜e1 ♜xe4 is crushing.

Diagram 1023. 1 ♜g7+! (This was a beautiful move, but White had an excellent alternative: 1 ♜h7+!, with the same variations as after 1 ♜g7+.) Black resigned. (1... ♜xg7 2 ♖xf7+ ♜g8 3 ♖g7+ ♜h8 4 ♖h7+ ♜g8 5 ♖bg7#, or 2... ♜h6 3 ♖h7#)

Diagram 1024. After 1... ♜f4!! White resigned. After 2 ♜xf4 ♜xe5, Black has an extra rook.

Diagram 1025. 1... ♞h1!! (Black could also have won with 1... ♜xb5 2 ♜xb5 ♜e3! or 2... ♞h1!) White resigned. (2 ♜xh1 ♜xf2)

Diagram 1026. 1 ♜xh6+! (This beautiful move wins quickly, but 1 ♞f7+! enables White to mate in six moves; for example, 1... ♜xf7 2 ♜xh6+ ♜h7 3 ♖xa8 ♞f6 4 ♖xf8+ ♜xf8 5 ♜xf8+ ♞g8 6 ♜g7#. Black loses even more quickly after 1... ♜h7 2 ♜xf6 ♞xf6 3 ♜xf5#.) 1... ♜xh6 2 ♞f7+ ♜h7 3 ♜xf5+ ♜g6 4 ♜xg6+ (“There are too many coincidences already. In the second game the world champion overlooked in time trouble a decisive tactic on g6, while now he captured on g6 with the wrong piece. In fact, 4 ♖xg6! would have ended the game outright. Nonetheless, it will end soon after this move as well.” - Yuri Razuvaev. After 4 ♖xg6, Black will have to lose almost all his pieces in order to avoid being checkmated: 4...b1 ♜ 5 ♞g5+ ♜h8 6 ♜xb1 ♞f4 7 ♞f7+ ♜h7 8 ♖g4+ ♞fd3 9 ♖xa8.) 4... ♜g7 5 ♖xa8 ♜e7 6 ♖b8 a5 7 ♜e4+ ♜xf7 8 ♜xd5+. Black resigned.

Diagram 1027. Black resigned after 1 ♞f5!. If 1... ♞xg4 2 ♖xd8#; 1...ef 2 ♜b4+ ♜e8 3 ♖xe5+; 1... ♞d3 2 ♜xg7+ ♜e8 3 ♖e3 ♜xa3 4 ♜g8+ ♜f8 5 ♞g7+!, and White prevails.

Diagram 1028. 1...f5! 2 ♜xf5?? (The line 2 ♜h4 e4 3 c5! would have saved the piece, but Black would maintain his advantage anyway.) 2... ♞f6! White resigned, because he would lose his queen.

Diagram 1029. 1 g4+!! (“This spectacular rook sacrifice forces the win.” - Smyslov) 1... ♜xe4 (Black is ignorant of the danger, but after 1... ♜xg4 2 fg+ his compensation for the lost piece is insufficient.) 2 ♞f2+! ♜xf4 3 ♖g1! (“White plays precisely to the end. It was not sufficient to play 3 ♜d2+, because after 3... ♜g3 4 ♖g1+ ♜h4!, Black escapes.” - Smyslov) Black resigned. White is threatening 4 ♜d2# and if 3...e4, then 4 ♞h3#.

Diagram 1030. Upon 1 ♜e7! Black resigned, facing 1... ♜xe7 2 ♜h7+ ♜f8 3 ♜h8#; or 1... ♞xe7 2 ♜xe6+; or 1... ♜xg6 2 ♜xg6 and White wins.

Diagram 1031. 1... ♞g3+! 2 ♞xg3 (or 2 hg hg#) 2...hg 3 h3 ♜e6! and White resigned. Black is

threatening to mate starting with 4...♖xh3+!

Diagram 1032. 1 ♖g4! forced Black's resignation. If 1...♖xg5, then 2 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 (or 2...♖xh5 3 ♖d8+ ♖g8 4 ♖xf7#) 3 ♖xg5 ♖c6 4 ♖a4 ♖b7 5 ♖d7 ♖e7 6 ♖xc6! and White wins, while after 1... ♖e6, there is 2 ♖d8! ♖g6 (or 2...♖xd8 3 ♖g7#; 2...♖g6 3 ♖xg8+ ♖xg8 4 ♖d8+ ♖f8 5 ♖g5+) 3 ♖xe7 ♖c6 4 ♖e5, or 4 ♖f6 with the same result. It is hopeless for Black to try 1...fg, due to 2 ♖xe5+.

Diagram 1033. 1...♖e4! and now White resigned. Is that decision not premature? No, not at all. Here are some variations:

- I. 2 ♖d4+ ♖xd4 3 cd ♖d2+ and 4...♖xc4 with an extra piece for Black;
- II. 2 ♖e1 ♖d6 3 fe (or 3 ♖d1 ♖g3+ with mate) 3...♖f6+ 4 ♖e2 ♖xe4+ 5 ♖d3 ♖xe1 6 ♖axe1 ♖d6+ 7 ♖c2 ♖f2+ with a winning position for Black;
- III. 2 fe ♖f6+ 3 ♖e1 ♖xe4+ 4 ♖d1 ♖xc4 5 ♖c1 (or 5 ♖c1 ♖b4 6 ♖d1 ♖xc3 7 ♖h3 ♖g4+ 8 ♖f3 ♖xf3 and Black wins.) 5...♖d6+ 6 ♖e2 (or 6 ♖c2 ♖xc3+! and White gets checkmated.) 6...♖e4+ 7 ♖f3 ♖d3+! 8 ♖xe4 ♖b5! with mate to follow.
- IV. 2 fe ♖f6+ 3 ♖e1 ♖xe4+ 4 ♖e2 ♖f2+ 5 ♖d1 ♖xe2! 6 ♖d4 (or 6 ♖xe2 ♖d6+ and Black wins.) 6...♖xg2 7 ♖g1 ♖d2+! 8 ♖xd2 (or 8 ♖c1 ♖c2+ 9 ♖b1 ♖b2+ 10 ♖c1 ♖c2#) 8...♖xg1+ 9 ♖e1 ♖f1 and White loses his queen.

Diagram 1034. 1 ♖d5! ♖f5 2 ♖xf5! Now Black resigned, because of 2...♖xf5 3 ♖e8++ and 4 ♖g8#; 2...gf3 3 g6! ♖xe6 4 ♖xe6+, and White wins.

Diagram 1035. 1 ♖f3! (This is the most beautiful, and also the fastest, way to draw. We will also mention that White would not lose either, after 1 ♖a4) 1...g2+ (Capturing the rook leads to a stalemate.) 2 ♖xg2 ♖xf3+ 3 ♖xf2. Draw.

Diagram 1036. 1...♖f1! 2 ♖xf1 (or 2 ♖xf4 ♖xf4 3 ♖f8+ ♖h5 4 ♖xf1 ♖g3+ 5 ♖h1 ♖e3 6 ♖f7 h6 and Black wins.) 2...♖e3+ 3 ♖e1 (or 3 ♖e2 ♖xg2+ and mate in two) 3...♖h4+! 4 ♖e2 ♖xh2 5 ♖d3 ♖f5! White resigned, since 6 ♖f1 ♖f2 7 ♖h3 ♖xf3+ and 8...♖xh3.

Diagram 1037. Following 1 ♖xe5! Black resigned. If 1...♖xe5 2 ♖xe5+ f6 3 ♖xf6#, or 2...♖xe5 3 ♖xf7+ ♖g7 4 ♖xe5, winning for White.

Diagram 1038. 1 ♖f6. Black resigned. (1...d4 2 ♖e8+! ♖xe8 3 ♖xe8#; 1...♖c6 2 ♖xh7+! ♖xh7 3 ♖xf7+ ♖h6 4 ♖g7#; 1...♖h2+ 2 ♖h1 ♖xb4 3 ♖xh7+! ♖f8 4 ♖g6 and White wins.)

Diagram 1039. After 1 ♖h4+! Black resigned. If 1...g5 2 ♖xg5+! hg 3 ♖xg5+ f6 4 ♖g7#; 1...f6 2 ♖xc5+! ♖xc5 3 ♖1d7#.

Diagram 1040. 1 ♖xg7+! ♖xg7 2 ♖f5+! ef 3 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 4 ♖e2 ♖g6 5 ♖xc4 and White won.

Diagram 1041. 1 ♖xd5! ed (or 1...♖xd5 2 ♜xc7) 2 ♞d4+. Black resigned. (2...♔d8 3 ♞e6+! fe 4 ♜xf8#)

Diagram 1042. 1 ♜xg7+! (“This ‘kid’s combination’ enabled me to win the award of the spectators’ affection.” - Alexander Morozevich) 1...♞xg7 (“Black had another defense: 1...♖xg7 2 ♜xf8+ ♞xf8 3 b8♜.” - Morozevich) 2 ♜xf8! ♖xf8 3 ♖d8 ♞e6 4 ♖xf8+ ♞xf8 5 b8♜ (“Black’s king is so exposed that White has an easy win anyway. The most important thing for him is to prevent Black’s knight from coming to d4.” - Morozevich) 5...♔g7 6 ♜a7+ ♔h6 7 ♜f7! Black resigned.

Diagram 1043. 1...♞e3+! 2 fe ♖b2+. White resigned, since mate is unavoidable; for example, 3 ♜h3 ♜xf3 4 ♜c8+ ♔h7 5 ♜d8 ♜f1+ 6 ♔h4 ♖h2+ 7 ♔g4 ♜f5#.

Index of Players

Aaron
Abrahams
Abramson
Adams, Ed.
Adams, M.
Agdamus
Ahues
Airapetov
Al-Adli
Alapin
Albin
Alekhine
Al-Fath Abu
Al-Khadim Abu Naim
Allgaier
Anand
Anderssen
Andersson
Andres
Angerstein
Anikaev
Arbakov
Arnold
Arzumanian
Asztalos
Atkin
Auspitzer
Averbach

Bachmann
Bagirov
Balogh
Bannik
Barcza
Bardeleben
Bareev
Barnes
Bartolich
Baucher
Bauer
Bayer
Bednarski
Belavenets
Beliavsky
Bellon
Bendjanian
Benfi
Benko
Bennett
Berger
Bernstein
Berry
Bertrand
Beskrowny
Betazki
Bihn
Bilguer
Billecard
Binner
Bird
Bjarnason
Blackburne
Blake
Blanco
Bledow
Blumich
Boden
Bodisko
Bogoljubow
Bojovic
Bolbochan
Boleslavsky

Bonaparte Napoleon

Bondarevsky

Borisenko

Botvinnik

Bouaziz

Boudre

Brain

Bravo

Brian

City of Bristol

Bronstein

Brown

Browne

Burn

Byrne

Canal
Capablanca
Carbonet
Cardiff City of
Carls
Caro
Chajes
Charousek
Chekhover
Chigorin
Cochrane
Colle
Prince Conti
Corzo
Cotliver
Cuadras
Cuellar
Czom

Dadiani
Damiano
David
Davidov
De la Bourdonnais
De Lelie
de Remusat
De Riviere
del Rio
Delanois
Delmar
Deschappelles
Di Camillo
Dilaram
Distl
Domenico
Dominguez
Donisthorpe
Dorfman
Druitt
Dufresne
Duhm
Dumonshe
Durao
Duras
Duz-Hotimirsky

Eckart
Ekstrom
Eliskases
Englisch
Ermenkov
Ettlinger
Euwe
Evans, W.
Evans, L.

Factor
Falk
Falkbeer
Feldt
Fiechtl
Fiedler
Fine
Finn
Firduosi
Fischer
Fleissig
Flohr
Fluss
Fonaroff
Fontein
Forgacs
Forintos
Forrester
Franke
Friberg
Fried
Fritz
Frolov
Fuller
Fuster

Gaidukevich
Garcia
Gavrikov
Gelfand
Geller, E.
Georgadze
Gerasimov
Gergel
Gibaud
Gifford
Gislason
Gligoric
Goering
Goglidze
Goldenov
Golmayo
Gomez
Goring
Gossip
Gottshall
Grassi
Grau
Greco
Grigoriev
Grimshaw
Grommer
Gruenfeld
Gufeld
Guldin
Gulko
Gunsberg
Gus
Gutop
Gutzeit

Hakansson
Halpern
Halprin
Hamlish
Hamppe
Hanham
Hansen
Hardin
Harrwitz
Hartston
Hausler
Haze
Heemskerk
Helmertz
Heltay
Helving
Hermann
Hewitt
Hillel
Hirschfeld
Hirszbajn
Hoenlinger
Hoffer
Hoffman
Hofmeister
Holstein
Holzl
Hooke
Hort
Horvath
Horwitz
Hubner

Ilyin-Zhenevsky

Imbusch

Inkiov

Ivanovic

Ivkov

Jackson
Jaenisch
Jaffe
Jakobsen
Janny
Janowski
Johner
Journoud
Joy
Juchly
Jung

Kagan
KahnIlya
Kalinsky
Kamsky
Kamyshov
Kanko
Karlsson
Karpov
Kasparian
Kasparov
Kattozi
Kaufmann
Kelz
Kennenberger
Keres
Khalifman
Kholmov
Kieseritzky
King Alfonsethe Wise
King
Kirejewski
Kloza
Kmoch
Knorr
Knott
Koblents
Kolisch
Koonen
Kopilov
Korchnoi
Kostrowitzky
Kotov
Kotz
Kramnik
Krogius
Kruppa
Kubbel
Kubicek
Kugenek
Kuindzhi
Kunstmann
Kuntzevic
Kupfer

Kurschner
Kussman
Kuzmin

Lange
Larsen
Lasker, A.
Lasker, B.
Lasker, Ed.
Lasker, Em.
Lautier
Lazard
Lebedev
Lechtynsky
Lee
Legall
Leizerman
Leonardo
Leop
Lepek
Letelier
Leussen
Levenfish
Levitzky
Lewis
L'Hermet
Ligterink
Lilienthal
Lindehn
Lipschutz
Liutov
Ljuboevic
Lola
Lopes
Lowcki
Lowenthal
Lucena
Lukacs
Lund

MacKenzie
Maczuski
Madsen
Magomedov
Mandolfo
Manvelian
Marache
Marco
Maroczy
Marshall
Marx
Mason
Matohin
Matthews
Maurian
Mayet
Mazukevich
Mazzoci
McDonnell, Al.
McDonnell, J.
McKenzie
Medlet
Meek
Meitner
Mendelsohn
Mendheim
Metger
Miagmarsuren
Michel
Mieses
Mikenas
Miles
Minckwitz
Mista
Moiseev
Mongredien
Montichelli
Moore
Morozevich
Morphy, A.
Morphy, E.
Morphy
Morris

Mortimer
Mumelter
Mundell
Napolitano
Nathan
Nedeljkovic
Neiman
Nenarokov

Neumann

Neumann, G.

City of New York

Nezhmetdinov

Niederman

Nietzsche

Nikitin

Nikolic

Nimzowitsch

Nisipeanu

Nolde

City of Norfolk

Nouissere

Novopashin

Novotelnov

Nugent

Oehquist

Oll

Olland

Olsson

Opocensky

Ormosh

Oruerta

Oskam

Otto

Owen

Pachman
Pagilla
Palatnik
Panchik
Panno
Panov
Paoli
Par
Pares
Parnell
Paulsen
Perez
Perlasea
Perlis
Perrin
Petroff
Petrosian, T.
Petrovsky
Philidor
Pigusov
Piket
Pilhal
Pillsbury
Pilnik
Pirc
Pirisi
Plaskett
Platonov
Podgorny
Podzerov
Polerio
Polgar, J.
Polgar, S.
Pollock
Polner
Polugaevsky
Pomar
Ponziani
Popert
Popov
Popovic
Porges
Portisch

Potemkin
Potter
Prashak
Prokesh
Przepiorka

Ragozin
Rankin
Rashkovsky
Raubitschek
Razuvaev
Reggio
Reiner
Reshevsky
Reti
Ribli
Riceman
Richardson
Richter
Riemann
Riumin
Rock
Rodzynski
Romanovsky, A.
Romanovsky
Romberg
Romish
Rosanes
Rosenstein
Rosenthal
Rosentreter
Roshal
Rossetto
Rossolimo
Rotlevy
Rousseau
Rovner
Rozsypal
Rubinetti
Rubinstein
Rusakov
Ruzhnikov

Sabadosh
Saint Bris
Salminger
Salter
Salvio
Salwe
Samisch
Sanchez
Sandler
Sands
Sanz
Satzinger
Sax
Schalopp
Scheve
Schiffers
Schlechter
Schlessler
Schmidt
Schneider
Schroder
Schrossel
Schulder
Schulten
Schussler
Schuster
Schwartz
Sellmann
Sergievsky
Shabalov
Shafranska
Sharov
Sherwin
Shimansky
Shocron
Short
Showalter
Shumov
Shurade
Shviker
Sich
Silski
Simagin

Siversen
Sletser
Smirin
Smitten
Smyslov
Sokolov
Solovtsov
Spassky
Spielmann
St. Amant
Stahlberg
Stamma
Staunton
Stein
Steiner
Steinitz
Stephenson
Sterk
Stolberg
Suetin
Sugar
Suhle
Sukhin
Suta
Sutei
Sveshnikov
Szabo
Szen
Szilagyi

Taimanov
Tal
Tarjan
Tarrasch
Tartakower
Taubenhaus
Taxis
Taylor
Teed
Teichmann
Tenner
Thomas
Thompson
Thuring
Timman
Tinsley
Tisdall
Titz
Tolush
Tomovic
Torre
Torres
Toth
Trifunovic
Troitzky
Tseshkovsky
Tumurhuyuag
Turoverov
Tzemsh

Udovcic
Ufimtsev
Uhlmann
Ulibin
Unzicker
Urusov, S.
Urusov, D.
Urusov

Vaccaroni
Vadasz
Vaisman
Van den Enden
Van der Weide
Van Rein
Varain
Vasic
Vegh
Velimirovic
Vembro
Ventury
Vergani
Verlinsky
Vetemaa
Vickmann
Vidmar
Vjahirev
Voht
Voitsekhovsky
Von der Lasa
Vooremaa

Wageheim
Wahls
Walbrodt
Walter
Wayne
Weinstein
Weiss
White
Whitecroft
Wilk
Wilson
Winawer
Winter
Wittek
Wolf
Word
Wust
Wywill

Yakovich

Yakubovich

Yankovic

Yanzelis

Yates

Yudovich

Yurgis A.

Zaitzev
Zambelly K.
Zholdosh
Ziewitz
Zinkl
Znosko-Borovsky
Zubarev
Zukertort
Zuks

Mongoose Press
1005 Boylston Street, Suite 324
Newton Highlands, MA 02461



ORDER FORM

Customer Shipping Information

Name: _____

Company: _____

Address: _____

City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____

Phone: _____ Fax: _____

E-Mail: _____

Please mail form with payment to: Mongoose Press
1005 Boylston Street, Suite 324; Newton Highlands, MA 02461
or FAX with credit/debit card information to (866) 328-1523.

All funds MUST be drawn in US dollars.

QTY	TITLE	PRICE	AMOUNT

SUBTOTAL	
Sales Tax	
Shipping and Handling	\$3.99
TOTAL AMOUNT	

Payment Method: Check Money Order

Debit Card Credit Card: Visa Mastercard Discover

Card#: _____ Exp. Date: _____

Signature _____

Credit Card Billing Address (if different from above):

Name: _____

Address: _____

City: _____ State: _____ Zip: _____